CORNELL UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME OF THE SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND GIVEN IN 1891 BY HENRY WILLIAMS SAGE
The original of this book is in the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in the United States on the use of the text.

http://www.archive.org/details/cu31924013109149
LIFE OF THE BLACK PRINCE

BY THE HERALD OF SIR JOHN CHANDOS

EDITED FROM THE MANUSCRIPT IN WORCESTER COLLEGE
WITH LINGUISTIC AND HISTORICAL NOTES

BY

MILDRED K. POPE
DOCTEUR DE L'UNIVERSITÉ DE PARIS
RESIDENT TUTOR OF SOMERVILLE COLLEGE, OXFORD

AND

ELEANOR C. LODGE
RESIDENT TUTOR OF LADY MARGARET HALL, OXFORD

OXFORD
AT THE CLarendon PRESS

1910
HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD
LONDON, EDINBURGH, NEW YORK
TORONTO AND MELBOURNE
We are glad to have this opportunity of recording our gratitude to those who have lightened our labours in the preparation of this edition and made its publication a realized fact.

Our thanks are due in the first place to the Provost and Fellows of Worcester College for their courtesy in giving us access to the manuscript and permission to publish it; in the second place to the Delegates of the Clarendon Press for their acceptance of our work and for the consideration and care which they have shown in all the business of its production.

Some apology is needed for the final form in which the text and notes of this edition appear. The work was carried through in the precarious leisure of many vacations, and whilst this circumstance has been advantageous in giving us time to mature or correct our opinions on various points, it has on the other hand led to some inevitable inconsistencies. In particular, since it was necessary for the text to be printed off before the Introductions and Notes were in final form, emendations which we should have wished to embody in the text could only be inserted in the Critical Notes.

To our former teachers, M. Paul Meyer, Directeur de l'École des Chartes, and M. Bémont, Directeur adjoint à l'École des Hautes Études, we are under a special obligation for their recommendation of the work and suggestive criticism. We are also indebted for assistance
in various ways to Mr. C. R. L. Fletcher, Miss E. E. Wardale, Dr. Henry Bradley, Miss Myers of Lady Margaret Hall and Miss Darbishire and Miss Kempson of Somerville College.

Finally our best thanks are due to Miss Olwen Rhys for the generous help which she has given us throughout our labours, not only by placing her scholarly knowledge and critical judgement at our disposal, but by assisting in the lengthy task of transcribing the manuscript and compiling the glossary.

Mildred K. Pope.
Eleanor C. Lodge.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linguistic Introduction</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical Introduction</td>
<td>liv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translation</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Notes</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical Notes</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index of Proper Names</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LINGUISTIC INTRODUCTION

§ I. PREVIOUS EDITIONS

The Chandos Herald’s Life of the Black Prince is preserved in one manuscript only, the property of Worcester College, Oxford. It has been twice published: first in 1862 by Bodley's Librarian, H. O. Coxe, for the Roxburghe Club,¹ and, secondly, in 1883 by Francisque Michel.² Coxe’s edition, now out of print, gives a careful reproduction of the manuscript. No correction is attempted, even where the text is unintelligible, and the accompanying translation is very faulty. Michel aimed at constructing a ‘critical’ text. The numerous emendations, inspired by his ‘long familiarity and intimate acquaintance with the language of the period’, are unfortunately based on no preliminary study of the Herald’s own usage, and therefore render his edition valueless for linguistic purposes, while its historical worth is gravely diminished by the blunders of the translation and the incompleteness and inaccuracies of the notes.

In more recent times the poem has been made the subject of a doctor’s dissertation by Johannes Kotteritz,³ who gives a careful account of Michel’s alterations and the orthographical peculiarities of the manuscript as reproduced by Coxe.

§ II. LANGUAGE OF THE POEM⁴

A. PHONETICS. (a) Stressed Vowels.

§ 1. a. (a) The Middle French confusion of er and ar is very noticeable in the orthography: Barri 721, guerre 1574, Bartram 1685, varrez 2857, sarray 3131, ffarrans 3625, desermier 1420, atergier 1591, 2200, Nauerre 2210. The rhyme Edwardz : heirs 829/30 may indicate that this graphy corresponds with the Herald’s pronunciation.⁵

(b) Before the mouillées l and n, a rhymes with e: mervaille : bataille 1331/2; faigne : Espaigne 1639/40, : montaigne 3339/40.

⁴ The following study is based entirely on the rhymes and metre of the poem, excluding all consideration of the titles and appended list of officers and all purely orthographical questions.
⁵ But cf. below, p. ix, § 8.
§ 2. ai. No rhymes in ai final or aie are found; before consonants, single or in group, the reduction to e is regular: ples : est 891/2; Engleterre : gere 411/12; retrewe 1565/6; afferre 1579/80; Labret : entrese 623/4; en het 3349/50; feit : Navaret 2475/6; entette : hayette 1221/2.1

§ 3. é, ê (from Latin a free) rhymes with e before l and r: cruelle : querelle 113/14; loiel : castel² 2265/6; Maguelais (MS. Maguelers) : bachelers 969/70.

§ 4. (a) é, ê blocked also rhymes with e : hayette : entette 1221/2, s'entremet : Labret 3313/14, and in mettre : estre 3133/4, if the emendation is adopted.

(b) Before l + cons. and l + cons. it rhymes with a and ia (ea): eaux (illos): reveaux 475/6; Burdeaux 1451/2; consiaux : baus 2481/2.

§ 5. e blocked diphthongizes regularly in yvier (hibernum): yvier : chevalier 659/60; herbergier 693/4; messagier 1459/60, &c. The borrowed word matere rhymes usually in e : clere 81/2, 633/4, &c., : pere 453/4, 843/4; if the mestiere of 1818 is rightly taken as mestire (magisterium) the doublet matire is also used.

§ 6. é. Before n the distinction between ë and á is consistently observed. In the apparent exception, pacience : vaillance 1879/80, the borrowed paciense has been assimilated to the older words in -ance.

Before m, ë is kept in two rhymes: temps : parents 1767/8; : contens 1835/6, but more usually it is confounded with á: lams : ans 99/100, &c., : champs 681/2, &c., : grants 1141/2, &c. An indication as to the pronunciation is perhaps afforded by the rhyme in 569/70 Mawne : sanle (MS. Maunee : semble). Mawne, a graphy which occurs in the interior of line 1311, is the old Norman family name Moion, Moon, written in the fourteenth-century documents Mooun, Moun, Mounne, and now Mohun.³ In the somewhat earlier 'Siege of Carlaverock '(1300) it is still disyllabic and rhymes with oum (homo).⁴ If the rhyme here is at all exact, it indicates that before the nasal the a has been rounded and is pronounced as a low-back-narrow round vowel, something like modern English au (vaunt, launt).⁵

§ 7. eau rhymes with iau and with the product of e + l + cons.: vesseaux : joiaux 603/4; eaux (illos) : reveaux 475/6; Burdeaux 1451/2.

§ 8. O.F. ai rhymes as follows:

with oi, array : poy 639/40; ambedoy 297/8; avoie : joie 757/8; voie : joie 3151/2;

roys : vois 223/4; nois 1747/8, &c.; estrois : crois 2297/8; vois : ffraunces 1129/30, : foils 1337/8;

with us, mois : entrois (= entrues) 3717/18;

with oue (oua?), hoirs : Édwards 829/30;

with e, frees : baneres 345/6; foils : paix 847/8; Engloys : atres 2677/8; parfoes 3419/20.

1 Probably also træte : pæste 2749/50. Cf. critical note.
² MS. lotelle : Castelle.
³ The name is still found in Normandy in the village Mouon near St. Lô. On the name and all its forms see 1376, Dunster and its Lords 1066-1881. Exeter, 1882.
⁴ Janne o croiz noire engreelie
La portoit John de Mooun.
Cels de Tatesbale a oun
For sa valour o eus tire.
(Siege of Carlaverock, ed. Nicolas, p. 18.)
⁵ For e + n moûtillé cf. above, § 1 b.
The rhymes with *ue, owe* attest the pronunciation *us.* In *hors* this *s*, placed before *r*, may have already lowered to *a,* but it is perhaps more likely, at this date, that it is the *a* of *Edwards* that has been raised to *é*.

The rhymes in *é* are ambiguous: they may either be somewhat imperfect rhymes, or may indicate the reduction of *ue* to *é*. This reduction is constant in A.N. and of tolerable frequency at this date on the continent.²

§ 9. ie. (a) The distinction between *e* and *é* is observed with regularity and is clearly enough marked to allow of the two sounds being used in consecutive couplets, e.g. 321/5, 977/8, 1289/92; though the rhymes in these sounds are very numerous, they are confounded on two occasions only: *bien:* Montauben 3933/4; *voier:* exciser 1067/8; and of these one contains a proper name and the other is somewhat doubtful. Older *-ier* has become regularly *-ier:* *crier:* apparailler 2235/6; *logier* 2639/40; *espiere:* chivachier 2455/6. *Detrier* rhymes in *-ier* and *-ier:* destourbee 1097/8, detrier: atergier 1591/2, apparaillier 1931/2.

(b) *ie* is consistently reduced to *-ie:* chivachye: *mye* 375/6; *oblie:* die 455/6; *gaignie:* *perie* 505/6; a *ceste fie:* Normandie 959/60, &c.

§ 10. ieu. *é* + *u,* *e* + *l* + *cons.,* *l* + *l* + *cons.,* *r* + *u* rhyme together: *Dieux:* mieux 2713/14; *fieux* 1943/4; *gentieux* 1797/8; *Dieu:* lieu 275/6, *Bartholmieu* 381/2.

There is nothing to show whether the pronunciation is *ieu* or *iu.

§ 11. o. No rhymes in *eu* occur,⁷ and, before *r*, 0 free rhymes with *o* blocked: *meillour:* *jour* 331/2; *retoir* 437/8; *valour:* *jour* 351/2, &c. Before *s* only one such rhyme occurs: *religieus:* *processions* 3755/6.

Before a supported nasal *o* rhymes with the blocked or free *o:* *mont* (*mulum*): *pont* 173/4, *Clermont* 939/40, 1139/40; *Beaumont* 199/200; *processions:* *religieus* 3755/6.

Similar rhymes are not infrequent in Middle French and even earlier, cf. *L'Escoufle*, *temoute:* *monte* 4095/6; *La Panthére d'Amour*, *contes:* *toutes* 1880/1; Rustebuef, *mont* (*molt*): *ont.*⁹

§ 12. aire. In borrowed words *oire* (= *oriam*) is reduced to *ore:* *encore:* Vitoire 2571/2, 2861/2 (*Vitoire:* *memoire* 2555/6).

§ 13. *ue.* Two rhymes indicate the pronunciation *ue:* *entrois:* mois 3717/18; *Bertues:* *fes* 2373/4; *Coers* rhymes with *soers* in 587/8, but in lines 4063/4 the very distinctive Anglo-Norman rhyme *coer:* *fuyer* is found.

§ 14. *u.* *u* is found combined both with *o* and *i:* *ducs:* *prus* 2213/14; *escarmusse:* enbusse 1101/2; *Artus:* *Clarus* (= *Claris*) 51/2, 4099/100.

---

¹ Cf. also the graphy *Point* for the Spanish *Puente* 2196 (the graphy is wrongly changed in the text).
² It is in this position that the modern pronunciation first shows itself—cf. *voar,* sermon of thirteenth century (quoted Nyrop, i, § 160), and the examples of fifteenth-century rhymes given by Chatelain, *Recherches sur le vers français* an XVe siècle, pp. 35-36.
⁴ Line 1068 is evidently corrupt. For lines 313/14, 1223/4, in which the rhyme *renouerter:* *meslier* has been admitted into the text, see the critical note to line 313. For *voier* see above, p. viii, § 5.
⁵ MS. *chivache,* *gaigneue:* *pervee.*
⁶ See also below under *l.*
⁷ Unless *demoerst:* *hoere* 1145/6 is one, but the vowel here is more probably *eu* (*u*).
⁸ Quoted Brunot, H. L. Fr., i, p. 334.
⁹ Quoted Godefrot, who gives several other examples.
§ 15. au. The products of Latin ū + jod and ō + jod rhyme together: nuyt: desdueyt 435/6; anui: autrui 1723/4. No rhymes of ui either to u or i are found.

(b) Consonants.

§ 16. Palatals. ĉj gives two results: s(e) in the rhymes solas: pas 1601/2, : prelas 3797/8, more frequently ch, rhyming with the voiceless initial medio-palatal: franche (franca) : enfance 73/4, : ffrance 443/4, 771/2, 873/4, 1567/8, 3889/90. No rhymes indicate the hard pronunciation of the initial medio-palatal.

§ 17. Dentals. (a) t final is constantly disregarded both after vowels and consonants: Chaundos: tantos 3121/2, : hos 2257/8, 2719/20; mos : tantos 2401/2; Agen : logement 685/6; entroubleant : Baigerant 2375/6; d’adonc : ont 447/8; dit : merci 1421/2, : menti(f) 3787/8, : esly : lundy 2237/8.

(b) s is mute before t in the rhyme mist : dist (= dicit) 1783/4, and, if the suggested emendations are adopted, also in the rhymes poeste : trait 2749/50; estre : mettre 3133/4.

(c) z is regularly reduced to s : dils : jadys 1, 41/2; escuts : plus 605/6; fils : pris (p.pt.) 449/50; solas : pas 1601/2.

§ 18. Labials. The rhyme Maune : sanle 569/70 indicates a pronunciation of the group m’t without labial glide.

§ 19. Liquida. (a) After ē (from Latin a free) and ue, i and x fall : nez (natuts) : hostes 1609/10; Bertues (= Bretueil + s) : fes 2373/4. After i both vocalization and loss occur : Dieux : gentieux 1797/8; fieux 1943/4, and gentils : pas 1595/6, : d’avys 1851/2; sis 2017/18; hardis 2365/6, &c.; fils : pris 449/50, 489/90, &c.; petit 4135/6. The vocalized liquid merges in a preceding o : dous : nous 1427/8; mout : tout 3021/2, 3969/70, : pont 173/4, &c.

(b) In two or three rhymes to proper nouns r preceding a consonant is mute : Piergos : mos 701/2, 767/8, 3845/6; bachelers : Maguelais 969/70.


§ 21. The final consonant of the radical is often found written before flexional s, but never affects the rhymes, cf. : champs : aрестans 13/14, &c., ducs : vertuz 501/2, &c., corps : records 103/4, morts : corps 1387/8, escutez : plus 605/6.

(c) Unstressed Vowels.

In the extant copy of the poem unstressed vowels are added and omitted in the haphazard fashion usual in A.N. manuscripts. If, for the moment, we disregard orthography and assume syllabic correctness of metre we find that this irregularity

---

1 MS. Agent.
2 MS. dodont.
3 MS. merciet.
4 See above, § 6.
5 MS. Maguelais.

For the pronunciation of o + n + consonant cf. above, p. ix, § 11.

7 The regularity of the treatment of unstressed vowels observable on this assumption goes far to prove its validity. For further evidence cf. § D. Prosody.
of treatment is only apparent. Given correct octosyllabic lines, the values that must be attributed to the unstressed vowels are those that obtain in ordinary fourteenth-century continental French.

A. e.

I. Post-tonic.

(1) Post-consonantal. No examples of suppression.\(^1\) In the interior of the line, e placed before a consonant is always syllabic (cf. roialmé 110, coroné 112, banierés 1036, 1288, &c.); in the rhymes masculine and feminine endings are always distinguished. In lines 3223–6 and 3269–72 -ier and -iere form consecutive couplets.

(2) Post-vocalic. (a) Verbs.

(a) The terminations -oie, oies are dissyllabic in 101, 153, 1666, 2063, 2137, 2207, 2939, 3577, 3701, 3702. In a number of interrogative sentences in which -oie is followed by the unstressed pronoun, e has lost syllabic value—330, 632, 1034, 1907, 1706, 1953, 3556, 3935.\(^2\) It would be easy to restore syllabic value here by omitting the pronoun, but a similar reduction under like conditions is found in contemporary poets, e.g. Froissart,\(^3\) Gilles le Muisit.\(^4\)

(b) Termination -oient. Ordinarily dissyllabic, e.g. 2, 3, 255, 257, 390, 437 &c., this termination has monosyllabic value in 240, 269, 2689, 2752, 3326, 3384, 3923, 4086. In lines 332, 882, 1117, 1615, 1914, 2797, 3602, 3812, 4007, in which reduction is metrically required, the use of the imperfect (for perfect) is very probably in the majority of cases attributable to the scribe.\(^5\)

(y) Other verbal forms. No instances of reduction⁷: soie 972, soiènt 977, 2980, die 836, diènt 2101, ayé 3004, traient 3227.

(b) Substantives and adjectives. Syllabic value is retained with the single exception of archigais in 2765⁶, but archigaiès 3358, eawe 241, 262, 2474, 3439, espèès 2026, 3267, jorneè 903, galayès 1781, hardiè 3282, maladiè 4070, myè 838, î1141, 1383, 1428, &c., Normandie 209, vie 3181, 4094, liè 3147, joie 1581, 2097, 3766, &c., soiè 3124, voie 3731, lieuèes⁷ 2637, 2649, 3017. In the rhymes the various pairs e-ee, i-ie, ai-aie, or-oie are always kept apart; in 927–930, 375–379, 421–424, e, ê, and i, iè form consecutive couplets.

II. Praetonic.

(1) In hiatus to the tonic. (a) Verbal forms.

(a) In veoir and its parts e usually retains syllabic value—e. g. veoir 165, 1259, 2601, &c., veir 327, 1227, 3059; veoit 318, 1390, 2999, 3387, veîont 2785; veist 309,

---

1 For the discussion of two apparent exceptions cf. notes to lines 1058 and 3925.
2 Line 1239 Tant li dourroie dargen et dor is the only instance of reduction of oie unaccompanied by the unstressed pronoun, and here the introduction of de is very probably imputable to a scribe. Cf. p. xxxix.
3 Cf. Blume, who gives numerous instances of reduction before je (pp. 42–44), and Schmidt, who comments on the regularity of the reduction of oie to oi when je follows (p. 13).
4 Cf. below, p. xlii.
5 For the participial endings see below, p. xxiii.
6 Audele, l. 1285, is perhaps an exception.
7 MS. leger.

(1) Imperfect subjunctive of s-formation. Ordinarily intervocal s is preserved: fesist⁸ 647, 1861, 2505, fesisses 544, tramessist 1465; the forms in which it is lost are contracted in 1931 (fést), 1793 (fissent'), uncontracted in 194 (feïst'), 1643 (empreïst⁹).

(γ) Imperfect subjunctive of u-formation. Contracted forms are found, but the uncontracted predominate very decidedly:—

avoïr. eüist 450, 466, 2705, eïssent 2176; eüist (euïst) 162, 449, 1336, 1766, 1986, 2707, 4163, 4164, eïssent (eïssent) 188, 1255.
devoir. déïst 3660; deïst (deïst) 2030, 2818, 2930, deïssent (deïssent) 3032.
plaire, no uncontracted forms. plïst (pleïst) 2453, 3689.
poïr. peïssent 2042¹, poïst (peïst) 1211, 1463, 1765, 1985, 2455, &c.
(δ) Participles of u-formation. debere-type.
Contracted: aperçœï 3703, bœï 3553, deœï 444, tœï 1887.
Uncontracted: cheïs 3276, coneï 3616, esleïs 1684, receïs 3693, 3754.
Other types. Uncontracted with only one exception: eïes 1835, but eœï 1900; eœmeï 2587, esmeï 3158; veïs² 1896, veïz 2575, veïe² 1888, 3447.
(β) Substantival and adjectival forms. Reduction appears with some frequency before the termination our (eur), but rarely elsewhere.

+ a creœïsce 3193, but granter 2454.
+ e sœïsies, sœïliers⁸ 2436, sœïlee⁶ 2952.
+ i abatïs 3336, ferïs 3335, meïsmes 1499, meïsmement 3663¹⁰; but logïs 2792, 3492.
+ o benoïte 3488.
+ ou bourdeïr 18, courreïurs 2585; but joglour 18, menteur 17, courreur 2582, 2700, 2702, 2723, 3021.¹²
+ u portetïre 1476, asseïr 3462; but seïre 2784.
(2) In hiatus after the counterfonnic, s is always syllabic: detrières 934, paiïement 2024, 3969, 3748, vraiïment¹¹ 3176, 4088, joliïe 3, 478, joliïement 3013.
(3) Interconsonantal.

(a) Counterfinal. s usually syllabic: chevaleries 611, 2977, &c., chevalerousenent 315, 1225, bachelerie 612, 2978, &c., gueredon 4127, siereïment 2221, 3373¹⁴, dureïment 1598, 2152, 2675, 3279, fierïment 2791, premiïrement 931, 1167, 1870, 3664, meïsmenent 3663, souïleïment 2430, 2453, arbalastiers 953, 2997, 3087, 3253, samedi 749. Exception: darreïn 519.¹⁵

¹ Written veïes or veïts.
² 1906 veïes, pres. indic. 2nd pl.
³ MS. feïst or feïst.
⁴ MS. fireïnt.
⁵ MS. emprïst.
⁶ MS. emprœïst.
⁷ 2774 doubtful.
⁸ MS. veïe, veïue.
⁹ Or saïler, saïle; MS. seller, sellée.
¹⁰ For O.F. reïne cf. p. xiii.
¹¹ rendé in ll. 50, 1652 is doubtful, cp. note to l. 50.
¹² Always genetours.
¹³ MS. verreïment, carrreïment.
¹⁴ MS. benenons and seurment. In 3634 a disyllabic form was possibly used.
¹⁵ In 3799 debonairment should perhaps have been left.
Between a labial consonant + r a glide is often developed: atemperance 1627, fevierier 2044, 2295, averil¹ 3475.

(b) Initial. The future and conditional of faire are never shortened; of ferir syncopated forms of the perfect are found twice: fîrent 2531, fî 2739, but ferir 1244, 1329, 3169, ferêt 1197, feru 263.

Vrai and its derivatives are ordinarily shortened⁸, e.g. 320, 827, &c.; verai is required once, 886.

B. Other Vowels.

a retains syllabic value in: esfare 2198, paîour 3003, 3439, 4054, train² 746, 1219, 4010, traitour 3512, 3541, aïde 275, 2947, att 3187; it merges in the following vowel in gaigner 3159, and its derivatives gaignes 356, gaignons 1340, gaignerent 1228, gaignage 1394.

i is generally syllabic: alliance 1916, 1842, 1872, amiablement 2082, 2144, 2429, celestial 1272, carîgé 1084, 2699, viânde 3651, terriën 1704, 2422, crestien 1643, 1898, paciênce 1879, mcncîon 377, 388, 1679, 3414, possession 1594, 1791, conclusion 1378, hon 1108, glorîous 3422, graci'oses 2916, religieux 3756, gracîant 3759, gracîôt 3963.
Exceptions: amiablement 3688, terriën 1850.¹

o retains syllabic value regularly in poîdr 227, 310, 708, &c., roîne 59, 461, 518 &c., royalne 730, 1567 1676, 1804, 3110, 3612, oîr 53, 647, &c., oî (pf.) 743, 1469, oîrent 4031, oîses 989, and in oî (p. pt.) in 1902, 2798, 2914, 3649. In lines 394, 734, 888, 1370, 1385, 1386, 1400, 2467, 4085, in which a monosyllabic form of the participle seems required, the past indefinite jay oî used in all is probably faulty. In the identical lines 888 and 1400, Si come iay oî en mon recort, it has certainly been substituted by the scribe for the present oî, used in the precisely similar lines 508, 1930, 3852, 4004, and probably also in the very similar line 1386 Et a ce ge iay oy retraitî En la maiâre, in which the Herald also refers to a written source. In the identical lines 1384, 2626, 4085, Mais a ce ge iay oy conter, and in the somewhat similar lines 394, 734, 2467, in which the expression com iay oy conter (dire) is found, it is probably a mistake for the perfect used in the corresponding expressions made with entendre, e.g. 2047 Mais a ce ge je entendî. Cf. also 762, 1163, 1375, 2048.

u retains its syllabic value throughout: escuîer⁷ 1396, 1614, 1678, 2606, fuîr⁸ 3388, 4064, fuîrent 1345.

C. Proper Names.⁹

(1) French. Syllabic value of the unstressed vowel in hiatus is retained in Jehans 131, 151, 199, &c., Clayêkyn 1662, 2674, Normandië 209, Craîn 715, Loërayne

¹ Cf. also p. xvi, § 9.
² e is always kept in the MS.
³ In the obviously faulty l 3553 traîner seems to be required.
⁴ For the termination -ies cf. p. xvi, § 5 (io).
⁵ 145 is faulty.
⁶ In l. 1563 a dissyllabic word is required; it is possible that a contracted réâüne was used, but it seemed more likely, in view of the frequent instances
⁷ MS. always esquier.
⁸ MS. feyger.
⁹ The frequent use of the title comte and monâ, both of uncertain metrical value, makes it often impossible to determine the syllabic value of the proper names.
LINGUISTIC INTRODUCTION

335. Amenton 628, Milliën 673, Pierégo 701, 711, 768; reduction occurs in: Jehans 2125, Claykin 3975, Ken 172, Kersin 711, 2341 (Cressyn).

(2) English. Edouwart is regularly trisyllabic, cf. 57, 829, 3763, 4662, 4185, and so is Bartholomieu or Bertremieu,1 cf. 133, 381, 879, 1315; Guillaume, trisyllabic in 2251, 2272, 2648, 3156, 3202, 3210, is doubtful in 2462, 2737, 2756.2 Johan(s) (Jehans) is monosyllabic in 2275 and 2276, dissyllabic elsewhere; Hugh(es), dissyllabic in 2199, 2202, 2463, appears to be monosyllabic in 3232; Raoul, dissyllabic in 132 and 1615, is monosyllabic in 2729.

Wynchelesee is five-syllabled in 510, Calverlee is regularly quadrisyllabic, Burlee, Pennebrok (MS. Pembrok), and Warrewik, trisyllabic. The other surnames often fluctuate:—

Audelee, quadrisyllabic in 139, is trisyllabic in 1283 and also in 573, 881 and 1281 if the plural form of the verb be retained.

Canolles (Knolles), trisyllabic in 2129, 2463, is doubtful in 2321.

Cressewell is trisyllabic in 2270, dissyllabic in 1989.

Cobeham, trisyllabic in 571, is doubtful in 132 and 1313.

Felleton, quadrisyllabic in 1911, 2272, 2461, 2547, 2559, 2727, 2806, is doubtful in 1936, 2322, 2451, 2647, 2756, 3330.

Sarsburii is trisyllabic in 129, 150, 671, quadrisyllabic in 1206, doubtful elsewhere.

We may summarize the Herald’s treatment of unstressed vowels as follows:—regular retention of ø when it is interconsonantal or final after a consonant and after a vowel (except in the verbal endings -oie, -oient) or when it stands after a countertoic vowel; reduction beginning under certain conditions when ø precedes the tonic vowel (i.e. before stressed -our, and in certain verbal forms) or stands between a fricative labial and r; retention of syllabic value by o and u in hiatus, occasional consonantization of i and absorption of ø in hiatus.

This summary corresponds in every particular with the description given by Schmidt of the metrical usage of Gilles le Muisit, and with one exception, the slurring over of ø in the termination oient, it would serve equally well for Froissart.3 The deviations from continental usage in the Worcester MS. are entirely attributable to the scribes.

B. Morphology. (a) Nouns and Adjectives.

§ 1. Declension. In the Worcester MS. flexional s is used mainly to indicate number, but the study of metre and rhyme shows clearly that with the author its case significance was by no means obsolete. The addition or omission of s in the nominative is, in principle, entirely in conformity with later Old French usage: some of the exceptions observable are occasioned by the exigencies of verse-making.

In the interior of the line no breaches of rule are certainly attested, and some thirty-four correct nominatives are metrically required.4 In the rhyme words

1 The scribe often writes Bertram(e), but three syllables are always required.
2 Cf. note to l. 2462.
3 Cf. Bode.
4 Nom. sg. Princes is required some twenty times; other correct Nom. sg. in 12, 257, 803, 3821, 3833, 3849, 3956, 3962, 4136; Nom. pl. in 491, 1603, 1658, 2280, 3816, 4149.
irregularities are sometimes found, in particular in the complements of the verb to be,¹ the vocatives,² proper nouns, and words like estille, nombre, romant, fait, livre.³ The instances of correct observance, however, outnumber the incorrect in the proportion of 4:1, and this proportion indicates a grammatical usage widely different from that of both A.N. and contemporary continental French writers. Except in the north-east of France, where provincial writers, like Froissart ⁴, retain the older case system almost intact, the later fourteenth-century Frenchman was as uncertain in his use of flexional s as the earlier Anglo-Norman writers.⁵

The declension rules observed by the Herald are, in the main, those of Old French, but, as with Froissart, some modifications are admitted:—

1. Feminines ending in stressed vowels or consonants, and masculines of the père type, appear indifferently in the nominative singular with or without flexional s.
   Thus fem. sg. with s 144, 1416, 1434, 3030, 3449, 3841, 3952, 4026; without, 35, 426, 1018, 1356, 1619, 2218, 3565, 3796, 4037.
   Masc. sg. with s, 108, 822, 3131; without, 340, 2164, 2667, 3917.

2. Baron 193, 1792, compagnon 2648, home (as a substantive) 1692, trittour 3401, are admitted as nominatives; soer 587, and fie 1477, 1547, 4135, as accusatives, but fil is used in line 3767.
   The declension of the title-words comte and monseignour offers some difficulty, as the form in the MS. seems often to be at variance with the Herald’s usage.
   Comte (contes) is admitted as a substantive in rhyme in lines 337, 739, &c., and is metrically required elsewhere, but its use in lines 1173, 2183, over-long by a syllable, is perhaps attributable to the scribe, as the substitution of the older monosyllabic nominative form quens secures metrical correctness.

As a substantive seigneur is regularly declined: Nom. sg. sire 625, 1077, 2253, seigniour 567, 629, 631, 1201, 2367; acc. sg. seigniour 967, seigniô 1107, b 715, 1606, 2261; nom. pl. b 1339, 1704. As a title sire is found in 2559, and mess in 2371, 2673 (as a nominative), 2321, 2323 (as an accusative), but ordinarily it is mon that is used for both nominative and accusative. The metrical value of this abbreviated form fluctuates. Ordinarily trisyllabic, a dissyllabic form is metrically required in lines 132, 563, 2535, 2647, 2757, 3310, 3401, 3975.

§ 2. Feminine of Adjectives. The older forms of the one-termination adjectives still predominate, but the analogical forms in a are often metrically required: tel (f.) 185, 187, 1476, 1726, 3774, tele 1055, 1455; quel (f.) 2431, quele 115, cruelle 114; grand (f.) 230, 311, 458, 459, &c., grande 426, 810, 1122, &c.; loialment 4125, loialiert 3374; fortment 206, 1886; vaillamment 431, 441, 503, &c.; grief 784.


---

¹ Cf. Brunot, i, p. 411: ‘Partout des vestiges de déclinaison, nulle part une déclinaison véritable, nulle part un usage régulier.’
² e.g. 1270, 3496.
³ estille 737, 868; nombre 993; romant 1112; fait 1256; livre 1524.
⁴ Cf. Mann, pp. 39—42.
(b) Verbs.¹

§ 4. Infinitive Present. With one exception,² 
"fuir : coer" in line 4063/4, the terminations of the infinitive of the 2nd and 3rd conjugations are kept apart from that of the 1st conjugation. *Avoir, pooir, voloir* rhyme with *voir* (verum) 111/12, 189/90, 1293/4, &c.; *videre* rhymes in -oir (*voir* 1259/60, 1457/8, &c.) and -ir (*envahir* 327/8, *alentir* 3060); *recipere* in -eer (*voir* 7/8); *conquerrer* in -erre (*conquerir* 339/40) and -ir (*conquerir* : ouvrir 1701/2).

§ 5. Terminations. (a) The only termination for the 1st plural attested in rhyme is -ons: *avrons* 983/4, *atons* : *barons* 1179/80. *Sons* is metrically required in 3163.³

(b) For the 2nd plural of the subjunctive present -ez is the only attested form: *escoutes* : *pures* 53/4; *ales* : *entendes* (imperative) 793/4; *combates* : *tromes* (ind. pres.) 955/6; *amesnes* : *prenes* (ind. pres.) 1011/12; *mettes* : *oses* (p.p.t.) 975/6; *serves* : *aves* 4137/8. In the imperfect indicative and conditional -es is monosyllabic in 543 *tounies* and 291B *vouurie*.⁴

§ 6. Present Indicative, 1st Sing. In the 1st conjugation forms without -e are found or are metrically required, but those in -e preponderate: *affy* : *entendy* 1375/6; *merci* : *servi* 3807/8; *pri* : *my* 4117/18; *suppli* 3182; but *adresse* : *joefnese* 79/80; *conte* : *aconte* 95/6, 265/2; *affie* : *chivachie* 799/10, *compagnie* 1029/80, *Brie* 1527/8; *esmay* : *vraye* 851/2; *ottroie* : *vorroie* 3537/8; *presente* : *attente* ⁵ 3137/8; *conseille* 3522; *ose* 1658.

In the 3rd and 4th conjugations the etymological form is the only one attested in rhyme: *doy* : *moy* 469/70; *croy* : *floy* 671/2; *sray* : *verray* 885/6; *di* ⁶ : *nasquy* 1549/50.

§ 7. Present Subjunctive, 3rd Sing. The 3rd sing. of *garder* appears twice in the older form *gard* : *Rocheward* 2333/4, *dart* ⁷ 2775/6, and *laisi* is used 3144, otherwise e is always added: *garde* : *garde* 293/4, 2361/2; *avoye* : *soye* 319/20; *joie* 661/2; *aiwe* : *vieve* 4153/4; *pense, ottoire* are metrically attested in lines 1277, 4182.

The termination -ge is found once in rhyme, *remorge* : *George* 2287/8.

§ 8. Imperfect Indicative. The terminations are the same for all conjugations, e.g. *regreloït* : *avoit* 359/60, *vantoïent* ⁸ : *estoient* 481/2, &c.


¹ So few pronominal forms are metrically attested that the whole subject has been relegated to the section dealing with Orthography.
² In lines 1647/8 where oier rhymes with escotier simple transposition brings a correct rhyme, one, moreover, already used by the Herald (53/4).
³ *The citotismes* of 1. 1177 is probably a corruption of the Northern *citiemens*.
⁴ MS. *voudroies*. In 1928, 2940 the syllabic value of the termination is doubtful owing to the uncertainty as to the syllabic value of the radical.
⁵ MS. *present* : *attent*.
⁶ MS. *die*.
⁷ MS. *garde* : *darte*.
⁸ MS. *avantoient*.
⁹ For the termination of the 1st and 3rd person cf. above, p. xi.
¹⁰ MS. *amesneres*.
¹¹ MS. *mesnera*.
¹² MS. *attendroiet*. 

(b) Strong s perfect. The 3rd plural is found in rhyme\(^1\) under two forms: the more usual is -irent, e.g. firent : combatirent 601/2; mirent : virent 2783/4, : partirent 2834/5; prirent : frirent 2531/2; : partirent 3813/14; once -issent :issent : denissent 3031/2.

(c) Strong u perfect. The only forms attested in rhyme\(^2\) are ut rhyming with Talebot 137/8 and mot 2491/2, and fu rhyming with kenu 877/8 and vertu 2329/30.

§ 11. Imperfect Subjunctive. The only persons of the u-formation attested in rhyme have stressed -i : poist : tramessist 1465/6, denissent\(^3\) :issent 3031/2.

C. Syntax.

(a) Nouns and Adjectives.

Case. As in Old French, the accusative serves for the dative of possession and participation: l'amour Dieu 773, la grace Dieu 850, &c., and Ses somiers et son cariage firent les coureurs grant damage 2699, Et la congie dona sa gent 3747.

Ungrammatical, but not infrequently observed in other writers, is the use of the nominative with se tenir pour in 3790 (Et bien se tenoit pour contens), and of cher uninflected in 3926 (Et mout fesoient vaux chier).

(b) Verbs.\(^6\)

Person. Hesitation between the singular and plural of the 2nd person is still found, cf. 1265-1268.

The use of the 3rd person in line 2912 Henry ... qui s'appelle ..., i.e. in an adjectival clause referring to a vocative, is probably a concession to metre, as such constructions seem only to appear in verse; that in line 2408, where sont refers to a compound subject containing a pronoun of the 2nd person (Vous et vos gens sont venu), is possibly due to the same cause, but similar instances occur in prose writers.

Number. In accordance with older French usage gent and puissance are followed by the verb in the plural in ll. 160*, 187*, 3683; os on the other hand and Mood of the Verb and with Prepositions examples are included to which the metrical test does not apply. An asterisk is affixed to the examples not quoted in extenso that are metrically attested.

\(^1\) For the graphies -issent, -issent, -istrent, cf. below, p. xlix.
\(^2\) For graphies cf. below, p. l.
\(^3\) MS. denissent.
\(^4\) The scribe has inserted a.
\(^5\) e.g. in Jehan de la Mote's 'Li Regret Guillaume'. Cf. Scheler's note to 886 'On s'attend à cier, mais notez que cier est adverbe'.
\(^6\) The syntax of the Pronoun is taken in the section dealing with Orthography, as the indications afforded by rhyme and metre are too fragmentary to allow of adequate treatment here. The syntactical remarks given below are based on the study of the prosody, but in the sections dealing with the Number

BLACK PRINCE
is regularly followed by a singular verb (761*, 2393*, 2509*, &c.), as are bataille, avant garde, arièr garde, barnages, and also compaigne in 1738 and 3586*.

In the case of compound subjects the usage is also that of ordinary Old French, i.e. if the subject precedes, a plural verb is usual, unless the nouns coupled are synonyms; if the subject follows, both numbers are found, but the singular is the more frequent, e.g.—

Subject preceding plural verb: 660*, 1021*, &c.
"""" singular verb: 76* (joliete and noblece), 2941* (raisons et droit), 3422* (Le glorious dieux and seims Pieres).

Subject following singular verb: 35*, 663*, 1518*, 1707*, &c.
"""" plural verb: 1317*, 1710*, 2802*, 4090*.

In line 2720, metrically incorrect, tense and number are probably both to be ascribed to the copyist.5

Plus de followed by a numeral takes a singular verb in 3434 Plus de deux mille en y noia. A like construction is found in other texts but rarely. Cf. Plus de xv mile n’an soit sans entres, Gui de Bourgogne 633, and Plus de set mile en gist mors e naffres, Ger. de Rouss. p. 384.4

Tense. (1) Past Tenses. The poem is a historical narrative, couched in epic style, and consequently the past definite is the predominant tense. Whether narrating or describing, the Herald hurries on from fact to fact, much as did earlier the Roland poet and all succeeding epic writers down to and including the author of ‘Baudouin de Sebougr’.5 It is only here and there that he stops to describe at length and betakes himself to the imperfect. Cf. 1606–1638.

Apart from this characteristic epic usage—stylistic rather than grammatical—the distinction between the past definite and the imperfect is observed as in modern French. Cf. 367/8 Et trouva le roy de Beaume Qui gisoit morz sur le champaigne, 2538/41 Lors se revindrent sans detri A Navaret ou se logeoiient Et par les prisoniers qu’avoint Sorent del host la verite, and 2696/9. The few deviations, such as that in 924 Car tout plorant s’en departoit and perhaps the use of venoit in 3757, 3764, 3959, are imputable to metrical exigencies.

The use of the past indefinite is that of Old French verse, which seems to have found this composite form of great metrical convenience.6 It often stands for a past definite, e.g. 600, 739, 1445/6, 2233, 2584, &c., and is sometimes even coupled with this tense. Cf. 1121/2 Adonc comencea le huee Et mould grande noise est levee, and 1157/8.

In entire conformity also with the Old French usage7 is the use of the past anterior as equivalent to a perfect. Cf. 598/9 Tant chivacha soir & matyn Qu’a Plammuthe fu arrives (but a few lines lower down Tant siglerent par my le mer Qu’il

---

1 But cf. 763... l’une hos l’autre choisi et ... l’un devant l’autre se logèrent.
2 Cf. Krafft, p. 9 et seq.
3 Cf. below, p. xlvii.
4 Quoted Krafft, p. 50. In the somewhat similar construction in lines 3415/16 the plural verb of the text should perhaps be replaced by a singular.
5 Cf. Vising, p. 17 et seq., and Meyer-Lübke, iii, § 113.
6 Cf. Vising, p. 74.
7 Cf. Vising, pp. 78 and 79.
arriverent a Bourdiaux), 1388/9 Dieux eit les ames! car li corps feurent demore sur les camps, and 2219, 2515, 4073.

The fuller significance of the auxiliary verbs avoir and estre here noticeable is observable also in two other constructions exemplified in the poem:—

(a) The use of avoir to make a completed present: 1075/6 Je vous pri en ceste journee Avez l'avant garde menee, 1047/8 Et lour pri a Qu'il pansassent de bien ferir Et qu'il ne s'esparnassent mie D'avoire la bataille partir. (Cf. Baudouin de Sebourg, xxiv, 263. Je vos pri que chascuns ait le jovente armee.)

(b) The use of the compound infinitive with verbs of mood: 3675/6 Et le jor estoit ja passes Qu'il devoit estre retournes. 3445/8 Tant fut granz la desconfiture Que je croy qu'onques creature Ne pooit onc avoir veye Le pareille. . . . 3660/1 Mais s'on les deust avoir pendu . . . (Cf. Aye, p. 28, Au pas li glouton durent estre passe.)

(2) Future. Examples of two Old French usages may be noted:—

(a) The use of the future to denote habitual action in 3829/30 Car l'ennemi qui tous jours veille Plus tost grevera un preudhomme Que un mauweis.

(b) The use of the future of vouloir as a present: 980/1 Ensi les vorray je arraier Dist lui Dauffyns, pierre, p joy, 2254/6 Et maint bon chevalier hardi, Qui maintenant ne voeil nomer, Car aillours en vorray parler, and by emendation in 43/5 Ores est bien temps de commencer Ma matere et moy adreicer Au pourpos ou vorai (MS. volot) venir.

Mood. The Herald's use of Mood is that of his continental contemporaries.

(i) Noun Clauses. The subjunctive is found with verbs of wish and command (e. g. 883, 977, 1465*, 2235, &c.), of fearing (3003*), of intention (544*, 839, &c.), and with impersonal verbs expressing moral judgement (456*, 1639*, 2287*). Cuidier, used positively, is followed by a subjunctive in 1255 and 1764*. Verbs of emotion are still constructed with the indicative, cf. 784, 4056; in 249/50 the form of indirect question with the conditional is used with soi merveillier.

A few clauses call for explanation:—

(a) In 1176/8 Puis qu'il plest a Seint George ensy Que nous estiemes li derier Et nous serons tout li premier; 1899 Et ore a droiz et Dieux consentu Que nous avons eu vertu; 2356/7 Et Dieux . . . consenti qu'il feurent passe the indicative is used, as not infrequently in Old French,^ to emphasize the reality of the fact expressed in the subordinate clause. The subjunctive is found when the expression of wish is stronger, e. g. in 2633/4 Mais ne pleust pas au filz Marie Que cely jour venissent mye . . . , 2453/5 Que il li pleust . . . Li granter . . . Qu'il peust aler . . .

(b) In 835/7 Mais nient contresiant pas ne voeil Qu'on die que par mon orgoel Moerge . . . the subjunctive (moerge) is probably due to the negative implied in the governing clause.

(c) The use of the conditional in 4143/4 Et lour supplia . . . Que chascuns les aidier vorroit is probably to be ascribed to A.N. influence. The construction is

^ Cf. Branot, i, p. 243; Meyer-Lübke, iii, §§ 300, 303; and Engwer, from whom the parallel examples are taken (pp. 16 and 33).
found not infrequently in Gower (cf. Miroir 1060/1 une file que vorroit qu’au sainte l’en la guideroit) and had its starting point in all probability in the Middle English use of the periphrasis with shulde in noun clauses depending on verbs of wish and command.\(^1\)

(a) Adverbial Clauses. (a) Hypothetical Clauses of Rejected Condition.

(a) The usual construction is that of Modern French. Imperfect indicative in the Protasis; Conditional present in the Apodosis. Cf. 543\(^3\), 727\(^6\), 1722\(^{\&c.}\).

(b) The subjunctive is still frequently used; sometimes, as in older French, in the imperfect. The types are:

\(a\). Imperfect subjunctive and imperfect subjunctive 2029\(^{\&c.}\), 2774\(^{\&c.}\).

\(b\). Imperfect subjunctive and pluperfect subjunctive 2816\(^{\&c.}\).

\(c\). Pluperfect subjunctive and pluperfect subjunctive 449\(^{\&c.}\), 2175\(^{\&c.}\), 2705\(^{\&c.}\).

\(d\). Imperfect subjunctive and imperfect indicative 3660 *Mais si home les deust avoir pendu Lour faloit il faire p. force* (cf. Froissart\(^6\) Se il se fuissent embattu ils estoient perdu d’avantage, II, 67, \&c.).

(b) In the other forms of adverbial clauses we note the following points:

(a) In temporal clauses introduced by avant que and devant que, both subjunctive and indicative are found, the former in 1211, 1865, the latter in 3320.\(^4\)

(b) As not infrequently in Old French\(^7\), particularly in the north-east and in Anglo-Norman, a subjunctive is used in comparative clauses in 911\(^{9}\) and 3361\(^{\&c.}\).

(c) In the clauses depending on tant the subjunctive is used in 817, 1151, 1179; the indicative in 894 (Tant ferey que bien seres saus) and in 69, 216, 241, \&c., when the result is looked upon as certain.

(d) In the consecutive clauses, determining a negative principal clause, the subjunctive is found as usual in 1335 *Tant qu’il n’i avoit si hardy Qu’il n’eust le coer esbaky, and 3264 La ne fut . . . Nul coer en monde si hardis Qe ne puist estre esbahis,* and the use of the indicative in the similar construction of 308 *Unes ne fuist corps si hardis Qe ne puist estre esbahis* is probably attributable to the scribe.

(3) Adjectival Clauses.\(^8\) In 2980\(^{\&c.}\) the subjunctive is used in the clause determining a superlative, but, as usual in Old French, an indicative is found in that determining le darrein, I. 520, and in the clauses denoting extent of capacity: Le plus tost que il pourra 1095, *Au musel qil poit 3914,* and Des meillours Qe home poet trouver 2993. In the two generalizing relative clauses—Saches qe moy et ma compaigne y entremots p lequel lieu Qe nous y pliera a entrer 2946/9; Chescun de eux sa partie tenoit A quel part qe meults li plesoit 3905/6,—the indicative is also used.\(^9\) The construction in

---

\(^1\) E. g. A voice me heede I ne shulde nought feinte. (Adam Davy’s Dream), cf. below, p. xxx.

\(^2\) This construction is so usual that it is probable that the poit of l. 818 Si home vous poit mettre a acort Dieux et la saincte Trinitee Vous en furroit savoir ben gree would have been better taken as poit contracted and not poit.

\(^3\) MS. fay for faist in the Apodosis.

\(^4\) By emendation also in II. 1066–8.

\(^5\) Quoted Stimming, Zts. für rom. Phil. v, p. 338.

\(^6\) The MS. gives furroient, which stands probably for a 3rd sg. past definite, cf. below.

\(^7\) Cf. Horning, Zts. f. rom. Phil., v, p. 391.

\(^8\) For clauses depending on negative principal sentences cf. below, p. xlvii.

(4) Infinitive. The older construction of simple infinitive depending on a finite verb is rare. It stands with consentir in line 1803, and plaire (impersonal) in line 2454. With other verbs a preposition is always used: a with soi adrecier 80/81*, aider 1420*, comander 1109*, defendre 157*, se mettre 2824*, se plaire 775, 1877, 2949*, 3689*, se prendre, prendre garde 2240*, supplier 2489*, tarder 1666*; de with accorder 1054*, attiser 3180*, s'avanter 482*, s'esmayer 852*, s'espargner 1049, esprouver 1181*, soi penser 270/1*, penser 1244*; with comencer a is usual, cf. 89, 301, &c., but de is found in 1180. Before an infinitive depending on locutions like mettre m'entente, m'estudie, a and en are used, e.g. a 47, en in 70; after locutions consisting of the verb estre and a noun or adjective de and a are both found: de with estre tamps in ll. 43, 1649, and estre pres, 1052, 2610; a with merveille fu 327, 1123, 1227, &c., grans dedus fu 1182, merveilleux 3292.

With both the simple and with the prepositional infinitive, whether they serve as complement of a finite verb or as an adverbial extension, the subject is not infrequently expressed:

1803/4 Si ne purroit il consentir Un Bastard Roialme tenir;
2502/3 Lors comanda a apparaillier Loost pur partir . . . ;
3342/3 La ot home commande y estre La reregarde sur le les . . . ;
3176/8 Si verrayment come vous sauez Qe ie ne sui pas cy venus ffors pur droit estre sustenus . . .

This construction is by no means rare in Old and Middle French. Cf. Tobler, Vermischte Beiträge, i. 13; Stimming, Zts. für rom. Phil. x. 535.

Auxiliary Verbs. The verbs comencer à, prendre à, vouloir, faire occur with great frequency and at times with such weakened significance as to form with the infinitive they accompany a mere periphrasis for a finite verb.

This weakened use of comencer à and prendre à is observable in the following:—
Donc comença a apeler Le bon Mareschal . . . 938, Et chescuns prist a chevauchier

---

2 The scribe has inserted de, a construction familiar to him, to judge from the headlines.
3 In 41 de is used, perhaps introduced from the line following.
4 The scribe has omitted de.
5 Stimming (Boeve de Haumont, note to line 2548) gives lines 3176/8 as analogous to the A.N. construction faire . . . estre fermé &c. It is, however, unconnected with the use of faire, and the use of the passive—probably here due to metrical exigencies—is found elsewhere. Cf. Troie, 3686 Si envoions en lor contre Por la terre estre confondue; Mir. N. D., xxxix. 1066 Et y fu du pere envosias Pour nous estre a dieu ravies, xxxix. 73 Quanque dire nos consentons a estre fait (all quoted by Tobler); Por estre moe deshirete ne lairete (Trist.), quoted by Stimming; and the following from Monstrelet, quoted by Basse (Das finale Satzverhältniss in der Entwicklung der französischen Sprache), Pour laquelle reparacion estre faite madame et ses enfants prendrent conclusion criminelle, i. 341.
LINGUISTIC INTRODUCTION

111, Lors se présent a chevauchier Parmy Navarre, jour et nuit 2470/1, and in 920, 3321, 3365, 3598, 3870.1

The periphrasis with vouloir takes the place of a subjunctive in polite requests and commands, e.g. in 404/5 Priant au Roy... Qu'a mercy il les vousist prendre, 1869-1881 priant au Prince... Car il lui pleasure a socourir Droiture et lie... Et qu'il vousist... Envoier nefis, and similarly in 2429, 3187, 3689, 4118, 4144, and in 2235 Et l'endemain fist ou crier Que chescuns voeille apparailler; it functions as a future in 106 materie a qui je voeil tendre, and 260, as a conditional in 19 Qui tourroit faire une grimace Ou contre-feroit le lynche, as a present in 1290 Si que pour Dieu vous voel priar, and 3153/4 Et ne se voueillent plus attendre; Au combatre voueillent entendre, and cf. 105, 1879, as a past definite in 3115 Et le Princes voet... fus de la montagne descendre, and 1591, and as an imperfect in 1247 Car vers lui se voilott traire.

Faire is used almost constantly with the verbs apparailler and amasser, cf. 226/7, 733, 1931, 1967, 2012, 2892, assembler 228, 486, 547, 729, 864, &c., often with mander 579, 3965, 3873, and crier 2235, 2640, and also in 603 Il fist carcier tous ses vesseaux, 647... Qu'il ne faitist tout exiler, 1939 Entrus qu'il fissent trouasser, 2436 Lors fist ses letres sailler, 3370 Par trois foits les fist realer, 3899 Et lors fist tous les compagnons Mettre en tous les garisons. In all cases a causative signification is discernible.

These usages are not entirely foreign to the continental French,2 but they are, as a rule, employed but sparingly. It is only in the countries in which Teutonic influence is strong that instances occur in anything like as high a proportion. In England, under the influence of do, give, will, this modal use showed itself early, and Burghardt, the latest writer on the subject, attributes the similar development in Northern France, on the Belgian border, to the Belgian influence.3 The usage is particularly frequent in 'Baudouin de Sebourg'4 and the 'Geste de Liege' of Jean des Preis.5 Cf. 'Baudouin de Sebourg': Tout droit envers Tournai comenchanent a aler vi. 774; Quant li Rouges-Lions le prist a ecouter i. 500; Font leur gens ordener vii. 194; Pour Dieu vous voet prier viii. 729. Jean des Preis: l'archeveche volet vaquier, l'eawe de somme qui bien vult circuer la citeit.

Between the fourteenth-century usages in the two countries there seem to have been some slight differences:—

(1) The later A.N. almost discarded prendre à in favour of comencer,6 but the Northern Continental French showed no such predilection.

1 These verbs are used in their ordinary signification in 1124, 1159, 2050.
2 Cf. Haase p. 100; Meyer-Lübke, Gr. iii. § 326; Stimming, Boeve de Hamtone, Notes to 148, 154, 259, 1202; Ernst Burghardt, Ueber den Einfluss des Englischen auf das Anglo-Normannische, in 'Studien zur englischen Philologie,' xxiv, pp. 23, 33, 51, 65, 69, 74.
3 Cf. Burghardt, op. cit.
4 Op. cit. p. 76, Note: 'Alle diese syntaktischen Erscheinungen finden sich in dem in der Nähe von Valenciennesentstandenen, also germanischem Gebiet eng benachbarten, Baudouin de Sebourg, 2. B. co-

mencer mit dem Inf. im Sinne des verb. finitum,'... prendre, volar ditto.
5 'Dans la Geste voloir est constamment employé pour donner au verbe la forme periphrastique, c'est entre les mains d'un rimeur un excellent moyen pour aider la prosodie.' Scheler's Glossaire.
6 Quoted Burghardt, pp. 76, 77.
7 Burghardt, p. 33.
(2) A.N. tended to construct *comencer* more and more frequently with a simple
infinitive,\(^1\) while Northern French retained the use of the preposition.

(3) The use of *faire* as a simple tense auxiliary is carried much further in A.N.
than in Northern French, in which ordinarily a slight causative meaning remains.
In all these respects the Herald’s usage is the continental.

**Agreement of Particibles.**\(^2\) (1) Participle conjugated with *avoir*. The Herald’s
ordinary usage is:—

(a) *Object follows*—non-agreement—932, 1275, 1839, 1900, 3062, 3151, 3152,
3289, 3668.

(b) *Object precedes*—agreement:—
   (a) Auxiliary + *Object* + Participle—641, 929, 1059, 1076, 1137, 1477, 1709,
1744, 2845, 3476, 4055.
   (b) *Object* + Auxiliary + Participle—1891, 3175, 4170.

The exceptions are as follows:—

(a) Agreement with the object placed after the participle, 1009, 3185, 3447, 3730.

(b) Non-agreement with an object placed before the participle:—

(a) Auxiliary + *Object* + Participle—one doubtful instance only in line 3062,
*Avoit ordne sa bataile et duit* in which duit is a somewhat uncertain emendation.

(b) *Object* + Auxiliary + Participle. In this position the participle is not infre-
dually invariable. The examples are:—*Et la matere lour a moustre* 1848, *Qui
l’avoir assene* (f.) 2053, *Que li Princes li a mande* (f.) 2964, *Je l’ay passe* (f.) legi-
rement 1410 and 4996, *Cils Cardinals nous a trai 922, de la grace qu’il lour a fait* 3489,
*S’on les deust avoir pendu* 3660.

(c) In line 3715 *Tant jour et nuit ont chevauchié* the participle is made to agree
with a preceding accusative of time.

(2) Participle conjugated with *estre*. The ordinary rule of agreement with the
subject is violated in 481 *A l’Escluse assemblez estoient Nefs d’Espaigne* ...

The Herald’s usage is that of his continental contemporaries except that
the proportion of uninflected participles following the direct object is perhaps
somewhat higher. Similar instances occur in Froissart⁸, Deschamps⁹, and more
frequently in Christine de Pisan⁶, but it is only in a writer like Jehan de la Mote⁸
that they are relatively as numerous, and with him, as also with the Herald,
pronunciation must probably be taken into account.

The slurring of *e* final first showed itself in the termination -*ee*, and already in
‘Baudouin de Sebourg’ *jornee* and *vespree* figure in *é-assonances.*⁷ In the Herald’s
poem, as we have seen, the substantival termination -*ee* is still intact, but the
relatively high proportion of uninflected participles of verbs of the first conjugation,
i.e. ending in -*ee* and -*ees* indicates probably the beginning of this reduction.

---

¹ Burghardt, pp. 28–29, e.g. Langtof, *assaylir comencayt, aorder comencayt*.
² All examples given here are metrically attested.
³ Cf. *passes for passees* in II, 100, 3677.
⁴ Cf. Bode, p. 76, who quotes four instances from vol. iii.
⁵ Cf. Müller, p. 59, e.g. *ma matiere que troph ai delaisé: la relation que trouye ay &c.*
⁶ Cf. Scheler, note to 529–30, ‘L’auteur est très négligent quant à l’accord du pt. passé avec le régime
direct.’
(c) Indeclinable Words.

(1) Conjunctions.  (a) Direct construction takes the place of indirect in 1075/6

     Je vous pri en ceste journee Aies l'avant garde mene.

     (b) In two instances juxtaposition is used instead of subordination: Gardez

           si vous Englois trouvez Ouesqe eux vous vous combates 955/6, and 785/6 Et se

           ne poet on destourner Mourir ne faille a l'assamblier.

 With both these verbs juxtaposition was particularly frequent in Old French.1

 (c) In 1035/6, 1877, que is replaced by car, as frequently in Middle French.2

 (d) To indicate a slight pause si is sometimes inserted between the subject and

     the predicate, e.g. 114/15 Il maintint guerre moul t cruelle Laquele si dura longe temps,

     509/10 Et saches qe cest journee Si fuist devant Wynchelesse, 1028/9 Cils deux si

     estoient sans filte . . . , and 1786/7, 2941. A similar usage is found in Froissart (cf.

     L'autre raison si estoit . . . ; Jupiter si est son droit perere)3 and other late Old French

     or Middle French writers.4

 (2) Prepositions. Two or three older French usages may be noted:

     (a) The construction in which the subject is conceived as the source of the

           action and not the doer5 found two or three times: Et s'est de ce voir 8, Car c'est

           almoigne et charitee De bien dire 35/6, De ce est bien chose certaine 3782, and in

           a shortened comparative sentence in 1476/7 Qui luye avoir tel (MS. cel) porture Envoie

           come de son filz.6

     (b) The illogical use of forsque7, excluding what could never have been included,

           in 1860/1 Qe y n'est home vivant fforsqe dieu qi li feisit tort.

     (c) The use of a with alliter in 21938, and traitier in 3837.

 D. Prosody.

 (a) Syllabic correctness.

 A cursory perusal of the extant MS. would certainly lead one to form a poor

 opinion of the Herald's metrical skill. On almost every page, 6-, 7-, 9-, 10-syllabed

 and even longer lines come near outnumbering the octosyllabic, and reduction

 to syllabic correctness would seem to involve re-writing the whole poem.

 Appearances here, however, are entirely misleading. We have already seen

 that in a large number of lines the adoption of continental pronunciation and

 grammar brings with it rectification of the metre; and examination of the remainder

 supplies further and conclusive evidence of the metrical correctness of the poem in

 its original form. The faulty lines, whether too long or too short, are, in nearly all

 cases, of the type that are readily corrected by the application of the methods that

 ordinarily obtain in the editing of texts from A.N. manuscripts, viz.: a change of order,

 1 Cf. Ritchie, p. 141.
 2 Meyer-Lübke, Gr. iii, § 585—this construction

     is particularly frequent in 'Baudouin de Sebourc'.

 3 Quoted by Ebering, Zts. f. rom. Phil. v. 345.
 4 Cf. Tobler, Vrai Aniel, p. 25.
 5 Cf. Tobler, V. B. i, No. 2.
 6 Cf. Tobler, V. B. i, p. 15.
 7 Cf. Tobler, V. B. iii, No. 13.
the adoption of one or other of the concurrent forms of a word, or the omission or addition of some entirely unimportant particle. The lines that cannot readily be reduced to regular octosyllabic form by the adoption of some such simple methods form such an insignificant proportion of the poem that they cannot fairly be taken as evidence of defective skill on the part of the poet.

The discussion of these more refractory lines will be found in the critical notes.\(^1\)

The classified list of the others is as follows:

(1) Change of order. 578, 962, 1211, 1352, 1468, 2542, 2581, 3436/7, 4178.

(2) Adoption of one or other (usually the shorter) of the concurrent forms of ovesges, illeoges, adonges, adont, onges, encoer, ore, lors, come—e.g. aovec for ovesque 118, 943, 1093, &c., illoc for illoge 453, 600, 693, 883, &c., adone for adonges 656, 724, 890, 984, &c., donc for donges 938, 1245, for adonges 999, 1850, onc for onges 3446, 4186, encore for encoer 1014, 2683, 2189, 2844, &c., or for ore 1602, 1639, 1814, &c., lores for lors 3391, 3841, com for come 344.

(3) Use of the simple for the derivative or vice versa, e.g. mener for amener 1002, 3736, aquille for quille 3739, vis for avis 2586, 2650, 3222, partir for departir 806, 1252, 2116, desus for sus 1093, desoubs for soubs 3554, sur for desur 2711, vers for devers 1247, devant for avant 3320, contre for encontre 3904, encontre for contre 3761, esmerveillot for merveillot 3298, rapasser for passer 977, remercier for mercier 3080, recomnecier for comencer 3869, tourna for retourna 2903, garda for regarda 2962, accort for accorder 848, cel for cely 294, cely for celle 1063, for ce 1507, nulli for null 2950, 3120, for null home 329, doel for doelor 278.

(4) The omission or addition of one of those insignificant words, of no importance to meaning, that the A.N. scribes were notoriously prone to neglect or insert:

*Et* omitted 127, 594, 663, 862, 1011, 1023, 1135, 1269, 1355, 1359, 1434, 1579, 1848, 1899, 2277, 2239, 2713, 2953, 3013, 3139, 3339, 3799, 3802, 3811, 3965, 3987, 4045; added 125, 139, 135, 180, 389, 1284, 1286, 1405, 1618, 1655, 1676, 1691, 1736, 1968, 2138, 2244, 2474, 2525, 2595, 3395, 3647, 3921.

*Ne* (nec) added 193.

*Se* (sic) added 894; *se* (si) omitted 450.

*De* omitted (simple repetition) 62, 1568, 3508; obtruded in an older construction:

773, 850 (genitive for accusative), 1468, 3996 (with adverbs of quantity), 2454 (finite verb + Infinitive); added 97, 131, 874, 2114, 2250, 3757, 3810.

*A* omitted 1542, 2604, 2646, 3308, 3688; added 604, 4168.

Other prepositions added 1882, 3179, 3478.

*En* omitted 2704.

*Article* omitted: before names of peoples 1131, 2678, 3046, 3364; before titles 277, 292; in combinations of verb + noun 400, 566, 1494, 1791, 1992, 2264, 3668; otherwise 21, 69, 1302, 1931, 2193, 2227, 2751, 3166, 3282, 3554; added 155, 335, 337.

*une* added 21.

---

\(^1\) Cf. II. 145, 212, 1346, 1373, 2462, 2542, 2910, 3077, 3150, 3163, 3546, 3553/4, 4042, 4119.
Unstressed pronouns:

- *je* omitted 45, 1410, 2497, 2646; added 845, 3504.
- *vous* omitted 812, 947.
- *il* omitted 182, 447, 640, 2425; added 2141.
- *ils* omitted 258, 2540, 2581.
- *elle* omitted 2564, 2581, 3567.
- *le* omitted 893, 2542; added 1260, 3034, 3137.
- *lui* (l') omitted 1958, 2162; added 1772.
- *les* omitted 1501.
- *lour* omitted 592.
- *se* (s'en) omitted 889, 1555, 2236; added 1127, 1440, 1748, 3153, 3601.
- *en* added 1470, 2984.
- *y* omitted 242, 474, 736, 957, 3653; added 305, 1239, 1296.
- *ce* omitted 2499, 3222, 3907; added 526, 2478, 3519.

Adverbs of Degree:

- *tres* omitted 2143, 3596, 4154, 4156; added 169, 741, 842, 1007, 1266, 1377, 3058, 3756.
- *moult* omitted 996, 2238, 2326; added 2096, 3070, 3100.
- *tout* omitted 2221; added 438, 1870, 2001, 2294.
- *trop, par, bien* added 2868, 941, 1020, 2214, 157.
- *si* omitted 394; added 431.
- *plus* omitted 862; added 1134.

Adjectives of Quality:

omitted grant 861, 1171, 1236, drois 3421, nobles 4058.

Negative Particles:

omitted 413, 4158; added 1319, 1742, 4064.

Titles:

added 3202, 3238.

(5) Various. In lines 715, 1033, 2283 the defect arises from the repetition of a word or phrase belonging to a neighbouring line; in lines 1033, 1354, 2776, 3114, 3164, 4042, 4174 from the mechanical use of a ready-made phrase in the wrong place; in 591, 706, 1992, 2190, 2720, 3903, 4026 from the use of a plural for a singular or vice versa, in lines 1979, 2193, 2828, 3045, 3530 from the substitution of *Bastart* for *Roi*.

(b) Hiatus and Elision.

With one A.N. manuscript this is a difficult question to treat, but the following conclusions seem to be adequately supported.

(1) Monosyllables. *ne* (nec), *que*, *si* (sic), *je*, *ce* and the article *li* are found in hiatus; *ne* regularly (e.g. 52, 1630, 2416, &c.), the others under certain circumstances.

(a) *Que*. Elision is usual, but hiatus occurs with considerable frequency. In the majority of cases *que* is correlative to an adverb of degree, e.g. to *lant* 1219, 1446, 2514, 3572, 3716; to *tel* 186, 4158; to *si* 316; but hiatus is also found in lines 64, 73, 1093, 1095, 2893, 3584, 3697, 3859, 3874, 4181 when *que* (relative adverb or conjunction) is placed before an unstressed subject pronoun, and in lines 1806, 3525, 3627, 3830. All cases are in accordance with ordinary older French usage.\(^\text{1}\)

\(^\text{1}\) Cf. Rydberg, § 218.
(b) Si, se (sic). Elision is usual before i. With the other vowels hiatus occurs in 2727 (si), and in 2245 and 4109 (et si), but elision is as frequent, e.g. 691 S‘alero prendre Piéreges, 602 Et s‘avint auxi totost après, 951 Et s‘avoirs ii mille servanz.¹

(c) Si (se) (si). Except in line 778, where si introduces an indirect question, elision is constant,² e.g. 818, 840, 848, 1341, 1725, &c., and the notation si, regular except in line 3538 where ce is found, is to be ascribed to the scribe.

(d) Je. In Post-verbal position no cases of hiatus occur, but two of elision, ll. 980, 1902. There are no instances of it forming the unstressed syllable of a rhyme.

Placed before the verb, elision is the more usual practice, but hiatus is found in 1371, 2047, 3519.

(e) Ce. Ce subject is frequently elided, but hiatus is found in ll. 234, 288, 3535, 3830, 3992.

Ce accusative is never elided, and never forms the unstressed final syllable of a rhyme-word; hiatus occurs in 8, 908, 963, 1915, 3510, 3782, 3815.

(a) Polysyllabes. In the question of the admissibility of hiatus after polysyllables the ground is even less secure than with monosyllables, as throughout Old French the individual idiosyncrasy of the poet, or perhaps rather his rhythmic talent, is more concerned in the question than established usage. To judge from the number of lines against which hiatus is the only objection to be brought, the Herald was not careful to avoid it. The kinds of hiatus he allows himself are those practised by other poets, though with less frequency.

(a) Before a monosyllable 138, 175, 1198, 1660, 3123, 3425, 3840.

(b) After the group mute + liquid or nasal 1701, 722, 1664, 1818, 2037, 2957.³

In all probability they are mainly to be ascribed to that unskilfulness in versification shown in the rhymes.

(c) Enclisis, Synalopa, Aphaeresis.

(1) Unstressed Pronouns. Uncontracted forms are the only ones found in the MS.: ne les 957, 975, 1137, 3467, ne se 3303, je le 3537, but in line 3737 Si conduist tout outre le pas, certainly, and in lines 194 Que tous ne feist assambler and 733 Que tous ne fesoit amasser, probably, enclitic forms are required. Such forms, though unused by Froissart, are found twice in Machaut’s Prise d‘Alexandrie,⁴ and are used comparatively frequently by the northern poets of a slightly earlier time, e.g. Gilles le Muisit⁵ and the author of ‘Baudoin de Sebourg’.⁶

(2) Article. In 353 De la bataille avoit l‘avant garde and 3416/17 Cink cen hommes d‘armes et plus Morurent en la pièce de terre contraction of the feminine article appears to be requisite. In the second case a singular verb might perhaps be substituted for the plural,⁷ as in 3434 Plus de deux mille en y noia, where plus de is

¹ In 1080, 1443, 1608, 2668 elision is probable, but not necessary. For the graphy cf. below, p. xlviii.
² Here elision could be adopted if the ungrammatical home (Nom. sg.) were left—a form used in Froissart &c.
³ Cf. Rydberg, i, § 59.
⁴ Cf. Gengnagel, p. 28.
⁵ Cf. Schmidt, p. 20.
⁶ R. g. nel, iii, 813, v. 3; sel, iv. 515 &c.
⁷ Cf. above, p. xviii.
construed with a singular; in the first _ot_ or _eit_ might be substituted for _avoor_,1 but such contracted forms are found both in A.F. and, though more rarely, in northern poems.2

_Laou_ appears in the contracted form _leur_ in 3977, and this form is required in 681.

In lines 178, 493, 4165, where _la_ stands before _avoir_, contraction seems to have been admitted, as also in 1159 and 2502, in which the preposition _a_ precedes immediately a verb beginning with the prefix _a_.3

In 2873 _scarbouches_ and in 3799 _vesques_ are metrically required.

(d) _Enjambement._

_Enjambement_ is practised with great moderation: the subject is separated from the predicate in 1850, the participle from the auxiliary in 1537, 3009, and 4055, but the separation of the substantive from its qualifying demonstrative adjective (cally) in 3941 and of the title _Roys—Bastars_ in 2859/60 are the only instances of the more violent type found only too frequently in Froissart and Christine de Pisan.

(e) _Rhythm._

The rhythm of the verse is that of the ordinary continental octosyllabic line. The interior rhythmic stress is movable, avoiding rather than singling out the fourth syllable.4

(f) _Rhytne._

Except for two or three assonances5 the rhymes are correct, but very commonplace. Homonyms like _garde_, _conte_, _pas_, _france_, _pris_, _faî_,6 compounds like _tere_: _Engletere_, _accort_ : _recort_, _attendre_ : _entiendre_, _conte_: _aconté_, _droit_: _endroit_, _venir_: _avenir_,7 are tiresomely often coupled together. In the beginning and end of the poem, where the diction is a little less bold, rich rhymes represent about 35 per cent., in the main narrative part they barely reach 25 per cent. and a considerable number of these are secured by often meaningless encomiums adjusted to fit each proper name8 or by tags of other kinds.9 The use of ready-made set phrases extends

---

1 Cf. below.
3 In all these lines _synalopha_ may be easily obviated, in the first set of examples by the substitution of _ot_ or _eit_ for _avoir_ (cf. below, p. xlvi), and in the other two by the omission of the preposition. Like contractions are, however, found in contemporary poetry, cf. Nyrop, Gr. Hist. i. § 287.
4 In the first 500 lines of the poem 37 per cent. have a stressed fourth syllable, and in 15 per cent. the vowel of the fourth syllable is _a_.
5 _personae_: some 813/4, Octobre : Septembre 245/6.
6 E. g. _garde_ 253, 293, 355, 947, 1001, 1007, 1165, 2239, 2643, 2705, 2889; _conte_ 123, 731, 1071, 2651, 4275; _pas_ 260, 267, 1125, 1141, 2189, 2381, 2813; _France_ 443, 771, 872, 1567; _pris_ 177, 495, 717, 1239, 1661, 4045; _faî_ 1255, 2201, 2561, 2819.
7 _tere_: _Engletere_ 145, 159, 361, 399, 797, 1009, 1467, 1403, 1655, 2145; _accort_: _recort_ 887, 1705, 2851; _attendre_: _entiendre_ 1777, 2103, 3155, 3039; _conte_: _aconte_ 190, 287, 337, 343, 558, 875, 1305, 1583; _droit_: _endroit_ 805, 1273, 3599, 3887; _venir_: _avoir_, &c., 45, 1073, 1051, 1815, 2209, 2891.
8 E. g. Qui le croy ot _pres_ et _local_ 680, 1690, 2166, 2890, &c., and more varied. Qui pas deriere ne se mues 1364, Qui ne doit estre mis en l'angle 2285, and cf. 3240; Qui la mort ne conte a ii gui-gues 2730, Qui volontiers fient de l'espee 1694, Qui n'est mie trop des poroles 2323.
9 Cf. a voir _entiendre_ 203, 409, 1396, 1777, 2107, 2715, 3634, 4029, au _voir_ jugier 22, 615, 851, 2801, 4088, &c., _sachiez_ par voir 189, 550, 1450, 2459, 2506, 3013, 3238, _sachiez_ de _f_ or _du_ fait 244, 501, 899, 2372, 3392, _sachiez_ sans faillle 712, 2084, 3032, 3301, _c'est_ chose _clere_ 151, 635, 1000, 2226, 2667, _c'est_ chose voire 184, 753, 1032, 2844, _c'est_ (bien) _chose_ certeyne 725, 1924, 2359, 2510, 3812, 3891, _sans_ sawd _si_ 582, 741, 1874, 192, 2379; _si_ _dieu_ me garde 297, 949, 1003, 1165, 3234, 2261, 2704, 2884, _si_ _dieu_ m'amoye 663, 759, 1117, 2099, 2441, and cf. 324 and 3099, _si_ _dieu_ me _poit_ doner
LANGUAGE OF THE POEM

even to the narrative, in which we find identical lines not infrequently repeated. A professional verse-writer of some technical ability, the Chandos Herald is unfortunately denied the gifts alike of copious vocabulary and of imagination.

§ III. DIALECT OF THE POEM.

A. INSULAR OR CONTINENTAL

It is very clear from the foregoing study that the Herald’s French is not of the debased fourteenth-century A.F. type. A writer who constructs ordinary octosyllabic lines correctly, who in the main uses his cases rightly, distinguishes his genders and conjugations, maintains at the continental standard the value of e, and keeps e apart from ie—to mention only the more salient traits—has certainly not learned his French at the Schole of Stratford atte Bowe. He is no Langtoft or Bozon.

The degenerate French mocked at by Chaucer was, however, not the only kind familiar to English people of his day. In the later fourteenth century, side by side with the revival of English letters, there had arisen a short-lived revival of French, and writers of undoubted English nationality and English upbringing had striven hard to free themselves from their insular forms of speech, and to model their French on standard continental forms. Carefully schooled in France as well as in England, they succeeded in producing a French relatively pure as compared with the merely technical or courier-like jargon into which the earlier A.N. was rapidly sinking. The best-known and most typical of these writers is the Kentishman Gower, and a comparison between his language and that of the Herald will best decide whether or not the Herald is to be counted among the adherents of this new school. The task of comparison is much facilitated by Mr. Macaulay’s excellent edition of Gower’s Works.

Gower successfully avoids some of the grosser insular traits. His metre is extremely regular, his verbal forms are tolerably correct, his rhymes not glaringly impossible, his syntax is not entirely destitute of guiding principle. But closer examination of his language reveals numerous Anglo-normanisms. The rhymes betray the old confusion of ie and e, and a, u, ui; the pronunciation of a is to some extent systematized, but while syllabic value is regularly retained in the termination oïent it is wholly disregarded after tonic e and unstable in other positions. The verbal forms are comparatively correct—there is no attempt to put all verbs into the

leasse 1055, and other like asseverations in 1454, 1504, 1505, 1530, 2349, 2774, 3447, 3905, 4145. A quel faire vous controie La matiere et alengorie 201, 308, 1201, Quoi vous ferroy je longe fin 1034, Quoi vous ferroye long demain 2137, Quoi vous ferroye long recorts 334, 1705, Que vous ferroye longe harre 632, to quote only a few of the commonest.

1 Et tout li noble chevalier 609, 1444, Et tout li chevalier de non 1488, 1554, Adone comencea la huet 1121, 1157, En faisant d’armes le maistre.

Si tres chivalerissement 314/15, 1224/5, Ensii con vosoir fouers. S’us poi vous ocuiler vole 1667, 1821, and cf. 53/4, Mault e feurent grans ses vertus 503, 706.


2 Cf. op. cit. p. xvi.

3 Cf. op. cit. pp. xx-xxii.

4 Cf. op. cit. pp. xxviii-xxix.

5 Cf. op. cit. p. xix (e for ee) and ll. 588, 1237, &c.
first conjugation— but here and there old and new mistakes creep in, e.g. the infinitive termination -eir is assimilated to -er,\(^1\) retient appears in rhyme as a perfect\(^2\) and absentoint as a third pl. present indicative.\(^3\) The older relative nominative que, masculine and feminine, is still of frequent occurrence.\(^4\)

It is, however, in his syntax and prosody that Gower betrays his insular origin most clearly. His French offers frequent examples of the solecisms to which the late A.N. writers were prone: gross blunders due to insufficiency of grammatical knowledge, and the more interesting type, wholly or partially anglicized constructions.

Mistakes of the first type occur on every page. Mr. Macaulay notes a 'tolerably extensive disregard of gender',\(^5\) and a complete grammatical indifference to the presence or absence of flexional s,\(^6\) and to this we may add an ignorance or perhaps rather a metrically convenient forgetfulness of the declension of the article\(^7\) and sometimes of the use of verbal forms.\(^8\)

To many of the anglicisms the editor calls attention in his notes:—The use of faire as a simple tense auxiliary\(^9\); the addition of the article to the comparative\(^10\); the extension of the use of pour\(^11\); the omission of the negative particle in ne . . . que\(^12\); the use of the future or conditional in noun clauses depending on verbs of command\(^13\); and we may add to them two other constructions that find their parallels in Middle-English: the substitution of the indicative for the subjunctive in adjectival clauses depending on a negative,\(^14\) and the use of the future or conditional in the protasis of hypothetical sentences.\(^15\)

The prosody also is equally clearly moulded by English influence. 'With all the correctness,' says Mr. Macaulay\(^16\), 'the verses of the Mirour have an unmistakably English rhythm and may easily be distinguished from the French verse of the continent and from that of the earlier Anglo-Norman writers. One of the reasons for this is that the verse is in a certain sense accentual as well as syllabic, the writer imposing upon himself generally the rule of the alternate beat of accents, and seldom allowing absolutely weak syllables to stand in the even place of his verse.'

Here, then, no misapprehension is possible; Gower's French, with all its

---

\(^1\) E.g. poor seculer Mir. 1252.
\(^2\) E.g. 2180, 17472.
\(^3\) 20294.
\(^4\) E.g. 666, 1118, 1201, 1284, &c. Cf. Rydberg, § 205. To judge from orthography, the newer pronominal use of quel is also familiar to him.
\(^5\) p. xvi.
\(^6\) Cf. p. xvii. Macaulay gives among other examples the rhymes of Ballad xvii, in which the termination -us is t. pl. and the termination -er both nom. sg. m. and acc. sg. m.
\(^7\) E.g. a les Mir. 608, 1764, &c., de les Mir. 5, 67, 1342, &c., en les 3423, au for a la 961, 2394, du for de la 147, 1225, 2409, &c., l'autres, acc. pl. 1695.
\(^8\) E.g. ind. for subj. 1180, 1401, 2768.
\(^10\) Note to 2700 and cf. Boeve, Note to 2701.
\(^11\) Note to 6328.
\(^12\) Note to 575.
\(^13\) Note to 1184. This construction is not specifically attributed by Mr. Macaulay to English influence, but see above, p. xx.
\(^14\) E.g. ill. 1313, 1812, 2092, cf. Boeve, Note to 419. M.E. examples are frequent, cf. Chaucer, 'There is no man that lyweth under the trone' (Pardoner's Tale).
\(^15\) E.g. ill. 25, 33, 555, 569, &c. Cf. Juliana (modernized), 'If thou wilt forsake the faith.'
\(^16\) Introduction, p. xlv.
superficial appearance of correctness and metrical smoothness, has an unmistakable English ring; it is the French of a tolerably well-taught and fluent foreigner.

The Herald’s French is certainly not free from Anglo-Normanisms. He is, as we have seen, uncertain about the a-sound, rhyming it with o and i; he rounds once the a nasal,2 confuses once the infinitive termination of the second conjugation with that of the first and makes it rhyme with coer;3 and adopts an anglicized construction in lines 4143/4 (Et leur supplia la endroit Que chescuns les aider vorroit 4). Insular habits of speech may also be responsible for the four doubtful rhymes of e and ie, the occasional equivalence of et to e, the weakening of the s of the imperfect termination -oient and in the participial ending -ee, though, as we have seen, all of these phenomena find their parallels in fourteenth-century poems composed in the North of France.6

Beyond this, however, the Anglo-Norman influence does not go. It has indeed affected his pronunciation, but the real determining factors of a language, the morphology, the syntax, the prosody, the elements, in fact, that in the main constitute its identity, remain practically untouched.6

The contrast with Gower’s French is indeed fundamental. With the Englishman the A.N. characteristics are all-pervasive, they manifest themselves as strongly in grammar and prosody as in pronunciation and vocabulary. They are part and parcel of the French as he knows it. With the Herald, as with the twelfth-century Marie de France and Frère Angier, the Anglo-Normanisms are a late accretion. They indicate merely a superficial accommodation of his language to the environment of his later life, an accommodation induced, one is inclined to suspect, to no small extent by metrical exigencies and the paucity of his vocabulary. To the one writer French was obviously the painfully acquired accomplishment of late childhood or youth, to the other it was the slightly modified mother tongue. It is only the guise under which the poem is presented to us in the Worcester MS. that has hitherto obscured the recognition of this fact.7

The Herald was an alien immigrant and cannot be ranked among the English-French writers of the fourteenth century. What further evidence does the poem supply as to his birthplace?

**B. localization in France.**

The French in which the Life of the Black Prince is written is neither the French of Paris nor a mere congeries of different dialectal traits, picked up in reading or travelling. It is a consistent provincial speech, characterized by very definite and clearly marked local traits.

---

1 See above, p. x.  
2 See above, p. viii.  
3 See above, p. xvi.  
4 MS. Et ... voleit. See above, p. xix.  
5 See above, pp. ix and xiv.  
6 We might add his vocabulary also, as the Herald makes no use of Anglo-Norman words.  
7 Groeber is to our knowledge the only critic who has not been misled. See Grundriss, ii, p. 1085. He, however, assigns here a Breton origin to the Herald.
Of the linguistic phenomena described in the foregoing study, Nos. 4 (b), 5, 6, 7, 9 (b), 12, 16, 18, 19, in the section dealing with Phonetics, the preservation of declension, the forms assumed by the possessive adjectives¹ and the strong perfects in -s and -u,² and, we may add, the use of the verbs of mood as auxiliaries,³ are unmistakably Northern.

Many of these traits are common to the whole North of France, but of some the extension is limited either towards the east or the west. Thus the beginning of the diphthongization of e blocked, the form taken by the u-perfects, the treatment of the palatal, the preservation of declension, the weakness in the significance of some of the auxiliary verbs, characterize the Walloon dialect, while the use of the possessive no and vo, the central treatment of the triphthongs isi and uei, the disappearance of s before a consonant, belong rather to the Picard. Their combination in one poem points clearly to the intermediate region of Hainault.⁴

And we may even go further. It so happens that the Herald’s language corresponds, trait for trait, with that of his most brilliant contemporary, Froissart. Careful comparison of the two shows that all the provincial characteristics enumerated above,⁵ and many others, find their parallels in the linguistic usage of the great chronicler, while the differences between them, apart from the anglo-normanisms, are quite insignificant.⁶

The few divergent traits are as follows:—

1. Traits peculiar to the Herald: (1) The equivalence of o + nasal + consonant to u + consonant (mont = mout); (2) The weakened use of some of the auxiliaries.

2. Traits peculiar to Froissart: (1) Monophthongization of ou and ue; (2) Passage of isi to wi; (3) Development of a glide in -age; (4) Use of je and ce as unstressed rhyme-syllables.

These differences are attributable in the main to other than local causes. The weakened use of the auxiliaries, missing in Froissart,⁷ is well exemplified, as we have seen, by the author of ‘Baudouin de Sebourg’, who belonged probably to the neighbourhood of Valenciennes. The absence of rhymes indicating a pronunciation aige and je may quite well be accidentally occasioned by the small need to use verbs in the first person. The use of the monophthong eu, adopted in the case of ue by Froissart only in later life,⁸ and the passage of ut to wi, indicate very probably that he was a younger man than the Herald, and more exposed to the influence of central French.

Discrepancies so few and a resemblance so substantial lead conclusively to the localization of the Herald’s birthplace in Valenciennes or its neighbourhood.

¹ See below, p. xliii.
² See above, p. xvii, §§ 10 (b) and 11.
³ See above, p. xxii.
⁴ Cf. Suchier, Grundrisse, i, § 38; Aucassin et Nicolete, p. 82.
⁵ We might add also the likeness of vocabulary, cf. entier, en son venir, entrez.
⁶ A survey of Froissart’s language is given by Mann in the Zts. f. rom. Phil. xviii, pp. 1–46. At the end of this section will be found a tabulated list of resemblances between the two.
⁷ He has, however, clearer instances of the use of faire as a tense auxiliary than the Herald. Cf. Ebering, Zts. f. rom. Phil. v, pp. 375, 376.
⁸ Cf. Mann, p. 17. Instances are only found in the 3rd volume of his poems.
DIALECT OF THE POEM

Note.—Detailed comparison: F = Froissart. H = the Herald. The numbers after F refer to the paragraphs of Dr. Mann's article.

A. Indicative of Dialect.

Phonology.

H §4 (b) = F §37. \( \varepsilon + l + \text{Cons.} = a + l + \text{Cons.} \)

\[ e + \lambda = a + \lambda. \]

H §5 = F §5. \( \text{ie} \) almost constant in \( \text{yvier} \), otherwise exceptional.

H §7 = F §35. \( \varepsilon + l + \text{Cons.} = iau. \)

H §8 = F §15. \( \text{ei} = \text{oi}, \text{ue} \) (trois : entrois), \( e \) (saie : plaie, fres : fres).

H §9 (b) = F §20. \( \text{iee} \) regularly reduced to \( \text{ie} \).

\( -i\text{e} \) generally -\( i\text{ier} \).

H §12 = F §3. \( \text{orie} = \text{ore} \).

H §13 = F §42. \( \text{ue} = e \) (oeil : cel (ecce illum)).

H §16 = F §§46 and 47. \( \text{e} \) mid-palatal gives \( \text{ch} \), \( \text{e} \) praepalatal \( \text{ch} \) and \( c \).

H §17 (b) = F §52. \( s \) + voiceless consonant mute (mestre : mettre, &c.).

H §19 (a) = F §§39, 40, 42 (ii). \( l, \lambda + \text{consonant after \( i \) vocalised (fleurs) or lost. } \)

\( l, \lambda + \text{consonant after \( \text{ue} \) lost (entrois : trois). } \)

H §20 = F §48. \( n \) rhymes with \( n \).


Morphology.

H §5 (a) = F §62. \( \text{sons} \) and \( \text{somes} \) attested.

H §9 = F §70. Contracted futures of conjugation I, lengthened of III.

H §10 (c) = F §10. 3rd sg. \( n\)-pfs. in -\( ot \) and -\( eut \).

H §11 = F §59. \( \text{u-imperfect subj. stressed on \( i \).} \)

H Introd. p. xi = F §66. \( \text{oie} \) reduced to \( \text{oi} \) before \( je \).

H Introd. p. xiv = F §§76–81. Preservation of declension on much the same lines. To which we may add the two following traits not noted by Dr. Mann:

The separation of \( \tilde{a} \) + \( \tilde{e} \) except when \( \tilde{e} \) stands before \( m \) (= H §6, p. viii).

The use of 3rd plural perfects in -\( \text{irent} \), -\( \text{isent} \), and -\( \text{-issent} \). Cf. ‘Meliador’ misent : eussent 538/9, prisen : crisent 11772/3 (= H §10, p. xvii).

B. Indicative of Date.

H §2 = F §18. \( \text{ai} + \text{Cons.} \) reduced to \( e \).

H §3 = F §7. \( -el \) lowered to -\( e/l (loyel : bel) \).

H §17 (a) = F §51. \( t \) final unstable: ‘Meliador’ los : mos 1514/15, porpos 7474/5 &c.; petit : joli 12253 &c.

§ IV. THE MANUSCRIPT.

The Worcester manuscript is an oblong octavo on vellum, containing sixty-one leaves with fifty-two lines on a page. At irregular intervals the poem is broken into sections by rubricated titles, inserted not infrequently in the middle of a sentence, and each section begins with an illuminated capital letter. Following on the poem, in the same handwriting, is a versified list of the High Officers of the Prince in
Aquitaine. Several of the English names have been underlined in a later but more faded ink.

The manuscript is assigned to the concluding years of the fourteenth century. Schum dates it c. 1397. Its later history is given, as far as it is known, by the first editor. It belonged at one time to Sir William le Neve, first Mowbray and then Clarencieux Herald, and his signature (Guill. and Guillaume le Neve) stands on the first and last leaf. From him it passed to Sir Edward Walker, Garter, and to his son-in-law Sir John Clopton; later on it was secured by Dr. George Clarke, Fellow of All Souls College, who bequeathed it to its present owners.

A letter from Anstis, author of the History of the Garter, to Dr. Clarke is affixed in the volume.

A. The Scribes.

The handwriting of the manuscript is admirable, the letters being so well formed and so clearly distinguished that hesitation as to their significance is only possible in the case of u and n; ui, m, ni and in, and more rarely in the case of some capital letters. Only the most ordinary abbreviations are employed, and these occur but seldom; orthographical corrections—deleting dots, marginal and interlinear alterations—are not infrequent. Four lines, omitted in the copying, are inserted out of order; three lines (120, 2585, 4000) are wanting; the space for 4000 is left blank, and beside 2585 stands the marginal note defic. hic.

The Worcester manuscript is manifestly no hastily transcribed document, but the work of a well-schooled and conscientious scribe, desirous of reproducing his original with exactitude and elegance. And yet, it must be confessed, it affords us nothing but a miserable travesty of the Herald’s poem, a version defective in metre, grammar, and sometimes in sense. For this state of things the copyist is certainly to some extent responsible. Well equipped as far as moral qualities and mechanical aptitudes are concerned, his intelligence, and, above all, his knowledge of the language he was copying, were wholly inadequate to his task. His French is of the purely insular variety, innocent of grammar and meagre in vocabulary, and so when he is confronted by an unusual word or phrase, or by any obscurity in the handwriting, he is totally at a loss and has no resource but to copy mechanically as closely as he can, or to set down at random some more familiar word bearing a vague resemblance to the one he saw before him. Thus he writes On Guyer for Ogier 164, assailerant for essillerent 210, le Roy for l’aroi 296, com home deussoit for conduissoit 325, haut for baut 596, ensample for ensemble 865, francois for frans 1164, paour for pooir 1802, drut ge plume for drut que ptuvie 1190, le court Daunmartyn for le comte de Danmartin 1033, a souent for a souhet 1312, Vyne noble for vignoble 2905, criere for chiere 2032, pee taillie for pietaille 3391, p deux costees for par d’encoste 3461, &c. Unfortunately for him, moreover, the manuscript he was copying was evidently of slovenly execution, neglectful of the slight marks that distinguish those letters of somewhat similar formation, so often confused by

* Grundriss, i. p. 179.
careless mediaeval scribes—v and b, f and f, l and s, t and c, n and u, iu and m or ui—and, guided by no secure knowledge of the language, he has repeatedly made a wrong selection. Thus he writes Aveville 282, Vesier 481, Vrie 1527, voisant (= baisant) 3088, beignent (= veignent) 3533, en contre fjarsson for en courte saisson 1593, cf. 3793, entreveat for entreset 3490, false for sales 3166, delseche 9, l'apparaille (= s'apparaille) 1728, li (= se) 1846, l'espandi 2516, amenceveurs 4, nobleeve 61, largitee 62, suffice 805, piece (= pite) 1184,瞅ues (= teux) 1726, cel (= tel) 3092, tel (= cell) 1476, Dast 2031, temps (= camps) 2035, conissance for tournsaints 1559, trees for crees 3175, couient for coment 27, arrivee for armee 487, desenir for desenmer 1420, haute for hante 3142, and in a moment of distraction turns the abbreviation of Jesus into Johan 2220.

These and many other blunders may be set down to the count of the Worcester scribe, but it would be unfair to hold him solely to blame for the corruption of the text. A careful examination of the text and the titles shows conclusively that he must have had before him not the original manuscript, but a copy already more or less defective. The blank left for line 4000 and the remark defic. hic in the copyist's handwriting at line 2585 indicate this, and further conclusive evidence is afforded by the rubricated titles. Their phrasing, and, above all, their faults, make it impossible to attribute them either to the Herald or to the Worcester scribe.

The Herold's authorship of the titles is disproved both by the degradation of the language, A.N., not only in forms but also in vocabulary and construction—cf. p. 42 envoia... pur avoir, p. 125 voilliot aler pur combatre, p. 97 parla... certains paroles, p. 95 eux taillerent de combatre 1—and by the kind of mistakes that occur in them. Twice over the text is incorrectly summarized, and once sheer nonsense is written. Thus the attrait of 861 is wrongly taken in the title as traitie; lines 3801-3805 are incorrectly summarized on page 117, the compaigne = company of the text being understood as compeigne = wife; and on page 23 the tag a bris mos is interpreted as a place-name, a Brismos. Blunders such as these are obviously not to be ascribed to the author.

Another series of mistakes and confusions in the titles precludes all possibility of attributing their composition to the Worcester scribe. Mistakes like those on pp. 116, 64, and 73—retenus for receus, si for li, contre ensemble for toute rassembles—indicate clearly a dependence on a written source, and this is conclusively corroborated by the curious discrepancies between titles and text on pages 67 and 75. In both an intelligible word or phrase is furnished by the title, a faulty or meaningless one by the text—Rouncevalle for Rainchenanus in line 2191, en le misme temp for en treves in 2478. Here the explanation evidently is that the composer of the titles successfully interpreted the Northern forms Rainchevaus and entreves that he found in his text, and rendered them rightly in the form of his own language, while the copyist, to whom the forms of the text were unfamiliar, contented himself with a meaningless approximation.

Neither to the Herald nor to the Worcester scribe are the rubricated titles to

1 Co. the use of se taillier in Gower.
be attributed. They attest, conclusively, the existence of an intermediate manuscript. As no mediaeval copyist ever succeeded in reproducing his original with complete exactitude we may be sure that the intervening transcriber left his mark on the text of the Herald’s poem. Indeed it is probably fair to lay on him the main responsibility for the present unsatisfactory condition of the text.

In the first place, the French familiar to him, though more copious than that of the copyist of the Worcester manuscript, is indubitably of the same type. This is evident not only from the language of the titles, but also from some of the corrections made in the manuscript—real Verschlimmbesserungen in which an A.N. form is found substituted for a Continental one¹—and it is this double A.N. transmission which explains the completeness of the Anglo-Normanization of the language of the poem. Secondly, we may fairly premise from the inserted titles that he was both interested in the subject and also of considerable independence in his attitude to the text he was copying, and it is to him, in consequence, that we may plausibly attribute all such mistakes in the manuscript as are not due to inadvertence or ignorance on the part of the scribes, e.g. the changes of order to secure good A.N. rhymes in lines 2749/50 and 3133/4, the addition of the name Devereux in 2281, the additions and alterations occasioned apparently by the insertion of the titles before lines 1411, 1669, 3481, 4119, and the alterations of the text in lines 1022 and 3802. Lastly, it is, in all probability, to this same copyist that we may ascribe the composition of the rhymed catalogue that in the manuscript stands after the poem. This production is too hopelessly A.N. to be fathered on the Herald, too correct in information and too independent to be attributed to the Worcester scribe. It does, however, accord well with the presumable character and capacity of the author of the titles, and may well serve to illustrate his conception of French prosody.

B. THE ORTHOGRAPHY.

The two main questions of interest in the discussion of the orthography are the sorting out and stock-taking of all such graphies as may belong to the original manuscript, and the enumeration and description of those attributable to the scribes. As complete treatment would be lengthy and involve tedious repetition of ourselves and others, we propose to confine ourselves in this section to the consideration of those orthographical traits only whose allocation it is difficult to determine, and to the description of such A.N. forms (the pronominal and verbal) as have been inadequately treated elsewhere. The relevé of the easily recognizable Northern traits is given below in the section dealing with the constitution of the text; for the other characteristics we would refer to the short epitome in the same section and to the above-mentioned dissertation of Herr Kotteritz.

(a) Representation of Sounds.

(1) Vowels. The graphies that call for consideration are the use of au and ou before a nasal, of oe for ui, and of i and e in some unstressed words and syllables.

¹ Cf. 387 le corrected to luy, 843 puis to pluis, 1755 guerpir to guerper.
THE MANUSCRIPT

Au before a nasal is a frequent though not constant graphy. A recognized A.N. trait, its use by the Herald seems to be attested by the rhyme Maune¹: same of lines 569/70, and cannot, therefore, be entirely attributed to the scribes.

Ou is used more frequently than au and represents rightly, as the rhymes show, the sound u attributed by the Herald to o in this position. The use of this graphy by Continental French scribes is, however, comparatively rare, even in poems in which this value is given to the sound, and it is, therefore, probable that its frequency in the Worcester manuscript is due to the copyists.

Oe. The use of oe for ui in nuit and huit is constant in the interior of the lines; cf. oept 180, 389, 2468, oep 1553. It is no usual A.N. graphy,² but as it is not supported by the rhymes, and is used once in the titles, it is possibly attributable to the scribes.

E and I. After a palatal, e of the initial syllable is consistently raised to i (chival, chivauchier &c.). This raising is found in Northern French texts, but its almost complete consistency is probably ascribable to the copyists, to whom it would be the ordinary graphy.³

(2) Consonants. The most difficult question to settle is that of the double consonants. Doubling is, as is well known, particularly characteristic of A.N., where it may have denoted some peculiarity of pronunciation,⁴ but it is also frequent in Continental fourteenth- and fifteenth-century French (cf. in the manuscript of Joinville affiert, attendre, of Deschamps appeller &c.).⁵ To judge from other texts, we may safely attribute to the scribes the use of rr* (e.g. demurra, dirroy &c.) and of ll final,⁶ but not that of ss for ș medial intervocal. This last is a graphy that occurs frequently in the Northern French manuscripts, e.g. Mousket: maison, devisson; ‘Baudouin de Sebourg’: soffissant, ossas, conduissoit, reluissent, &c.; the Turin Rigomer’ manuscript: damoisiele, pressenta ⁷, and its occurrence in the Worcester scribe’s Vorlage is attested by the confusion he falls into in line 325 (com home deussoit for conduissoit, in 1041 conduissoit).

It is more difficult to determine to whom the use of ff should be attributed. This graphy is found both in Anglo-Norman and in French manuscripts of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. In the former it ordinarily took the place of F,⁸ in the latter its use seems to be entirely arbitrary (cf. the Turin manuscript of the Rigomer episode ¹⁹). As its ordinary function in the Worcester manuscript is that of F, it is probable that this graphy was introduced by one of the scribes.

Questions of minor importance are the loss of t final, the addition of a pleonastic s, the use of glide w, and the confusion of the prefixes es and en. They

² Oept is found in manuscript H (8) of the Orthographia Gallica.
³ Cf. Stimming, 'Boeve,' p. 177.
⁵ Cf. Brunot, H. L. Fr. L. 497, where these and other examples are quoted.
⁶ Cf. Boeve, pp. 213, 214; Morsbach, op. cit. p. 325. A list is given by Kotteritz, p. 63. Forms like trebbucher, alage are also probably A.N.
⁷ Cf. Brugger's remarks in the Zts. f. frz. Spr. u. Lit. xxx, p. 136: 'This kind of doubling appears to be found particularly frequently in Walloon texts.'
⁸ Cf. Brugger's article quoted above.
¹⁰ See Brugger's article quoted above.
all occur with more or less frequency both in A.N.¹ and in Northern French manuscripts, and are not, therefore, necessarily attributable to the A.N. scribes.

The loss of t found in don 771, main 1676, 1741, moule 2289, 2358, tantos 3122, hos 2257 &c., is supported by the rhymes and found elsewhere,² e.g. Mousket moule 1470, 1817, and main 5953.

The s introduced very frequently in the verbal forms fuist (for fu or fut), dist, scieust, &c., and in ouesque³ is probably A.N.; that in words like esglise 86, nosmer 1665, lasner 3702, destri, is of doubtful provenance, as it finds parallels in Northern texts, such as 'Baudouin de Sebourg' esroit, esre, esrou, &c., Gilles le Muisit esglise, eswille, sesme.⁴

The use of w for u in vewe 1888, 3447, 4153, and perhaps siewroit 1051, is almost certainly to be set down to the count of the scribes, but the glide in coward, Edward (= Edouwart), eawe, aiuwe, is a recognized Northern development, cf. Jehan des Preis ruue, vewe.⁵ The same set of authors offer such frequent examples of the confusion of es and en: eslire, ensaier, enfort, &c., that the enforcier, &c., of the manuscript might have been left uncorrected.

(b) Pronominal Forms.

(1) The Article. The forms attested by metre are:—

Li. Nom. sg. m. in lines 11, 583, 756, 1205, 2534, 3336, 3390, 3432, 3437, 3440; l' in 2018, 2283, 2285, 3376, 3828.

Li. Nom. sg. f. in 395, 790, 1212, 2092, 2509, 2721, 2812 (li os), 790 (li escription), 3048 (li estoire), 2092 (li autre); l' in 2515, 2900 (l'os), 761, 2091 (l'une), 2031 (l'asamblee), 2230, 2706 (l'avantgarde), 2636 (l'areregarde).³

The nominative singular masculine is written ly (li), lui, le, and occasionally la. Lui is a well-known A.N. graphy, due probably to confusion with the alternative pronoun forms li and lui.⁵ Ly, rare in the first thousand lines, becomes noticeably more frequent in the latter part of the poem. La is found mainly when the noun is confused with a somewhat similar feminine one, e.g. la pais, la pas, but also la pooir, la pont, la Danoys.

The nominative plural masculine is usually ly, sometimes lui, and more rarely les.

The feminine singular is li before a vowel, lui in line 3048, la and more rarely le before a consonant.⁶

The contracted forms are du, des, au, as (1449 only instance), en 363, 4162, ou 2184 (= en le), 575, 856, 2524 (= a le), es 655, 2517, 2901.¹⁰ Uncontracted forms are rare except in the titles; where they occur as in 26 (en le), 1491 (en les), 3029 (en les), they are certainly to be set down to the scribe. More often the article is omitted.

¹ Cf. Stimming, 'Boeve,' pp. xxiv (es and en), 222 (t), 227 (t), 220 (sw); Burghardt, 97, 94.
² The addition of t to gain rhymes for the eye, dit: meritit, &c., is very probably due to the scribes.
³ For a complete list see Kötteritz, p. 60.
⁴ Quoted by Burghardt, p. 98.
⁵ Quoted by Scheler, Glossaire.
⁶ Quoted by Scheler.
⁷ For two possible instances of enclitic form cf. above, p. xxvii.
⁸ Cf. Stimming, 'Boeve,' p. xi. The absence of the graphy ui for i in our poem, and the constant waving between lui and li pronoun, support the theory of confusion between article and pronoun.
⁹ Eleven instances in the first thousand lines.
¹⁰ For contracted feminine forms cf. above, p. xxvii.
THE MANUSCRIPT

xxxix

e.g. de for du 49, 551, 1110, &c., a for au 111, 809, 1218, &c., en for eu 2061, 3475, 3483, &c. Like omissions are of frequent occurrence in Walloon texts, e.g. the Geste de Liège of Jehan des Preis, but it is so constant an A.N. trait that its presence in our poem is probably attributable to one or other of the scribes.

The syntax of the definite article is that of the Herald’s Continental contemporaries:—

(a) Titles are ordinarily accompanied by the article: in 155, 335, 337 the scribe has omitted it; in 1520 (ducs Henri) and in 277, 292 (roys) the unaccompanied form is metrically required, though in 277 and 292 the scribe has wrongly added lui or le. Similar isolated instances of older usage occur in Deschamps.  

(β) Names of countries and provinces or districts are still, without exception, undetermined, whether preceded by a preposition, e.g. 209, 220, 291, 337, 704, 710, &c., or not, e.g. 190, 832, 1811, 1864, 1896, &c. With river names the article is used in 233.

(γ) In conformity with older usage seinte Eglise in 85, mors in 3214, enfer in 1268, terre in 513, 1302, 1494, and mer in 1487, 1783, are used undetermined by the article.

(δ) Abstract nouns still require no article, e.g. 40, 61, 62, 65, 66, 67, 71, 76, &c. In 2541 and 3023 verite used concretely is determined, while in the stereotyped phrase a verite recorder of 3024 and 3644 the older usage is adhered to.

(ε) The individualized common noun regularly takes the article, but an exception is seen in ll. 2977/8, La est flour de chevalerie, La est flour de bachelerie.

(ζ) Substantival adjectives denoting nationality appear on the whole more frequently without article, e.g. Englois 249, 321, 332, 757, 955, &c.; francois 218, 435, &c.; but an article is used in 232, 236, 273, 498, 754. In ll. 1131, 2678, 3046, 3364, overlong by a syllable, the use of the article is attributable to the scribe.

(η) With common nouns used generically the article is usual; the older usage is still found at times, e.g. pheue 1190, 3228, 3362, arbalster 3253, chevalier[s] 269, 2794, oisel 1554, archier[s] 1189, 3227, 3360, and in 3252, where the scribe adds les.

(θ) With nouns determined by tout (= all) a few instances of the older usage occur, e.g. tousjours (de sa vie) 69, en tous champs 13, sur tous roys 1265, and with the place-names tut Constantyn 169, toute Guyane 1546.

(i) With nouns depending on nouns or adverbs of quantity or on numerals the usage varies.

The older construction of the adverbs of quantity, i.e. the dependence of the noun not on the adverb but on the verb, is found in 287 assez y avoir ducs &c., 3258 moult tour fist souffrir ahan, and by emendation in 1468 Pour plus faire honour a la terre and 3996... qui poy a delit, and probably also in 2839 Tant li dourrie d’argent et d’or, in all of which lines the scribe adds de (d').

More frequently the construction of the adverb has been assimilated to that of the noun of quantity, i.e. de has been introduced, e.g. 747, 1996, 2358, 2509, &c.

1 Cf. Scheler, Glossaire.
3 Correct metre is also obtainable by the slurring over of e in -oie, but this would be the only instance of reduction in this termination when it is unaccompanied by fe.
The use of the article is somewhat capricious. With dependent nouns in the singular it is exceedingly rare, partly perhaps because these happen often to be abstract nouns, e.g. moutil de payne 1996, 2509, 3710, moutil y suffrist de duretee 2359, moutil ot de vaillance 2965, plus de deshonour 3542, and moutil eurent fait de damage 747, moutil d' autre chevalerie 2289. It occurs only in 3720 Du conseil ne say se poni non, and in 1674 moutil de la chiracherye. With the dependent nouns in the plural the article appears almost constantly in the manuscript, and is often metrically attested, e.g. des autres foysons 143, 716, 1356, des autres assez 2807, et des Englois y ot plusieurs 2874, deux ou trois des autres 2533, des autres plus de deux mille 3410, des arblastiers vi mille 2997. Of contrary cases there occur metrically attested only three examples: plente d'autres chevaliers 3856, d'autres bien iv mille 2347 d'autres plus de vi mille 3072.\footnote{As the use of the article is so comparatively well attested, the manuscript orthography should have been retained in the corrected text.}

Metrical exigencies are probably mainly responsible for the difference in usage between the singular and the plural, both constructions being used in Middle French. Cf. Deschamps, II. 124. 3. Qui des pechies a fait grant foison ; III. 164. 4, Qui sceurent moutil des secrees de nature.\footnote{Quoted Bode, p. 26.}

(a) De partitive is of very rare use: it is found before autres in 3242 Et d'autres chevaliers, and combined with the article in 1382 Et des autres and in 165 La pooyt home veoir des preus, des hardis et des outrageus.

(l) The demonstrative adjectives cil and cist still occasionally replace the article, e.g. cee (ces) 1304, cil 3176 (ms. tel).

(2) Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives.

Forms. The manuscript forms are:—

(a) Ecce iste, used only adjectivally:

Nom. sg. masc. ceste 892 (traitie), 1865 (an).

Acc. sg. masc. (1) ce frequent, particularly with nouns like tamps, jour, siecle, point ; written cee in A.F. fashion in 480, 2969, 3324, 3431, 4025.

(2) cest (ceste) in 1340, 2423, 2837, 4172 ; ycest (yceste) in 4170.

(3) cesti in 3182 ; ycesti.

Nom. pl. masc. Not found.

Acc. pl. masc. cee, ces, ses, sez, 1328, 1473, 2316, 4169, &c.

Fem. sg. ceste (cest) 383, 454, &c. yceste 816.

Fem. pl. sez 1304.

(b) Ecce ille, used both pronominally and adjectivally.

(a) Pronominal.

Nom. sg. masc. cil 559, &c. ; cils 285, &c. ; sils 12, celui 1362.

Acc. sg. masc. cely 788, 940, 1183, 1800, 2061, 3204. cil 127, 130, 1311, cils 1311.

Nom. pl. masc. cil, cils (sils) 24, 31, 256, 322, 341, &c. ceux 2, 872, 1367, 2372.

Acc. pl. masc. ceux 28, 3526.
(β) Adjectival.

Nom. sg. masc.  cil, cils, sils 12, 63, 68, &c.
Acc. sg. masc.  cel (celle) 1237, 1367, 1401, 1696, 1707, &c.; cely 3941 (in rhyme), 351, 1399, &c.
Nom. pl. masc.  cils, 574, 1028, &c.

Fem. sg.  cele, celle (cel) 376, &c.
(c) Ecce hoc.  ycele 1842

Syntax. The syntactical points deserving notice are:
(1) The use of the re-compounded cels.
(2) The preponderance of the ecce ille forms, particularly in the nominative and accusative singular. These appear to be used for ecce iste forms in 374, 1146, 1549, 1927 (cel), 1590 (celui), 2022 (cel), 1402, 2878 (cel), 1367, 1912, 2320, 3278, 2378, 3333, &c. (cel). This is doubtless due, in part, to the fact that it is the ecce ille forms that usually accompany past tenses, and in part to that encroachment of the ecce ille forms on the sphere of the ecce iste ones that has been noted in North France.

(3) Personal Pronouns.

Forms. The forms employed for the 1st person singular and 3rd persons singular and plural are:
1st person.  Nom. je (whether elided or not), jeo 375, 465, 467 &c., in all 9 times.
Acc. moy, rhyming with doy 3503/4, 4132/4, and my, rhyming with li 2499/500, with pri 4117/18.

2nd person.  Nom. tu.

3rd person masc.  Nom. sg. and neuter, il 405, &c., ils 2811, y 1860.
Nom. pl. ils 515, &c.

Unstressed acc. sg. masc. le.

Unstressed dat. sg. ly and luy.

Stressed acc. pl. eux 1940, &c., eaux 475, 1451, rhyming with reveaux and Burdeaux.

Stressed dat. pl. lour.

Unstressed acc. sg. les.

Stressed acc. and dat. luy 2081, 3762 (: luy masc.).

Unstressed dat. sg. fem. luy (luye) 1475, 2074, 2075, 2081, li 3572.
Nom. pl. elles, ils 1892.

Acc. pl. elles.

Dat. pl. lour.

1st person pl. nous.

2nd person pl. vous.


2 Rydberg, p. 809.
Of these jeo is certainly A.N. Ils is very likely also attributable to the scribes, for the use of this form as a nominative plural seems to be connected elsewhere with the decay of declension.\footnote{Cf. Brunot, i, p. 420: 'Il est certain que la transformation de il est en rapport avec la date de la disparition de la d\'eclinaison.'}

In line 2943 the shortened form ous, not infrequent in fourteenth-century texts,\footnote{Cf. Nyrop, ii, § 521.} is metrically required.

**Syntax.** (a) **Stressed and unstressed forms.**

(a) Coupled with a noun in the nominative, the pronoun is in the nominative in lines 660, 3274, 3894, but the modern use of the stressed accusative is found in 1710, Ly et toute sa compaignie.

(b) The stressed accusative form is still regularly employed with a prepositional infinitive, but in 2490 the beginnings of the modern usage are seen in the use of le with a second infinitive, before which the preposition has not been repeated: Et li suppliant se garder le pays et le gouverner.

(γ) The stressed pronoun is used when placed first in the sentence, e.g. moy fu avis 2650,\footnote{This makes the correction of 3222 doubtful.} &c.

(b) **Masculine and feminine forms.** In 1892 ils stands for elles, a usage not infrequent in Froissart and other fourteenth-century writers.\footnote{Perhaps avant should have been substituted for devant, and il kept.}

(c) **Personal and reflexive pronouns.** In accordance also with fourteenth-century usage, the personal pronoun not infrequently replaces the reflexive, e.g. li for soi 1251, 2114, 2330, 3042, 3896; vaux for soi 230 (masc. yeux), 1940, 3860.

(d) **Order.** (a) The direct still precedes the indirect, e.g. le vous 2414, 3537, les nous 1146, 3168.

(β) When the pronoun is the object of an infinitive depending on another verb the pronoun object is still placed before the finite verb, e.g. 29 Si ne se doit on pas tenir, 31 Cils qui sen sceuent entremettre, 2937 S'accorder vous ansdeux poioe, 3553... et trainer le fist on, 2949 Que nous y plera a entrer.

(e) **Omission.** With respect to the omission of the personal pronoun, the older French usage is observed.

(a) The pronoun subject is still frequently left unexpressed.

(β) When a compound subject consisting of a substantive and a pronoun is used, no summing-up pronoun is added: e.g. 2946-8.

(γ) Before an unstressed accusative of the 3rd person the unstressed dative is regularly omitted: e.g. 1069, 1980, 1985, 2457, 3142, 3661.

(β) With prepositional infinitives the pronoun object is not infrequently omitted: e.g. 366, 1493, 3334, 3661.

(a) With the infinitive and participles of reflexive verbs the reflexive pronoun is often absent: e.g. 194, 1181, 1727, 2236, 2983, 3859, and 1121, 1157, 3010, 3461.

But contrast 681, 693, 2639, 2650.

(γ) Le is not yet used to refer back to a preceding adjective. As with Froissart and other fourteenth-century writers, its function is taken by si.
In all these respects the Herald's usage is that of his Continental contemporaries. The orthography of the MSS. is however influenced to a considerable extent by A.N. usage. We note in particular:—

(a) The predilection for the stressed forms before the finite verb, e.g. *le* for *le* 1202, 1352, 1765, 1862, 2215, 2522, 2751, 2838; and *soi* for *se* 281, 326, 363, 2121, 2152, 2867, &c. 2

(b) The displacement of order in 775 *La ne* and 1142 *y nous*.

(c) The addition or omission of the unstressed subject pronouns.

(4) **Possessive Pronouns.** The older feminine forms *ma* and *sa* (m' and s') are still used before a vowel, e.g. *m'entente* 39, *m'etudie* 47, *s'amour* 1588; but *mon* and *son* are also found, e.g. *son estudie* 70, *son avant garde* 252.

The stressed form of the pronoun of the 3rd person rhymes with *bien* 1621/2; the scribe uses the A.F. *soen* usually, *senes* in 4112.

The short forms *no* and *vo* are frequently metrically required: cf. 539, 542, 549, 795, 796, 824, &c. The scribe usually writes *nre* and *vre*.

Declension is usually neglected by the scribe, but the nom. sing. *ses* occurs in ll. 283, 1035, 1778, 2481, and the nom. plur. *si* in 660, 1621, 3838.

(5) **Relative Pronouns.**


---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.

---

In the MSS. this is 1142 y nous.
est de soi riche et chiere 972, Et cils qu'eurent fait leur fait 2820), so that it is clear that the manuscript forms _qu_..._queux_ are attributable to the scribes. The use of _qu_..._queux_ is common throughout Anglo-Norman, that of _queux_ begins later, but is frequent in the fourteenth century. It is probably due, in part, to the influence of _qu_..._queux_ in part to _ceux_, and is an instance of the A.N. tendency to secure phonetic similarity among words of similar or related functions.

In other respects also the syntax of the relative pronoun is that of fourteenth-century Continental French. We note:—

(a) The continuance of the use of _qui_ for the stressed dative and accusative; ordinarily with a personal antecedent, but in line 106 referring to _matere_.

(b) The use of _quoy_ to refer to a definite personal antecedent, cf. 129, 556, 1382,

(c) The similar use of _ou_ in 2614.

(d) The use of pleonastic _qui, que_, with _lequel_ in lines 897 and 2949, _Liquet cent qui sont desconfi_, and _Y enterons par lequel lieu Que nous y plera a entre_.

(e) The survival of the older form _quel...que_ in 3906 _A quel part que mieux_ _li plesst_.

(c) _Verbal Forms_.

**Morphology.** The main characteristic of the A.N. conjugation system—simplification by analogical formations—is well exemplified in the Worcester manuscript. It manifests itself in various directions:—

(1) Simplification of the radical by the generalization of one much used form. This is particularly the case with the verbs _voloir, faire, venir, tenir_, and is noticeable elsewhere. The radical generalized is usually one of the _od-forms_.


_Vailler, voi_..._vailli_ 1351, 1750, 1798, 2757.

_vien_..._tenir—(a) viev_..._tien_—, regularly used in the past definite: _vient_ 116 &c.,

_tient_ 114 &c., _viendrent, tiendrent_ 3465 &c., as well as in the future and conditional.

(b) _vieg_n...vieg_..._tieg_n..._tiegn_..._tiegnont_ 3883.

_preign_..._preigniez_ 1011, _preignent_ 3477.

_fai_.../(a) _faits, faisisses_ 544, _faisist_ 647, _faisot 990, _faisoit_ 1515.

(b) _fac_..._faccons_ 2934, _faces_ 2854.

_devoir_..._deusses_ 2417, 2418.

This tendency is noted by Stimming in Boeve de Haumtone, and is exemplified also in Bozon and other fourteenth-century A.N. writers.

1 Cf. Jong, p. 25 et seq.

2 This supports the emendation of line 3673 _de qui_ for _de quoy_.

3 Cf. Brunot, Hist. L. Fr. 1, 461-2, _‘ que pleonas- tique...se joint à un autre relatif comme encore aujourd'hui dans la bouche du peuple.’_

4 No comprehensive account of the A.N. conjugation system as yet exists. The most helpful contribution is the _relève of forms_ and the remarks thereon made by Maitland in his edition of the Year Books of Edward II, pp. lili—lxxvii. Stim- ming, in his edition of Boeve de Haumtone, touches on many points morphological and syntactical.

5 p. 159.
(2) Simplification of termination by assimilation to the 1st conjugation—a well-known A.N. trait. The instances are collected by Kötteritz, pp. 14–15.\(^1\)

**Syntax. (1) Tense.**

**a. Past Definite and Imperfect Tenses.** In the A.N. use of tense the liking for simplification also appears. 'Apparently,' says Maitland, in his interesting account of the forms of the Year-Book verb,\(^2\) 'our ancestors behaved as though the French verb had one tense too many. Having *il porta* and *il a porté*, they seem to think *il portoit* superabundant.'\(^3\) The past definite is more usually the tense retained, but, as the same writer points out, the usage varies from conjugation to conjugation, and sometimes from verb to verb. Verbs forming a weak past definite in -a and -e, and most of those with sigmatic perfects, discard the imperfect; those with strong u-perfects the past definite. *Dire* builds a composite tense *dist* and *disoient, venir* and *tenir* make a hybrid 3rd plural *vindroient*. It is only the two commonest verbs, *estre* and *faire*, that keep both tenses in working-order. The practical disuse of the past definite of *avoir* brought with it the loss of the past anterior.

The forms of the past tenses used in the Life of the Black Prince, in so far as they are due to the scribe, are in almost entire agreement with Maitland's observations.

**a. Tenses in the Titles.** Imperfects of the 1st and 2nd conjugations occur very rarely—some twenty times in all, and for the most part only when repeated from the poem.\(^4\) The only instances of imperfects used independently of the text are: *quidoit* p. 33, *menoit* p. 34, *fuyoient* p. 36, *regracioit* p. 128.

Of verbs forming sigmatic perfects, *dire* keeps both *dist* and *disoit* in the singular, but only *disoient* in the plural, *faire* makes *fist* in the 3rd singular, *firent* and *fesoient* in the plural with no difference of meaning; of verbs like *prendre* and *mettre* no imperfect occurs.\(^5\)

Of the perfects of *avoir*, *savoir*, *voloir*, that of *avoir* occurs twice (p. 67, p. 73),\(^6\) of the two others there is no instance; *devost* and *receust* occur on p. 75, *pleust* (taken from the text) on p. 81. *Venir* and *tenir* apparently keep both tenses, but for the imperfect, particularly in the plural, there is marked preference.\(^7\)

From the way in which the surviving forms are coupled it is clear that all distinction between the tenses has vanished. Cf. p. 48 Tous les barouns & seignours de Gascoigne a lui venoient & lui fesoient hœmage & de bon coer l'amoient, representing in the text Qar tout li prince et lui baron... Viendrent a lui pur faire hœmage... Et l'amoient de bon amour Tout si subgit...; p. 107 la menerent grant deduit & gracioient dieu, representing Illoeqes menoient grant deduyt Et gracioient dieu.

---

\(^1\) For the Herald's usage see above, p. xvi.
\(^4\) The perfects are very frequent, cf. pp. 17, 18, 19, 21, &c.
\(^5\) But *avoir* pp. 15, 37, 44, 48, 53, &c., *avoir* pp. 107, 108.
\(^6\) But *voloit* pp. 60, 74, 125, *savoient* pp. 33, 125, with the significance of a perfect.
\(^7\) Cf. p. 48 (poem *vindrent*), pp. 60, 64, 78 &c.
(b) Tenses in the Text. The Herald, as we have seen, used the tenses of ordinary fourteenth-century French—of the narrative type—except when he was hampered by metrical requirements. Of the peculiarities mentioned above none can be with certainty attributed to him. They occur but rarely, and generally show themselves to be spurious by the metrical disturbance they cause. He shows no particular bias against the imperfects of the first conjugation or those of the verbs with sigmatic perfects, nor against the strong u-perfects, in fact the instances of *eunt, eurent, scient, pleut, outnumbert those of *avoit, avoient, savoit, and plesoit.* The past anterior is rather a favourite tense.

The traces discernible of A.N. tendencies in the orthography of the scribe are as follows:—

(i) A 1st conjugation perfect has been substituted for an imperfect in 416, in the rhyme *demurerent: avoient,* perhaps also in lines 744 and 2475, too long by a syllable, and in 3035 where an imperfect would be in accordance with the Herald’s ordinary usage.

(ii) Strong Perfects. The bias against the u-perfect forms shows itself in the graphy of those retained and in the occasional substitution of imperfect forms.

(a) The graphy is rarely normal: that of the present tense is used in *poet 1303, voet 1420, 1485, 1591; sciei 1830, 2965, 3118;* of the imperfect subjunctive in *eunt, 142, 445, 446 &c., scient 1907, pleust 3494, 3941.* As in the Year-Books, *venir* is found in the curious hybrid form *viendoient 213, 385, 634, &c.,* while *porent (peurent)* is replaced straightway by a conditional in 2822, 3320, 3368, 4087, and *pueut* by a future in 298.2

(β) Introduction of the imperfect seems to have occurred in a certain number of 9-syllabled lines, e.g. 2104, 2134 voloit for *vot (veut), 2720 venoient for vint, 3567 savoit for sot (seut), 3568 poot for pot (pueut),* and probably also 3779, 3659 *avoit for ot (eut),* as well as perhaps in ll. 178, 242, 294, 353, 493, 566, 640, 698, 736.3 Where the plural is concerned metre is a less sure guide, as the contracted form of the imperfect of these verbs is of the same metrical value as the perfect. As, however, the proportion of contracted forms of the imperfect stands abnormally high with *avoir* (2 out of 6 in the first 2000 lines), it is most probable that in the case of *avoir* the substitution has sometimes taken place.

(γ) Dire and faire. In the singular dist outweighs slightly disoit, and fist *fesoit* very considerably; in the plural the relations are completely reversed, but it is noteworthy that a comparatively very high proportion of the plural forms (2 out of 5 with *dire,* 4 out of 15 with *faire*) scan as dissyllables—*disoient 1914, 3602; fesoient 1117, 1616, 3812, 4007.* In the case of *dire* one is inclined to suspect that the A.N. suppression of *dirent* has here affected the orthography. The objection

1 In the first 1000 lines the number of perfects of the 1st and 2nd conjugation is 79, of imperfects 25; in the first 2000 lines there are 36 instances of *avoit,* 6 of *avoient* (some of both metrically doubtful), 39 of *eut,* and 6 of *eurent.* We remark that in a narrative passage of Froissart, §§ 274-6, perfects I and II number 39, imperfects 4.

2 Cf. Stimming: Boeue, note to 1524.

3 In the text as printed above, these lines have either been corrected by omission of a word or syllable or taken as examples of synaepha. In view of the strong A.F. influence discernible in the tense-forms, correction of *avoit* to *ot* or *eut* is probably to be preferred.
to *frent* was less strong, but the use of the form *fisent* by the Herald may have led the scribe to introduce here and there wrongly *fesoient.¹

b. Simple and Compound Tenses. Another idiosyncrasy of the scribes is the predilection for the compound tenses. These have been substituted for the perfect in 63 *fuist nasquy, 861 ad countee, 1925 fuist assamblee, 2079 ad conferie, 2963 avoit apperceu*, and probably in 1409 ² and the overlapping lines noted above containing the past indefinite of *oir* ³.

(2) Mood.

Of the Anglo-Normanisms discernible in Gower’s use of mood two are exemplified in the Worcester manuscript:—

(i) The use of the future and conditional in the protasis of *if*-clauses, e.g. 230 *Si . . . prenderoit, 1862 Si . . . trouvares, 2058 Si . . . perderoie, 2660 Si . . . donrez, 2938 S’accorder vous . . . purroie, 3965 Et si de ci lever me purroie.*

(ii) The use of an indicative in adjectival clauses depending on a negative principal sentence, e.g. 191–4 *Ny demoera duc . . . ge toute ne fist assembler, 731–3 Ny demora ne Duc . . . ge tout ne fesoit amasser, 1792–3 Ny remist Counte . . . ge toute ne li firent hommage.* Isolated instances of the usage are found in Continental French, both in earlier times and in the fourteenth century ⁴, but their frequency in A.N. and the relatively high proportion in which they occur in the *Black Prince* render A.N. influence probable. The subjunctive stands in similar clauses in lines 647, 1790, 1860, 2932.

§ V. CONSTITUTION OF THE TEXT.

The poem is by a Hainault writer of the fourteenth century, copied by two A.N. scribes, the first intelligent, but independent-minded and careless, the second well-meaning, but ignorant and stupid. As a result we have extant a garbled version, sometimes unintelligible, often corrupt in metre and grammar.

How should the text be constituted?

The most logical and perhaps simplest plan would have been to attempt a restoration of the forms proper to the dialect of Hainault. The adoption of this method, however, would have entailed an almost complete disregard of the orthography of the extant manuscript, and would, in all probability, have given a text more consistently *‘Hennuyer’* than that originally set down by the Herald.

Simple reproduction of the manuscript, on the other hand, would seem to be an even more unsatisfactory way out of the difficulty. To secure intelligibility, emendation is often requisite; for the sake of the Herald’s good name, grammar and metre could hardly be left untouched, and, correction once begun, it would be hard to know where to stop.

After much hesitation the decision was taken to publish the text in double

---

¹ *fisent* has been adopted in 4007, and should probably have been also in the other lines; the scribe’s predilection for *fesoient* is seen by its comparative frequency in the headlines, cf. 1556 and 3113 where he introduces it.

² Cf. note to the text.

³ Cf. above, p. 131.

⁴ Cf. Willenberg, Romanische Studien, iii, p. 383, note, and among contemporary writers Jehan de la Mote, 2254 *N’est nul qui n’estoit piteus.*
form. In the left-hand column is printed a faithful reproduction of the manuscript with all its orthographical idiosyncrasies; in the right-hand column, a corrected text in which the suppression of recognized A.F. traits has been combined with a restoration of such Hainault traits as are supported by the manuscript. The resulting text is too much a matter of conjectural emendation to be satisfactory, but at least it furnishes a readable version of the poem that may fairly claim to be less of a travesty of the original than that of the Worcester manuscript.

A detailed statement of the changes introduced is appended.

A. Hainault Traits.

I. Consistently employed.

(a) Traits consistently or frequently attested by rhymes or metre. Rhyme constant, orthography of the manuscript waverin between ict. 

(b) Diphthongization of e blocked in yvier. Rhyme constant, orthography of the manuscript usually e. In a few cases ie has also been left or introduced when a possible indication was given: yeestre 3342, praiell 698, siereent 2221, 3373 (MS. plement, seurement), fier 910, 2745 (MS. feer).

(c) Passage of e + m to â. Rhyme usual, orthography of the manuscript usually e, but a is found in tamps in 100, 682, 1507, 2118, and the presence of this graphy in the intermediary is further attested by the confusion of tamps and camps in 51 and 2035, and of ensemble with ensample in 865.

(d) Raising of eau to iau. Three rhymes, orthography usually eau, but cotiaux : reviaux 3267, Biaumont for Biaumont 199.

(e) Passage of e + l + consonant to iau + consonant. Three rhymes, orthography usually eu, but consiaux 2481, eaux 476, 1451, and yceux, a corruption of yaux, in 286.

(f) Representation of e + l by a + l. One rhyme, orthography usual.

(g) The graphy se for si ('ia'). Elision constant. The graphy si, regularly employed by the scribes, is usual in A.N.

(h) The graphy se for si ('so') after et. The frequency of the elision and the graphy ce after et in 672, 2343, 3352, 3528, together with the scribe's confusion of si (sic) and the pronoun se in 263, 1223, 1299, 3043, indicate the use of this spelling in the original. It is a graphy that survived in Hainault well into the next century.

(i) General correctness of declension, frequently attested in rhymes and metre. Orthography very wavering, but not without traces of the correct forms: e.g. Nom. sing. 10, 11, 12, 37, 38, 132, 143, 156, 157, &c.; Nom. plur. 83, 269, 272, 402, 422, 430, 471, 472, 491, 492, &c.

1 Including the confusion found occasionally between u and u.

2 Cf. above, p. ix, § 9 (d).

3 Cf. above, p. viii, § 5.

4 Cf. above, p. viii, § 6.

5 Cf. above, p. viii, § 7.

6 Cf. above, p. viii, § 5.

7 Cf. above, p. vii, § 1 (d).

8 Cf. above, p. xxvii.


10 Cf. Rydberg, p. 863.

11 Cf. above, pp. xiv–xv. The graphy ict, connected with the decay of declension, has also been eliminated (cf. above, p. xili, note (t)).
(2) Traits attested in rhyme and well supported in orthography.

(a) 3rd person plural of the strong sigmatic past defines in -isent and -issent. Two rhymes,¹ orthography wavering between -irent, istrent, -isenst 687, 1189, -issent 2530. -irent (also attested in rhyme, and used in the North concurrently with -issent) has been retained; -istrent replaced by -isent or -issent.

(b) Imperfect subjunctives of the u-formation in -ist and -issent. Two rhymes,² orthography wavering, poiost regular, 610, 1211, 1466, 1830, 2157, 2455, otherwise -ust and -issent. According to the graphy used in Northern manuscripts of Froissart, -ist forms have been kept or introduced when the radical retains syllabic value.

II. Retained and extended to identical cases.

Traits incapable or difficult of attestation in rhymes or metre, but of frequent occurrence in the manuscript.

(1) Reduction of unstressed -oisst to -iss: conissance 5, conissossent 1796, reconissance 4102, reconsosssent 4110, pissons 3166, bisoseosssent 3363.

(2) Reduction of unstressed on to en, frequent in the case of volente, &c. (cf. 874, 1014, 1054, 1568), where it has been regularized; and found also in en (= on) 162, deverent 1792,³ denoent 3265, where it has been retained. To this reduction also is probably attributable the confusion between chemina (i.e. cemina) and comenca (i.e. cemenca) in lines 1124 and 3050.

(3) Reduction of la, feminine article and pronoun, to le. Orthography vacillating, le very frequent.

(4) Omission of glide-consonants in the groups m'l, n'r, l'r, &c. The rhyme ensosne : Maune⁴ seems to indicate the omission of the labial glide in the group m'l, but as no other example is found this graphy has not been introduced.

   power (= poudriere) is found in 3225, vorrai, &c., in 988, 2256, 3538, venirent: tenirent in 2177-8, 3771-2; vorrai, &c., vinrent, tinrent, venra, venroit, &c., have been regularized.

III. Retained where found.

(1) Orthography of the palatals.

There is some evidence in the rhymes that the dialectal pronunciation of c (ts) as ch (t) was used by the Herald,⁵ and the graphy ch is found occasionally:

   grimache 19, lymache 20, lachoient 2764 (= lanchoient), Rainchevaus 2191, Abrichescourt 1692 &c., Clichon 2327.

There is no evidence in the rhymes for the k for ch; the graphy is found in carker 369, 603, eskipper 607, kemu 878, cariage 1084, frank(e) 1474, frike 1512, apecies 800 (= a pechies), and its presence in the intermediary is indicated by the confusion of camps with tamps 51 and 2035, and of comenca with chemina in 1124 and 3050. The comparative rarity of the dialectal graphy seemed to indicate that its use had not been consistent with the Herald, and after considerable hesitation

---

¹ Cf. above, p. xvii, § 10 (b).
² Cf. above, p. xvii, § 10 (c).
³ Cf. denesz, dena, denroist in Gillon le Muisit, quoted by Scheler in his Étude Lexicologique sur les Poésies de Gillon le Muisit.
⁴ Cf. above, p. viii, § 6.
⁵ Cf. above, p. x, § 16.
the manuscript orthography was left unaltered, except that se and ss were replaced by the earlier graphy c, and the ch of champ by c.

(2) ss for s medial intervocal, bussynes 908, condusooit 1041 (cf. also the confusion com home deussoit for condusooit in 325), tramesseist 1465, saisso 1593 (manuscript f unravel, 1712, oissel 2018, oisselet 3476.

(3) e for pu (p + l + cons.) cotiaux 3267, vorrait 981, &c.

(4) v for ie: bry 767, 2228.

(5) The omission of interconsonantal r in fri 2739, friorent 2531; its insertion between labial consonant and r in feverier, &c., and in the futures.

(6) Use of eu in the radical accented forms of the strong u-perfects, frequent in the manuscript, but often in garbled form; e.g. eust (=eut) 142, 161, 446, 447, 572, &c. (as frequent as of); eurent 515, 574, 1417, 1709 (erent), 1996, 2820, 3928; accreut 1256, creut 1709, peust 3294, poet (?) 1301, pleust 3494, 3941, plust 2633, sciut 1948, 2900, sciut 1830, 2965, 3118, sciut 1997, voet 1420, 1591, 1885, 3115.

In accordance with the orthography used in the North of France this graphy has been extended to the radical of the weak persons.

(7) Use of weak perfects in -nâ, -nâ, &c.: ardi 170, joindi 3173, vailli 1750, 2757; cf. also complexoidoit 3595, prendoit 1306.

(8) 3rd plural of the perfect of the 1st conjugation in -arent: coronarent 1771, alarent 2639.

(9) Use of the masculine form li before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel.

IV. Introduced where metrically required.

(1) Aphaeresis in the case of vesques 3797, space 996, scarmutches 2873.

(2) Reduction of -oire to -ore.

(3) sons for some 3163.

B. Continental Traits.

(1) Regularized.

(a) oï for ei. Rhymes frequent, graphy usual; exceptions, poët 308, quei 907, 2801, 2843, heirs 830, 2931, deit 2932.

(b) The usual Continental treatment of the unstressed vowels in conformity with the conclusions deduced from the study of the metre.

(2) Retained.

(a) The use of je and ce for the stressed forms in hiatus. No instances of the Northern jou and cou appear in the manuscript.

(b) The graphies du, eu, and ou for the contracted forms of the articles.

---

1 Cf. above, p. xxxvii.
2 Cf. Gilles le Muisit, frir, fri, quoted by Scheler.
3 Cf. above, p. xxxviii.
4 Cf. above, p. ix, § 12.
5 Cf. above, p. viii, § 8.
6 Cf. above, pp. xi-xiv.

7 The A.N. jo and cou are used occasionally, but never when these words are in hiatus. The retention of je and ce was only decided on after considerable hesitation, traces of which appear in the use of jou and cou in the first pages of the text.
CONSTITUTION OF THE TEXT

li

(c) The forms *ma, ta, sa,* for the possessive adjective.¹

(d) The graphy *eu* for earlier *e* tonic free; a graphy frequently attested before *s,* but not supported by the rhymes. *preus* (*preu*) 165, 527, 626, 768, &c.; *outrageus* 166, *corageus* 528, 1300, 2248, 2738, *glorius* 3422, *cremeuse* 3921, *merveilleuse* 3922, *eure* 2186, *genetours* 2005, 2873, 3088 (*genetours* 2981).

C. Doubtful Traits.

The following forms of doubtful origin have been retained, though their occurrence in the original manuscript is uncertain.

(1) The use of *ff* for *f.*²

(2) The graphy *oe* for *ui* in *noet,* *oet.*³

(3) The use of *que* comparative before numerals. The confusion found elsewhere between *qe* and *de* (e.g. 27, 1683, 2022, 4073) renders it likely that it is the scribe and not the Herald to whom we must attribute this construction infrequent in contemporary Continental manuscripts.

On the other hand the use of the graphy *aun* and *oun*⁴ for *an* and *on,* the raising of initial *e* in *chival⁵ &c., and the confusion of the prefixes *es* and *en⁶* have been eliminated.

D. Anglo-Norman Traits.

The A.N. traits ⁴ consistently eliminated are briefly as follows:—

All omissions and additions of *e* or other vowel condemned by the scansion.

All forms of verbs and pronouns classified above as A.N.⁵

The following representations of the vowels:—of *a* by *aa,* e.g. *paas;* of *e* by *ea,* e.g. *feare* 121, *reason* 1629, by *ee,* e.g. *meer* 603, *nees* 471, *fees* 1315, *eeles* 2989, by *ie,* e.g. *niefs* 482, *pier* 533; of *ie* by *e* or *ee,* e.g. *lee* 596, *ceel* 1261; *oi* by *ai,* e.g. *poair* 310, *Paitiers* 720; *eu* by *u,* *prus* 83, 2267, &c.; *ou* by *u,* *mulier,* *trusser,* &c.; *o* by *oo,* e.g. *hoost* 395, *loos* 440, *doos* 1132; *oe* by *oi,* *poit* 785, *voi* 3535, by *eo,* *Neofville* 3253; *u* by *ui,* e.g. *fui* 216, *pluis* 1296.

The reduction of *au* to *a:* *ascune* 4, *chevacha* 374, *enchace* 3437; of *eau* to *eu:* *beux* 822, *oiseux* 1554.

The omission of *u* after *q:* *qi,* *qe,* &c.


The introduction of the final consonant of the radical before flexional *s* or *z,* or before suffixes: *records* 104, *ducs* 287, *peeds* 2996, *joefnesse* 79.

The use of *t* before *s:* *filts* 355, *assets* 205.

The introduction of *s* before a consonant⁷: e.g. *amesna* 197, *vist* 317.

The use of voiced consonants as finals: e.g. *harau* 2437, *baud* 2954, *trahim* 1219.

¹ The use of the dialectal *me, te,* &c., is certainly to be expected if we are right in assuming *le* was used for the article, and an indication of their presence in the original is perhaps seen in the mistaken graphy *saville* for *Seville,* but the evidence seemed too slight to justify a thorough-going change of the orthography in this respect.
² Cf. above, p. xxxvii. ³ Cf. above, p. xxxviii.
⁶ But cf. above, p. xxxvii.
⁷ But cf. above, p. xxxvii.
The confusion of $n$ and $n$ mouillé: e. g. semaignes 2069, ordeignee 929.
The restoration of final consonants, such as $n$ in return 437, enfern 1268.
The use of the forms ovesqe, jesqe, unqore, eins, chieftaine, pluvie (plume), of soen for sien, of the 1st plural in -oms and 3rd plural in -ont.

VI. APPENDIX.

LIST OF THE WORKS QUOTED AND OF THE ABBREVIATIONS USED.

(a) AUTHORS AND WORKS ON AUTHORS.

Franz Blume, Die Metrik Froissarts. Greifswald, 1889 (Blume).
Heinrich Bode, Syntaktische Studien zu Eustace Deschamps. Leipzig, 1900 (Bode).
Boeve de Haumonde, ed. Stimming. Halle, 1899 (Boeve).
E. Ebering, Syntaktische Studien zu Froissart, in Zts. f. rom. Phil. v, p. 324 (Ebering).
Froissart, Chroniques, ed. Luce.
Froissart, Poésies, ed. Scheler.
Froissart, Meliador, ed. Longnon, Société des Anciens Textes Français.
Jehan de la Mote, Li Regret Guillaume, ed. Scheler, Louvain, 1882.
A. Haase, Syntaktische Untersuchungen zu Villehardouin und Joinville. Oppeln, 1884 (Haase).
Gustav Mann, Die Sprache Froissarts auf Grund seiner Gedichte, in Zts. f. rom. Phil. xxiii, pp. 1-46.
E. Müller, Zur Syntax der Christine de Pisan. Diss., Greifswald, 1886.
Scheler, Etude lexicologique sur les Poésies de Gillon le Muisit. Bruxelles, 1886 (Gillon le Muisit).
Scheler, La Geste de Liege, par Jehan des Preis dit d'Outremeuse, Glossaire Philologique. Bruxelles, 1882 (Jean des Preis).

(b) GRAMMARS, GRAMMATICAL DISSESSIATIONS, AND PERIODICALS, ALL REFERRED TO IN THE NAME OF THE AUTHOR.

Bischoff, Der Conjunctiv bei Chrestien. Halle.
G. Groeber, Grundriss der romanischen Philologie. Strassburg.
Ludwig Krafft, Person und Numerus des Verbums im Französischen. Diss., Göttingen, 1904.
W. Meyer-Lübke, Grammatik der romanischen Sprachen.
Kr. Nyrop, Grammaire historique de la Langue Française.
R. L. Graeme Ritchie, Recherches sur la syntaxe de la conjonction 'Que'. Paris, 1907.
Gust. Rydberg, Geschichte des französischen a.
H. Suchier, Grammatik des Altfranzösischen.
Adolf Tobler, Vermischte Beiträge zur französischen Grammatik. (Tobler. V.B.)
Johan Vising, Die realen Tempora der Vergangenheit im Französischen und den übrigen romanischen Sprachen, in Französische Studien, vii. 2.
Zeitschrift für romanische Philologie, ed. Groeber.
HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION

The author of this Poem, one of the most valuable authorities on certain episodes in the Hundred Years War, was Chandos, the domestic Herald of the famous friend and follower of the Black Prince, Sir John Chandos, whom, as we learn from Froissart, he accompanied in some at least of his later campaigns.

The poem is not so much a continuous historical narrative as a record of the leading events in the life of this same Prince, and a eulogy upon his prowess and piety. This is important to notice, as it accounts for the partial or complete omission of many important details, and for the special prominence given to the exploits of its hero.

As to the author himself, we know very little of Chandos the Herald, and can only collect fragments of information from occasional passages in Froissart.¹

In all probability he entered upon his duties when Chandos received the rank of banneret, together with the territory of Saint-Sauveur-le-Vicomte, in 1360, though we find him first alluded to by Froissart in the beginning of 1366, when Chandos was treating with Foix for the passage of the Companies, on which occasion 'his Herald' is mentioned;² he is also noticed by name in 1369, when he bears a message to the Black Prince from Chandos and Knolles then engaged in the siege of Domme.³

Anstis, in his Order of the Garter, speaks of Chandos, formerly Herald of Sir John Chandos, as being invested in 1381 in the tabard of the Earl of Buckingham, and as being probably the person mentioned in 1382 as 'King of Arms of Ireland Chandos by name.'⁴

A notice of the poem is given by Warton in his History of English Poetry, where he calls the author 'The Prince's Herald, who attended close on his person in all his battles';⁵ but this is too obviously an error to require attention.

We start, then, with the knowledge that the author was a Herald; probably, therefore, a person of discernment, address, experience and some degree of education⁶ (Froissart tells us that he often went to Heralds for his information); attached to the person of a warrior who was the intimate friend and constant follower of the Black Prince; and an eye-witness of some at least of the events which he describes in his narrative.

¹ The best edition is that edited by Siméon Luce for the Société de l'Histoire de France, Paris, 1869-88. The references in the following pages will be to that, unless otherwise stated.
² Froissart, vi. 216.
³ Froissart, viii. 146. 'Chandos li hiraus.'
⁴ Anstis, Order of the Garter, London, 1724, i. 432.
⁵ Warton, History of English Poetry, 1824, ii. 120.
⁶ Ibid.
The poem is written, on the whole, in a plain, straightforward manner, evidently more for the sake of the history contained in its pages than for the poetical form in which the narrative is cast. But, though we may credit the author with the intention of telling a plain unvarnished tale, we shall look in vain for an accurate chronology, and must turn to other sources for the actual dates of the events recorded in these pages.

The Herald begins by a brief description of Edward III's campaign of 1346, culminating in the battle of Crécy, and followed by the capture of Calais. He gives some details of the plot for the recovery of that town at the end of 1349, and then passes almost at once to the years 1355 and 1356, giving a detailed and valuable account of the victory of Brétigny, and then with considerable detail recounts the close of his hero's career and his dying moments.

This is the conclusion of the poem, which does not seek to describe historical events other than those which concern its central figure. The verses finish with a brief appendix of official names and a copy of the Prince's epitaph.

As to the date at which the Herald wrote, it cannot have been immediately after the events recorded. The poem covers, as we have seen, the whole life of the Prince, whose death took place in 1376, and we read that since the conquest of Castile by Henry of Trastamare 'ne passa mye des ans vint' (1816). This would bring the date of its composition to about 1386, but in all probability 1385 would be nearer the truth, since, in speaking of the Princess of Wales, whose death took place at the close of this year, the author makes use of the present tense: 'Qui de tout honor est maitresse' (2142). This does not establish absolute certainty, as he speaks also in the present tense of the Queen of Navarre (2486), who died as early as 1373,1 obviously before the writing of the poem. Taken, however, in conjunction with the other statement, as to not quite twenty years having elapsed, it renders this date very probable.

The poem falls naturally into two parts: (a) the account of the French Campaigns, (b) the Spanish episode, and it will be clearer to consider each of these parts separately.

A. Certain general conclusions can be drawn from a consideration of the first portion.

1. We gather that the Herald was not an eye-witness of any of the events here recorded. In no place does he give the slightest indication of his own presence, while several times he writes as though his information were second-hand. Such

---

1 L'Art de vérifier les dates, Paris, 1818, vi. 504.
phrases as 'Com jay oy conter' (394, 734), 'a ce que je entendi' (1163, 1375), occur frequently. Occasionally he alludes to a written record. He quotes 'la matiere' when he narrates the crossing of the river at Poissy (214). The date of the battle of Crécy he claims to have found in 'luy escriis' (380), but it is quite a wrong one, and evidently given at haphazard from memory. In stating the number of the French army before Poitiers, and the mission of the Archbishop of Sens, he says 'come dit l'estille' (737, 868); and for the capture of Curton and d'Aubréchicourt 'come dit le romant'. Such expressions, however, are very vague and seem to be added as much to fill up his lines as for any other purpose. He probably saw lists of men, prisoners and so forth; but, if he gathered his information from any book or chronicle, it does not seem to have been one which we now possess. He might possibly have seen the early edition of Froissart (written between 1369 and 1373), or the Chronicle of Baker of Swaynebrooke (written in 1359 or 1360), or even parts of the Grandes Chroniques; but there are no obvious signs of imitation, and certainly no actual reproductions. His narrative, however, cannot in this part be the result of personal knowledge, nor can it have the value of a first-hand record.

2. We may look upon him, nevertheless, as an authority likely to be trustworthy. He was a person of importance and of intelligence, having opportunities of contact with many who must have been actually present at the events which he records; added to which, he does not indulge in poetical exaggeration or flights of imagination, but expressly disclaims the desire to imitate 'Jangelours et Joge-lours' and sings the praises of historical truth (15-42).

3. As we have already seen, he does not appear to have copied from any known writer. His details differ widely from those given by Froissart, and we have proofs of originality in many stories which are found nowhere but in his pages. The following are examples of this: The resistance of Marshal Bertrand to Edward's landing in 1346 (154-65, see note); the mention of Beaujeu in connexion with the plot for the recovery of Calais (420, see note); the visit of the Captal de Buch to England in 1355 (526, see note); the exact disposition of the garrisons in Gascony during the winter of the same year (668-80); many of the details of Cardinal Talleyrand's attempt to bring about an agreement between the rival leaders before the battle of Poitiers; the joint Council held on the Sunday, and Charny's proposal of a combat between picked men from each side (767-928); the part played at this same battle by the troop of horse under Guichard d'Angle, Aubigny and Ribemont (1190-1200); and finally the Prince's prayer before actually engaging in arms with the forces of the French king (1260-75).

From these facts it seems probable that his information was gathered more frequently from conversation with those who had taken part in these various events than from any written records; and that, for this reason, though not very correct in details, he gives a more interesting and better general idea than more accurate but less spirited accounts. At the same time this renders his knowledge of the remoter history less full and clear than if he had taken the trouble to investigate closely what had really occurred, and it is for this reason, probably, that we find so meagre an account of the early campaigns, and, above all, of the battle of Crécy, which,
in a history of the Black Prince, we should have expected to occupy a far more important place.

4. As a chronicler he has certainly some grave faults. First and foremost as to chronology. Dates are not altogether suitable to a poem, and in consequence we find very few of them, but in almost every instance in which an indication is made it is incorrect. Poitiers is dated rightly, but Crécy is given on the 23rd instead of the 26th August (381, see note), and the duration of the Siege of Calais (387, see note), the birth of Thomas of Woodstock (521, see note), and the campaign of 1355 are all inaccurately represented.

5. The Herald's desire to sing the praises of his hero has probably affected the impartiality of his narrative: thus the great renown won by the Prince at Caen, his command at the crossing of the Somme, and his rescue of his father at Calais may all be somewhat exaggerated. Occasionally also his method of passing quickly from one great event to another, and his rather scrappy and disjointed style, render the narrative obscure if not actually misleading. Thus his accounts of marches and campaigns are of very little use, his Battle of Crécy and Siege of Calais are uninteresting and present no new information, while his account of the Calais plot would, if taken alone, be almost unintelligible.

Nevertheless, except in the matter of dates already mentioned, we cannot convict Chandos of any glaring mistakes, with the exception of that concerning the Prince's march from Bordeaux to Romorantin, and the mention of Béziers as among the towns captured in 1355 (648). He may be wrong also as to the part played by Marshal Bertrand and as to the connexion of Beaujeu with the Calais plot, but neither has been positively disproved, and for the other points, on which he is the only authority, he had good opportunities of judging them, and is very probably correct, while his lists of names are in every case exceedingly accurate; as a herald, probably the history of noble families was familiar to him.

To sum up, we may say that, as regards the earlier campaigns, we learn from Chandos little that is new or striking, and cannot look upon his narrative as particularly accurate; but that for the proceedings of 1355 and 1356 his authority is exceedingly valuable, especially in all that concerns the Battle of Poitiers, for which his account, which should be compared with that of Baker of Swaynebroke, may be regarded as offering information of the highest importance.

B. For the Spanish Campaign there is no doubt as to the extreme value of his testimony. Accompanying his master, as we have seen, in 1366, his own words prove clearly that he was an eye-witness of the events which he records in this and the following year: 'Ore est bien temps de commencer ma matier, et moy adresser au purpos ou ie voille venir a ce qe ie vys a venir apres la bataille en Britanie' (1649-53).

We have before us, therefore, the work of an eye-witness, whose position afforded him every opportunity of giving a trustworthy account of the campaign in which he played an active part, and who wrote within eighteen years of the events he describes. Yet the interval was perhaps sufficient to obliterate the freshness of first impressions, and to lead to inaccuracies, unless some written record
had been preserved contemporary with the events recorded. But, despite this
disadvantage, the general impression which we gather from the study of this
portion of the poem is that without doubt it is a most valuable, if not the most
valuable authority which we possess for all that concerns the Spanish Campaign.

1. It is not only the work of an eye-witness, but of an eye-witness deserving the
fullest confidence. Naturally he has his limitations; he is not infallible in his
account of events which took place at a distance—notably in Spain, and in the
enemy's camp—but this limitation is also a point in his favour. He gives so few
details of those events in which he did not himself take part, that he does not seem
to have done much in the way of copying other authorities, and, therefore, whenever
he does give a circumstantial account it may be considered as based on first-hand
knowledge. Very rarely now does he allude to any other information. Occasion-
ally we find 'come jay oy', or 'come jay oy countier', as in his description of
the capture of men on the mountain (2798) and the making of knights by the Black
Prince (2626); these would be very natural expressions in the case of events which
he did not actually see with his own eyes. The mention of written records is still
rarer and chiefly concerns Spanish events. Thus, in describing Pedro's flight from
Seville, he writes: 'si come la matiere dist' (1784), and, on Prince Henry moving
from his camp at Navarete, 'si lui estoire ne ment' (3048). The expression 'Sicome
ie oi en mon recorde' (1930), concerning the preparation of ships at Bayonne, may
refer to his own notes, or to some information sent him at the time.

2. He must, however, have done more than draw on his own memory. The
long lists which he gives must certainly have been preserved in writing, and since
we have no similar lists in any Chronicle but that of Froissart, who has presumably
copied from the Herald, we may conjecture that he made the lists himself upon
the spot.

There is, therefore, good reason to believe that he kept some kind of journal
of the campaign: a view supported by his frequent mention of days of the week.
This makes him all the more likely to be trustworthy.

3. Not only are his names of people accurate, but his names of places also, and
his records of marches are full, and to all appearances geographically correct.
Here we have a striking contrast to his confused account of the Poitiers campaign,
in which he was not present.

4. We have already noticed, in criticizing the first part of his poem, his
straightforward and businesslike manner of writing; this continues to be noticeable
in the latter half, despite the increase of details, the frequent introduction of the
dialogue form and the picturesque touches which occur from time to time. But he
is seldom either redundant or obscure, and he carries on a continuous narrative,
rarely even stopping to comment on what he describes. It is evident that he had
a sincere desire to speak the truth without exaggeration, and it is wonderful how
perfectly impersonal he has remained throughout. He not only makes no mention
of his own performances, but he omits any description of events in which he had
played a part, unless they are strictly essential to the biography of his hero.

5. His one great fault still continues; and this defective chronology is a real
detriment to the value of his record. He only twice gives the date of the year (for the Prince's preparations in 1366 (2017, 4173)), rarely the date of the month (Nájera (3475) and the death of the Black Prince (4173)); his days of the week are difficult to identify, and when he does attempt any indication of the duration of time it is generally wrong (e.g. the birth of Richard fifteen days after Christmas (2049, see note), the stay of the Black Prince in Spain (3631, 3645, 3677, see notes)).

6. One other fault is a vagueness as to numbers, as in the varying calculations given of the Spanish army at Nájera; and the number of killed, &c. (3085, 3124, 3451, 3475, &c.); but this is common to all the chroniclers of the time, and it is not to be wondered at, as trustworthy information must have been totally lacking.

7. These are, however, the only grave faults which can be found in his narrative: as far as we can judge he has made no misstatements of any importance. Pedro's journey by sea from Seville (1785, see note), his arrival at Bayonne accompanied by his sons (1943), the arrangements previous to his landing (1909 sq.), the sending of the Prince's letter to Henry from Logroño instead of Navarette (2908, see note), are all trifling errors, which do not affect the general value of his work.

8. Finally, not only is the Herald's poem as a whole of first-rate importance, but it is in all probability the source of almost all our information respecting the years 1366 and 1367. Siméon Luce says distinctly, in his notes to Froissart's account of the Spanish Campaign, that the Chronicler copies here from the record of Chandos.î It is known that Froissart did not himself go on this expedition, so that first-hand knowledge was to him impossible, and his account tallies very closely with that of our author; being indeed still closer in the later edition of Froissart, that known as the Amiens version, parts of which Luce prints in his Appendix. Possibly the earlier version was composed from information given by the Herald, or from the actual notes which he may have taken, while the later version was written by Froissart with the actual poem before him. When the Amiens manuscript varies from the text which Luce has chosen for his edition, the difference almost always approximates to the poem and often involves an actual reproduction of its words and phrases. Sometimes the second edition is shorter than the first, and leaves out names &c. which Froissart has inserted before, but which are not confirmed by the Herald's lists. A few extracts from each (see overleaf) will best illustrate the far closer resemblance of the Amiens version than of the other, although both were probably based on the first-hand information collected by our author.

Froissart has made additions here and there to the Herald's narrative, but, as he travelled about considerably, and was an indefatigable collector of information, to say nothing of being blessed with a fertile imagination and a fluent pen, his addition of details is not to be wondered at.

For the conclusion of the Prince's history, the account given in the poem is too brief to be of much value in comparison with the far fuller records which we possess, but as far as it goes it seems to be sound and careful, and there are a few interesting details in it concerning Edward's last hours.

This general inference, therefore, can be drawn: that the poem of Chandos

Froissart, vii, p. iii, note i.
Herald is an original and, on the whole, trustworthy work; that it provides a useful source of comparison with other contemporary records; that it is worthy of study throughout, while for the history of the years 1366 and 1367 it is not only valuable but essential.

PARALLEL PASSAGES

**Chandos.**
(2931–2960.)

Ensi fut le lettre dictée
Et puis après fut seallee
Et la bâllèrent a un heraud
Qui ot le coer joiant et baud
Et moult demenoit grantz reveaux
Car home li dona beaux jolaux
Robes dermyn manteaux furrez
Et lors ne sest plus arrestez
Congie prient sen departi
Vers son Meistre le Roy henri.

**Froissart.**
(Text from Luce.)
(Vol. vii, page 29.)

Quant ceste lettre fu escripte, on le cloy et seela,
et fu baillie au hiraut qui
avoir l'autre aportée et qui
le reponse avoir attendu
plus de trois sepmaines. Si
se parti dou prince et des
signeurs à tout grant pour-
fit, et chevaça tant qu'il
vint devant Nazres, ens es
bruières où li dis rois estoit
logiés.

**Chandos.**
(3121–3156.)

Mons: Johan de Chandos
Est venzu au Prince tantos
Et la porta sa baniere
Qui fut de soie riche et fiere
Moult doucement lui dist ensy
Sire fait il pur dieu mercy
Servi vous ay de temps passee
Et tut quant dieuex mad donee
De biens ils me veignent de vous
Et bien savez qe je sui tous
Le vostre et sarray tout temps
Et sil vous semble lieu et temps
Qe je puisse a Banier estre
Jai bien de quoi a mon maistir
Qe dieux mad done par tenir
Ore en faitz vostre pleisir
Veiez le cy je vous present
Adonquz le Prince sanz attend
Et le Roy daun Petro sanz detri
Et le duc de Lancastre auxi
La banier li disploierent
Et par le haut li bâllèrent
Et li disrent sanz plus retraire
Dieux vous en laist vostre preu faire
Et Chaundos sa baniere pris
Entre ses compagnions le mist
Et lour ad dit a lee chiere

**Froissart.**
(Text from Luce.)
(Vol. vii, page 34.)

Là aporta messires Jehans Chandos sa baniere
entre ses mains, que encore
n'avoit nulle part boutée
hors, et li dist ensi: 'Mons-
signeur, vechi ma baniere:
je vous le baile par tel
manière que il le vous plaise
daesveoleer et que au-
jourdiz je le puisse lever;
car, Dieu merci, j'ai bien
de quoi, terre et hyretage,
pour tenir estat, ensi qu'il
apartient a ce'. Adonc pri-
sent li princes et li rois
dans Pières qui là estoit,
la baniere entre leurs mains,
et le desvelopenent, qui
 estoit d'argent à un peu
aguiset de genues, et li
rendiren par le hanste, en
disant ensi: 'Tenés, mes-
sire Jehan, veki vostre
baniere: Dieux vous en laist
vostre preu faire!' Lors
se parti messires Jehans
Chandos, et raporta sa

**Froissart.**
(Amiens version.)
(Vol. vii, page 277.)

Si tost que la lettre fu
escritpe, on le saiiela, et le
fist delivrer li princhae au
hiraus le roy Henry, qui
les autres avoit aportées et
qui le responsaco attendo.
Si se parti li dis hiraus
dou princh e des sei-
gneurs, tous liis et tous
joyans, car on li doonna
grans dons et baulx jeuaus,
draps et mantiiaux fourris
dermeine et de vair. Si
s'en revint en l'ost de son
seigneur devant Nazères.

**Froissart.**
(Amiens version.)
(Vol. vii, page 282.)

Ung bien petit devant ce
que les batailles devoient
approcher, messires Jehans
Cambos aporta sa banni-
erre, toute envelepée, au
prince, et li dist ensi moult
doucement: 'Monsigneur,
je vous ay servi ung long
tamps à mon loyal pooir,
et tout ce que Dieux m'a
donnée de bien, il me vient
de vous: si savés ossi que
je sui tout vostres et seray
tant que je vivray. Si vous
pry que je puisse estre à
baniere; car Dieu mercy,
j'ai bien de quoy, terre et
mise, pour l'estre, et ve e ci,
je le vous présente: si en
faittes vostre plaisir.' Et
adonc li princhis, li roys
dan Pierre d'Espaigne et
li dus de Lancastre prissent
le baniere de Monsigneur
Jehan Cambos, et le des-
ploierent et li bâllèrent
par le hanste, et li dissent
Chandos.
(3401–3421.)
Illoces fut pris mons : Bertrans
Et la Mareschall sufficiantz
Dodrehem qui tant fut hardiz
Et un Counte qui eust grant pris
Counte de Dene fuit nosmesx
Li Counte Sausez nem doutes
Y fut pris qui fut chieftayne
Ouesque le Beghe de Vellaine
Mons : Johan de Neofville
Et des autres plus de ij. Mille
Et pur faire juste report
Luy Beghes de Villiers fut mort
Et plusieurs autres dont de noun
Je ne say faire mencioun
Mais li reporte y fuist tenuz
Cink Cenx homes darnes ou plus
Morirent en la piece de la terre
Ou home eust mayn % mayn a feare
Auxi de la parte des Englois
Morust un chivaler parfées
Ce fut le droit seignior de fêrriers.

Froissart.
(Text from Luce.)
Si furent pris de ses gens
et delous sa banière plus-
seur bon chevalier et es-
cuir de France et d'Ar-
ragon, et par especial
messires Bertrans de Clae-
kin, messires Ernouz d'Au-
dreben, et messires li
Bêghes de Vellainnes
Et plus de soiannie bons
prisonners. Finalement,
la bataille à monsigneur
Bertran de Claiékin fu
desconfite, et furent tout
mort et pris sans recouvrir
chil qui y estoient, tant de
France comme d'Araggon.
Et là fuz mors li Bêghes de
Villers, et pris li sires
d'Antoing en Haynau, et
li sires de Brifuel et mes-
sires Gauwains de Bailluel,
messires Jehans de Berg-
hêtes, messires li Alemans
de Saint Venant et mont
d'autrues.

Froissart.
(Vol. vii, page 43.)
Et de CONTES qui tout furent pris
Et Gauwains de Bailluel
et guillaume d'Antoing
pour avoir li banière
et d'Antoing en Haynau,
Tout en baillant : 'Tenés
vostre banière : Dieu vous
en lait vostre preu faire !'
Dont se parti messieres
Jehans Camdos dou prinche,
se bannière en son poing,
et s'en vint entre ses gens
et ses compaignons, et le
mistr ennuy auz, et leur
dist : 'Biau signeur, vechy
me bannie et le vostre :
gardés le bien, car oant
bien est elle vostre que
nostre.' Adonc le prissent
li compaignon, qui en fîs-sent grant joie, et dissent
que elle seroit bien gardée,
se il plaisoit à Diee. Et
fu baiillie et delivré à un
bon escuier englez, qui ce
jour le porta et qui bien
s'en acquitta, et estoit nom-
més li dis escuiers Guill-
laummes Alleri.

Froissart.
(Aniens version.)
(L. vii, page 289.)
La fu pris messires Ber-
trans de Claiéquin desoubz
le banière monsigneur
Jehan Camdos et fut ses
prisons. Et furent pris li
comtes Sansses, frères au
roy dam Pierre et au roy
Henry, qui s'en fuoit, mes-
sires li Bêghes de Vellaines,
messires Jehans de Noef-
ville, et plus de deux mil
chevaliers et escuiers. Et
y fu mors entre les autres
ungs bons chevaliers fra-
chois, li Bêghes de Villers,
et plusieurs autres cheva-
liers et escuiers que je ne
puis mis tout noommier ;
et, dou costé des Englez,
ungs bons chevaliers qui
s'appelloit li sires de
Ferrières.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chandos. (3721–3739.)</th>
<th>Froissart. (Text from Luce.) (Vol. vii, page 61.)</th>
<th>Froissart. (Amiens version.) (Vol. vii, page 300.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mais pur la matière abreggier</td>
<td>Si passa le dis princes parmi le royaume de Navare, et le raconvoiïèrent li dis rois de Navare et messires Martins de la Kare jusques au pas de Raincevaus.</td>
<td>Si se parti li prinches dou val de Sorrie, et s'ace-minna parmy Navarre. Et li roys de Navarre li faisoit grant feste et grant hon-neur, et le rafresquissoit tous les jours de nouvelles pourveanches, et le con-duisi et mena tout parmy le royaumme de Navarre et à la ville de Saint Jehan dou Piet des Pors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaundos se vint sans atargier</td>
<td>Per deners le Roy de Nauarre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Per deners le Roy de Nauarre</td>
<td>Il t daun Martin de la Carre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Il t daun Martin de la Carre</td>
<td>Purchacerent tant qe le Roys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchacerent tant qe le Roys</td>
<td>De Nauerre qui fut curtoys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Nauerre qui fut curtoys</td>
<td>Lessa le Prince passer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lessa le Prince passer</td>
<td>Et li Prince sans arester</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Et li Prince sans arester</td>
<td>Se parti de vale de sorie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se parti de vale de sorie</td>
<td>Parmy Nauarre ad quillie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parmy Nauarre ad quillie</td>
<td>Sa voie sans prendre soiour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sa voie sans prendre soiour</td>
<td>Lui Roi qui moutli fu plain donour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lui Roi qui moutli fu plain donour</td>
<td>Ly Prince grant honour fesoit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ly Prince grant honour fesoit</td>
<td>Car toutz les iours li enuoioit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Car toutz les iours li enuoioit</td>
<td>Vin % vitaille agrant plentee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vin % vitaille agrant plentee</td>
<td>Parmy Nauarre li ad amesnee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parmy Nauarre li ad amesnee</td>
<td>Si conduist tut outre le paas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Si conduist tut outre le paas</td>
<td>Apres ne vous menteray pas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apres ne vous menteray pas</td>
<td>A seint John du pee des portz.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIFE OF THE BLACK PRINCE
Cy commence une partie de la vie de des faites
darmes dune tres noble Prince de Gales et Daquita-
taine quauoit a noun Edward eigne filitz au
Roy Edward tierce queux dieux assoille.

Ore veit on du tamps jadys
Que cil qui faisoient biaux dis
Estoient tenu pour aucteurs
Ou pour aucuns amenteveurs
De moustrer des bons conissance
Pour prendre en leur coers remembrance
De bien et honour recevoir.
Mais on dit, et s'est de ce voir,
Qu'il n'est chose qui ne desseche
Ne qu'il n'est arbres qui ne seche
Q'un soul, c'est li arbres de vie ;
Mais cils arbres en ceste vie
florist et boutonne en toutz champs.
Ci ne serai plus arestans,
Car, combien qu'on n'en face compte
Et qu'on tiegne plus grant acompte
D'un janglour ou d'un faux menteur,
D'un joglour ou d'un bordeour,
Qui vourroit faire une grimache
Ou contreferoit le lymache
Dont on pourroit faire risee,
Qu'on ne feroit, sanz demoeree,
D'un autre qui savroit bien dire—
Car cil ne sont sanz contredire
Mie bien venu a le court
En ce monde qui ore court—
Mais coment qu'on ne tiegne rien
De ciaux qui demoustrent le bien,
Si ne se doit home pas tenir
De biaux diz faire et retenir—

BLACK PRINCE
Cils que sen sceuent entremettre
Eins les doient en liure mettre
P quoy aps ce qils sont mort
Et si ouent fait lui juste recort
35 Car c'est almoigne et charitee
De bien dire de veritee
Car bien ne fust unques perduz
Q'en ascun temps ne feust renduz
f. 1r Pur ce voil je mettre mentente
40 Car volentes a ce me tempte
Defaire et recorder beaux ditz
Et de nouelle et de iadys

Ore cy comence la matiere.

Ore est bien temps de comencer
Ma matiere et moy adresser
45 Au þpose ou je voloi venir
Or me laisse dieux auenir
Car je voil mettre mestudie
A faire de recorder la vie
De plus vaillant Prince du mounde
50 Si come il tourny a le ronde
Ne qe fuist puis les champs claruz
Jule Cesaire ne Artuz
Ensi come vous oier purrez
Mais qe de bon coer lescoutez
55 C'est dune franc Prince d'aquaitaine
Qui fuist c'est bien chose certayne
fillz au noble Roy Edward
Qui nauoit pas le coer coward
Et fillz Phelippe la Roigne
60 Que fuist la pffe racine
De tout honoure de nobletee
De sens de valoir de largitee

Des nobles condiciouns du Prince auant nome.

Cil franc Prince dount je vous dye
Depuis le jour quil fuist nasquuy
65 Ne pensa fors qe loiautee
ffranchise, valour et bountee

Cils frans Princes dont je vous dy,
Depuis le jour que il nasquuy,
Ne pensa fors qe loiaute,
ffranchise, valour et bontee,
THE BLACK PRINCE

Et si fuist garniz de pęse
Tant fuist cil Prince de haute
Qil voileit toutz les iours de sa vie
70 Mettre tout sōn estudie
En tenir iustice & droiture
Et la prist il sa moriture
Tres dont qil fuist en enfance
De sa volunte noble & france
75 Prist la doctrine de largesce
Car iolitee & noblesce
 NUnit en son coer pfifement
tresle primer comencement
De sa vie & de sa joefnesse

1. 2° De sa vie & de sa joefnesse
80 Ore est bon temps qe ie madresse
A bouter auant ma matiere
Coment il fuist ceste chose clere
Si prus si hardi si vaillant
Et si curtois et si sachant
85 Et si bien amoit seinte egliise
De bon coer & sur tout guyse
La treshauteine Trinitee
Le feste & le solemnitie
En comencea a sustenir
90 Tresle primer de sōn venir
Et le sustient tout sa vie
De bon coer saunz penser envie

De la passage du Roy & du Prince son filtz
en Normandie oue mult noble baronie.

Ore ay ie volu recorder
De sa-joefnesse au voir conter
95 Ore est reason qe ie vous counte
De ce douent hōme doit faire acompte
Cest du fait chzialrie
En sa pson fuist morie
En la quele il regna xxx ans
100 Noblement il usa ses tamps
Car ioiiesroie dire ensy
Que puis le temps qe dieux nasquy
Ne fuist plus vaillant de son corps

Et se fu garniz de proce.
Tant fu cil Princes de hautece
Qu'il voleit toz jours de sa vie
Mette toute son estudie
En tenir justice et droiture,
Et la prist il sa noriture,
Tres dont que il fu en enfance;
De sa volente noble et france
Prist la doctrine de largece,
Car joliete et noblece
Sfu en son coer parfitement
Tres le premier comencement
De sa vie et de sa joenece.
Ore est bien tamps que je m'adreces
A bouter avant ma matere,
Coment il fu, c'est chose clere,
Si preus, si hardis, si vaillanz
Et si curtois et si sachanz,
Et si bien amoit seinte Eglise
De bon coer et sur toute guyse
Le tres hauteine Trinite:
Le feste et le solemnitie
En comencea a soustenir
Tres le premier de son venir,
Et le soustint toute sa vie
De bon coer, sanz penser envie.

Ore ay je volu recorder
De sa joenece, au voir conter.
Ore est raisons que je vous conte
De ce dont on doit faire acompte:
C'est du fait de chevalerie:
En sa persone fu norie
En le quele il regna xxx ans.
Noblement il usa son tamps,
Car j'oseroie dire ensy
Que puis le temps que Dieux nasquy
Ne fu plus vaillanz de son corps,
Sicome orrez en mes records
Si voiliez oier et entendre
A matier a qui je voille tendre
Bien sauez qe lui noble Roi
Søn piere a tresgraunt arroi
Per sa haute noble puissance
ffist guerre au Roialme de ffrance
Endisant qil deuoiq avoir
La corone sachrez pur voir
Dount en sustenant la querelle
Il maintient guerre mout cruelle
La quele si dura longe temps
Ore auqen qe drooit a ce temps
Passa la mer en Normandie
Ouesq mout noble Baronie

s. 2ª Barons Banerers et Countes

Illariua en Constantyn
La ot maint bon chiualer fyn
De Warrewyk luy noble Counte
De quoy høme deuoit faire Counte
Luy Counte de Northamtoñ
Qui mout estoit noble person
Cil de Suffolk & cil de Stafford
Qui out le coer hardi et fort
Et le Counte de Saresburi

Cil doxenford auxi
Et si fuist Beauchamp Jehans
Raouls de Cobham li vaillans
Monf Bartholmeus de Burghées
Qui mout fu hardi en ses faïtes
De Brian le bon Guyon
Richard de la Vache le bon
Et le bon Richard Talebot
En qui mout graunt pèsece ot
Si fuist Chaundos et Audelee
Qui bien feroient de lespee
Et le bon Thomas de Holand
Qui en luy eust pèsece grand

Si come orrez en mes recors
Se volez oûr et entendre
A matere a qui je voel tendre.
Bien savez que li nobles Rois,
Ses peres, a tres granz arrois,
Par sa haute, noble puissance
ffist guerre au roialme de ffrance,
En disant qu'il devoit avoir
Le corone, sachiez pour voir,
Dont en sustenant le querelle
Il maintint guerre mout cruelle
Le quele si dura long tamps.
Or avint que, droit a ce tamps,
Passa la mer en Normandie.
Avoec mout noble baronie,
Barons, banerez et contes,

Il arriva en Constandyn.
La ot maint bon chevalier fyn :
De Warrewyk le noble conte
De quoy on devoit faire conte,
E le conte de Northamtone
Qui mout estoit noble persone,
Cil de Suffolk, cil de Staffort
Qui out le coer hardi et fort,
Et le conte de Sarsburi
Et cil d'Oxeneford auxi ;
Et s'i fu de Beauchamp Jehans,
Raouls de Cobham li vaillans,
Sire Bartholomieu de Burghes
Qui mout fu hardiz en ses fais,
Et de Brian li bons Guyons,
Richarz de la Vache li bons,
Et li bons Richarz Talebot,
En qui mout grant proescé ot ;
S'i fu Chandos et Audelee
Qui bien feroient de l'espee,
Et li bons Thomas de Holande
Qui en luy eut proesce grande,

Line 120 is omitted in the MS.
Coment la poair dengleterre arriua en Constantin. s le Prince et autres seigniours furent faitz chiualers et le Roy de France en eust nouvelle.

Arivez fu l'ost d'Engleterre ;
Et quant il devoit prendre terre
La fist le Prince chevalier
Li Roys qui tant fu a prisier,
Le conte de la Marche auxi
Et le conte de Sarsburi,
Jehan de Montagu son frere,
Et des autres, c'est chose clere,
Plus que ne vous savroie dire.
Et bien sachiez, sans contredire,
La fu li Mareschaux Bertrans
Qui moult fu hardys et vaillantz
Et lors quida trop defendre
A prendre terre, au voir entendre,
Mais le puissance d'Engleterre
Prissent la, par force, le terre.
La y eut il fait d'armes tant
Qu'en euist compare Rolant
Et Olyvier et le Danoys
Ogier qui tant par fu courtuys.
La pooynt hóme veoir des preus
Des hardis s des Outrageus
La fuist le Prince noble et gent
Qui moult ot bele comencement
Tut Constantin chiuacha
Et tout ardi et exila
Le hogge. Barflewe Carenten
Seint Lou. Bayeus et jesq aken
La ou ils conquèrent la pont
Et la combaterent ils mult
P force ils pristrent la ville
Et le Conte de Tankarville
Et le Conte den y fuist pris
La avoit li nobles Princes pris,
Car de bien faire fuist engrans
Et se n'ot que dis et oct ans.
Et li Mareschaux chevaucha,
Jusques a Paris n'aresta ;
Au Roy a conte les noveles
Qui ne lui feurent mie beales
Tel merveille ot, c'est chose voire,
Que a paines le pooit croire,
Car pas ne quidoit que tel gent
Euissent tant de hardement.
Lors fist asssembler son poair
Parmy France, sachiez pour voir,
N'y demoera ne conte,
De quoy hom pooit faire aconte,
Baron, baneret, bacheler
Que touz ne feist assambler.

Au roi de Behaigne manda,
Qui de bon coer auxi ama,
Qui amena en sa compaigne
Son filz qui fu Roys d'Alemaigne
Et le bon Jehan de Biaumont
De Haynau qui on prisoit moulte
A quoi faire vous conteroye
Le materre et aloneroy ?
Bien quidoit sa terre defende
Au roy englois, au voir entendre,
Et assez petit le prisot
Et moult fortement le manecot.
Mais apres ensi qu'il me semble
Li Roys et li Princes ensamble
Par Normandie chevauchieron
Et tout le pais essillieron.
Mainte grant escarmuche firent
Et maint bon home prirent
Et viendroient au Pount de Poissi
Mais la matiere dit ensi

Que le pount lors estoit rompuz
Mais tant firent que de grauntz fuiz
Par force refirent le pount
Dont ffrancois esmerveillez sount
Et passerent p un matyn

Pmy Caux pristrent lour chemyn
Ardantz, gastantz, & exillantz
Dount maut feurent ffrancois dolantz
Et crirent a haut vois

A Paris fuist auoir iugier
Car en ce temps fist appailler
Son graunt pooir et amasser
Et la fist ses gentes assembler
Et dist que poi se priseroit

Si grant vengeance n'entreprendroit
Car bien quidoit auoir en clos
Les Englois solonc mon ppos

Droit entre le Sayne et la Sôme
Et la endroit ce est la Sôme

Les quidoit il trop bien combatre
Mes les Englois p yeux esbatre
Mistrent tout en feu et a flame
La firent mainte veve dame
Et mainte poyre enfant orphanyn

Tant chevauchoit soir et matyn
Qils vindroient al eawe de Sôme
De lautre part yauoit maynt hême
Car la feurent nen doutez mye
Les cômunes de Pikardye
Et si estoit sachez de fit
Monf Godomars defait

Coment le Roy de ffrance fist assembler
A Paris son gât poair encontre le Roy
dengletre et son host. et coment le Roy
déglotere oue son poair passa leawe de sôme.
Mout par fu large la riviere
Du flum de le mer, rade et fiere,
Dont Englois mout se merueilloient
Coment par dela passeroient.
Mais li Princes o le corps gent
fiist esliere chevaliers cent,
Des meillours de son avant garde,
Et les fist aler prendre garde
Coment il pourroient passyer.
Et cil qui furent a loer,
Chevauchoit tout environ
Tant qu'ont trove un compaignon
Qui lour a enseigne le pas
De Some, je ne vous menk pas,
Et tout li cent, a une fié,
En l'eawe, le lance baissié,
Se sont feru sur lour coursiers—
Mout furent vaillanz chevaliers—
Et li Princes venoit apres
Qui ades les sievoit de pres.
Grant escarmuche ot sur le pas
De Some, je ne vous menk pas,
Et fort combatoient chevalier ;
Et la de traire et de lancier
Se penoient d'ambedeux pars,
Mais assez tost feurent espars
Et mys a suite li Picard
Avoc monseignour Godemart ;
Mais avoc l'aide de Dieu
Tout passa en temps et en lieu.

Coment le Roy de france vient
oue trois Roys. et son grant poyar vers
Crescy p combatre les englois.

Quant lui Rois Phillipes le oy dire
Mout awoit a coer dolour et jre
Et dit par seint Poul le Baron

Je me doute de traison
Mais nepourquant mout soi hasta
Fmy Aueville passa
Mout p fu riche ses arois

Quant Rois Philipes l’oy dire
Mout awoit a coer doel et ire,
Et dit: ‘ Par saint Poul, le baron,
Je me doute de traison ;’
Mais nepourquant mout se hasta,
Parmy Aueville passa.
Mout par fu riches ses arois ;
De la bataille de Crescy et coment le Roy de Beaume et le Duc de Lorain viij Countes et plusieurs autres furent occis a mesme le bataille et trois Roys et plusieurs autres sen departirent desconfitz.

A quoy faire vous counteroy Le materie et alengroye ?
La matiere et alengroye ? Celuy jour y ot il bataille
Si orible que tout sanz faille Si orible, que, tout sanz faille,
Unques ne fuist corps si hardis Onques ne fu corps si hardis
Que n’en pooit estre esbahis Que n’en pooit estre esbahis.
Que veist venir la puissance Qui veist venir le puissance
Et la pooir du Roy de fraunce Et le pooir du Rois de fraunce,
Graunt meruaille seroit a dire Grant mervaille seroit a dire !
Espris de maualant de Ire Espris de maualant et d’ire
Deuant ensemble entre acontier Se vont ensamle entr’enconer,
En faisant darmes le mestier En faisant d’armes le mestier,
Si tres chevalerousment Si tres chevalerousment
Que unques puis l’avenement Que onques puis l’avenement
Ne vist hôme bataille plus fiere Ne vit on bataille plus fiere.
La veit hôme maynte baniere,
Pointe de fin or et de soye,
Et la, se li vrais Dieux m'avoye,
Englois estoient tout a pie,
Com cil qui feurent afaitez
De combatre et entalentez.
La fust lui Prince de bontee,
Qui l'avantgarde condusoit,
Si vaillament se gouvernoit
Que merveille fu a veir ;
A paines lessoit envaier
Nuli, tant fust hardyz ne forz.
Que vous feroie lons recorz ?
Tant combattirent celui jour
Qu'Englois en avoyent le meilleur.
Et la fu morz li nobles Roys
De Behaigne qui fu courtoys,
Et li bons ducs de Lorayen
Qui moult fuist noble Cappitayne,
Et de fillandres noble Counte
Dont homo fesoi un grant acomte,
Et le bon Counte dalencioñ
Qui fuist frere au Roy Philippŏn
Cils de Joii t de Harecourt
Que vous diroy a brief mot court
Un Roy t un duc t sept Countes
Et ensi come dit luy acomtes
Plus que LX banerers
ffurent illoeqes mortz tout frees
Et trois Roys qui sendeptèrent
Et plusours autres sen fuieren
dont ie nesay mie le nombre
Ne n'est pas droiz que je le nombre ;
Mais je sai bien que celi jour
Luy noble Prince de valoure
De la bataille avoir lauaunt garde
Si come on doit bien prendre garde,
Car par lui et par ses vertus
fuist luy Champ gaignez et vaincus.

Line 328 pêins, marginal correction a.
Line 337, luy added in the margin.
The Black Prince

Coment apres le bataille de Crescy le Roy de France sen ala vers Paris | s le Roy de Engletere oue son Hoost sen deptist vs Caleys.

Luy Roy Philippes a Parys
Sen ala | qui moult fuist marys
En son corage regretoit
360 Sez hōmes qui pduz auoit
Et luy noble Roy dengleterre
Qui fuist dignes de tenir terre
Eu chaump cele noet soy logea
Qui moult _Font hono² conquesta
365 Les mortz fist aler visiter
Pur conustre et pur auiser,
Et troua le Roy de Beaume
Qui gisoin mort sur le champaigne
Carker le fist en un bere
Et mettre sur une literie
A couert dune riche drap dore
Ariere le tramist et lore
De la place se deslogea,
Per deuers Calois cheuaucha
370 Pur ce ce ieo ne mente mye
Cel trenoble cheuauche
Dount Je fai mention ycy
Ce fuist en lan qe dieux nasqui
Mill trois Centz quarant et sis
380 Et ensy come dist luy escris
La viegle de seint Bartholomeu
Que ouesq la grace de dieu
Le Roy cest bataille fist
Ou tant de noblesse il acquist

Li Rois Philippes a Parys
S'en ala qui moult fu marys,
En son corage regretoit
Ses homes qui perduz avoit ;
Et li nobles Roys d'Engleterre
Qui fu dignes de tenir terre,
Eu champ cele noet se logea,
Que moult grant honour conquesta.
365 Les morz fist aler visiter
Pour conoistre et pour aiser,
Et trova le Roy de Behaigne,
Qui gisoin morz sur le champaigne ;
Carker le fist en une biere
Et mettre sur une litterie
Acovert d'un riche drap d'or ;
Ariere le tramist et lor
De la place se deslogea,
Par devers Caleis cheuaucha.
Pour ce que je ne mente mye,
Cele trenoble chevauchëi,
Dont je fai mención ycy,
Ce fu en l'an que Dieux nasqui,
Mille trois cenz quarante et sis,
Et, ensy com dit li escris,
Le veille de seint Bartholmieu,
Qu'avoecques le grace de Dieu
Li Roys ceste bataille fist,
Ou tant de nobilece il acquist.

Coment le Roy Dengletere oue son gnte poair assegea la ville de Caloys p xvij.
Moys s le Roy de ffrance noesa leuer lassege
per quoy la dite ville se rendi
au Roy Dengletere.

f. 8r  Apres viendroient deuant Caleys
386 La out ils fait moult des beaux faitys

Apres vinrent devant Caleys ;
La ot il fait moult de biaux fais.
La tient siege le noble Roy
Qui y fuist oub tout son arroy
Dysoept moyes en un tenant
Ylloeqes demuroient tant
Que la ville fuist afamee
Et que la vint sanz demoerree
Luy Roy Philipp pur lever
Lassege sicom Iay oj counter

Mais ensi fuist lui hoost logie
Et la ville si assegie
Que le Roy Philippes noesa
Leuer lassege einz returna
Et luy noble Roy d'glenleer
Tient illoeqes la piece de terre
Maint escarmuche et maint assaut
Y faisoient 4 bas 4 haut
Tant que la ville se rendy
Priantz au Roy pur dieu mercy
405 Qu’a mercy il les vousist prendre
Et ensement a voir entendre
ffuist Calais par force conquise
P la puissance 4 p lemprise
Du noble Roy et de son filz
Le Prince qui tant fuist hardiz

La tient siege li noble Roy,
Qui y fu o tout son arroy,
Dys et oet moyes en un tenant.
Illoeqes demouroient tant
Que le ville fu afamee
Et que la vint, sanz demoerree,
Li Roys Philippes pour lever
Le siege, com j’o contrer.
Mais ensi fu li hos logie
Et le ville si assegie
Que li Roys Philippes n’osa
Lever le siege, einz returna,
Et li nobles Roys d’Engleterre
Tint illoeqes piece de terre
Mainte escarmuche et maint assaut
Y faisoient et bas et haut,
Tant que la ville se rendy,
Priant au Roy, pour Dieu mercy
405 Qu’a mercy il les vousist prendre
Et ensement, au voir entendre,
ffuist Calais par force conquise,
Par le puissance et par l’emprise
Du noble Roy et de son filz,
Le Prince, qui tant fu hardiz.

Coment le Roy dengletere oue son
poair returna en engletere 4 p traision
la ville de Calois deust auoir estee,
renduz as fransceis et le Roy dengletere
oue son poair le contre restoia en tant qil
eust este pris sil neust este rescouz p le Prince son filz.

Apres cee ne demura gere
Qu’il reuindren Engeleterre
Li Roys et li Princes auxi
Et tout li chevalier hardy
Par un triewe qils auoient
En lour pais se demuerent
Tant qil auient q p traitie

Apres ce, ne demoura gere
Qu’il rovinrent en Engeleterre,
Li Roys et li Princes auxi
Et tout li chevalier hardy.
Par une triewe qu’il auoient
En lour pais se demouroient,
Tant qu’il avint que par traitie,

Line 387, le corrected to luy in margin.
Lines 399 and 400 transposed in the MS.
THE BLACK PRINCE

Par traison et par pechie,
Devoit estre Caleis venduz
D'un seigniour de Biaugiu renduz,
A monsiour Geffrey de Charny,
Par un lombart, qui Amery
Estoit appellez de Pavye;
Et la feurent de Pikardye
Et de france tout ly baron,
Au meins le plus grande fuyson.
Mais la fu, au voir acontier,
Li nobles Roys a delivrer;
Et li nobles Princes, ses filz,
Qui moulst fu vaillanz et hardyz
La combati si vaillament,
Qui'il rescoust veritablement,
Par force, son pere, le Roy.
La feurent mis en desaroy
ffrancois et Pikart cele nuyt,
Dont plusieurs englois grant deduuyt
fiaisoient contre leur retour;
Car la feurent tout li meillour
Du noble pais d'Engleterre,
Qui pour grant los et pris conquerre
Si feurent vaillamment prove.
La furent pris, pour verite,
Li plus noble baron de france
Et deceu de volente france;
Q'onques mais li Rois d'Engleterre
N'eut en une heure tant a fere
Com eut en celle heure d'adont,
Car plusieurs genz recordez ont
Que li Rois eust este pris
N'eust este li Princes, ses filz,
Mais sa puissance et sa hautece
Et sa tresparfite proece
Rescoust illoec le Roy, son pere.
Si ne doyt pas ceste matiere
Estre en nul estat obliiè,
Ore est bien droiz que le vous die

420 425 430 435 440 445 450 455
Coment apres le rescous de Caleys le Roy
dengleterre oue son poair retournra apres
ceo auint la bataille sur la mer et la furent
les Espainardes occiz et descoumfitz.

En engleterre retournerent
Et moutl grant joie demenerent

1.7' Grant ioe firent loure amy
460 Et toutz les dames auxi
La Roygne les festoa
Qe son f de coer ama
Donc dist le Roy a sa muliere
Dame car veulliez festoier

465 Vre filz | car ioe feusse pris
Si neust estee p son grant pris
Mais p lui ieu socurruz
Sire fait ele bien venuz
Soit il | et vous auxi a moy

470 Si mest ausi qe dire doy
A bone heure fuist il neez
La feurent conioy assetez
Luy Chiualer a lui Baron
Damiser t festoier y veist hôm

475 Et faire festes t reueaux
Moutl pafuy bon le temps entre eaux
Et la fuist amôs t noblesse
Et ioliette t proesse
Ensi demeurent longe temps

480 Tant qil auint iesqes a ceo temps
Qe a lescluse assemblez estoient
Niefs despaigne queux sauantoient
De passer en despit du Roy
Maugre luy t tout son arroy

485 Doutn le Roy p son vasselage
fiist assembler son graunt baronage
Et fiist sur la mer un arriuee
Qe moult fu de ãnt renomee
La estoit lui Prince son filz

490 Et maint bon Chiualer de pris
Tout luy counte t tout li baron
Et tout li Chiualer de noun
La auoit batal fiere et dure
La lui dona dieux aventure
Car p lui et p sa puissance
Et p sa tres haute vaillance
ffeurent toutz mortz et discoufit
Les Espainardes sachez de fit
Et la fuist Chiualer Johans
Son frere qui moult fuist vaillantz
Qui de Lancastre fuist puis ducz
Moult pfeurent ses grantz vertuz
La se provrent vaillantment
Li noble baron ensemant
La ot il maint niefs gaignee
Maint pris et maint parree
Et la ot maint bon hom mort
Sicomoy en mon recort
Et sachez quce ceste iournee
Si fuist deuant Wynchelesee

La auoit bataille fiere et dure:
La lui dona Dieux aventure,
Car par lui et par sa puissance
Et par sa tres haute vaillance,
ffeurent tout mort et desconfi
Li Espaignart, sachez de fi.
Et la fu chevaliers Johans,
Ses frere, qui moult fu vaillanz,
Qui de Lancastre fu puis ducz —
Moult par feurent grantz ses vertuz.
La se provrent vaillamment
Li noble baron ensemant;
La ot il mainte nef gaigni
Mainte prise et mainte perie,
Et la ot maint bon home mort,
Si come j’oy en mon recort;
Et sachiez que ceste iournee
Si fu devant Wynchelesee.

Coment apres la bataille su la mer la
Roygne dengleterre enfanta un fiz quauoit a noun Thomas a aprs ceo vient le Captal
de Gascoigne en engleterre pur auoir le
Prince leur chiftein en Gascoigne sur ceo fust ordeigne per parlement qu e
le Prince sen passeroit en Gascoigne oue plusieurs Countes et autres seignours.

Apres ceste noble bataille
Que moult fuist horrible sanz faille
A terre furent retournez
La graunt auoir ont amesnez
Qils eurent gaignez et conquis
Dount chescun de eux fuist resiois
Apres ce ne demora gere
Que la Roigne dengleterre
Enfanta un filz de darrein
Qelle porta cest bien certein
Et cil filz ot Thomas a noun

Apres ceste noble bataille,
Qui moult fu horrible sanz faille,
A terre furent retournez;
Le grant auoir ont amene
Qu’il eurent gaigne et conquis,
Dont chescuns d’iaux fu resjois.
Apres ce ne demora gere
Que la Roine d’Engleterre
Enfanta un filz, le darrein
Qu’elle porta, c’est bien certein,
Et cis filz ot Thomas a non.

Line 506 parree, e in the margin.
Grant ioie et grant feste fist hom
Grantz Iustes et festes crie
Adonques p la contre

Et à ce temps vient a Gascoigne
Le captal nest pas mencoigne
Qui mout estoit vaillant et preus
Moulth hardis et moulth corageus
Et moulth amez de toute gent

ffestoiez fust moulth noblement
Graunt ioie füst de sa venue
Lui Prince qui se resuertue
Un iour il dist au Roy son pire
Et a la Roigne sariere

Sire fait il pur dieu mercy

Vous sauez bien qil est en sy
Qen Gascoigne vous ayment tant
Luy noble chialver vaillant
Qils ont graunt payne pur vre guerre

Et pur vre honoure conquere
Et si mout point de Chieftayne
De vre sang ceste chose certein
Et pur ce si vous le trouuez
En vre conseil que faissiez

Envoier la un de voz filz
Ils en seroient plus hardys
Et chescun disoit qil disoit voir
Lors füst lui Roy sachez pur voir
Assembler son grant plement

Toutz furent d'acort ensement
De Prince en Gascoigne envoier
Pur ce que tant fuist a priser
Et ordeignerent la endroit
Ensi que ouesq lui irroit

De Warrewyky luy noble Counte
De quoy hoome fesoit grant aconte
Et lui Counte de Saresbury
Qui moulth estoit vaillant auxi
Cil de Suffolch qui fuist p'dhom

Ufford ensi estoit sonn noun
Et le Counte doxenford
Et le bon Counte de Stafford

Grant joie et grant feste fist on,
Grant feste de joustes crie
Adonques fu par le contre.

Et a ce tamps vint de Gascoigne
Li captaus, ce n’est pas mencoigne,
Qui mout estoit vaillanz et preus,
Moulth hardis et moulth corageus,
Et moulth amez de toute gent.

ffestoiez fu moulth noblement.
Grant joie fists de sa venue
Li Princes, qui se resuertue.

Un jour il dist au Roy son pere,
Et a la Royne, sa mere :
' Sire,' fait il, 'pourt Dieu mercy
Vous savez bien qu’il est en sy
Qu’en Gascoigne vous ayment tant
Li noble chevalier vaillant,

Qu’il on grant payne pour vo guerre
Et pour vosctre honoure conquere,
Et se n’ont point de capitaune
De vo sanc, c’est chose certeine ;
Et pour ce, se vous le trouviez
En vo conseil que fessiez

Envoier la un de voz filz,
Il en seroient plus hardys.'

Et chescuns dist qu’il disoit voir.
Lors füst li Roys, sachiez pour voir,
Assembler son grant parlement.

Tout furent d’acort ensement
Du Prince en Gascoigne envoier,
Pour ce que tant fu a priser,
Et ordeignerent la endroit
Ensi, qu’avoequeus lui iroit

De Warrewyky li noble conte
De quoy on fesoit grant aconte,
Et li conte de Sarsbury
Qui moulth estoit vaillanz auxi,
Cil de Suffolch qui fuist preudons,
Ufford, ensi estoit ses nons,
Et li conte d’Oxeneford
Et li bon conte de Stafford,
De l'ordonnance pur le passage du Prince à Plûmuth vers Gascoigne & comen il prist congé
du Roy son pire et du Roygne sa mere.

Quant la chose fuiste deuisée
Et tout l'ordonnance acomplee
A Plummuth fist hóme mander

580 Pur toutz leur niefs assemblier
Gentz darmes & Archiers auxi
Et leur vitailles sans nul si
Moult pfu riches luy arros
Aprés le terme de deux mois

585 Il prist congie du Roy son pire
Et de la Roygne sa mere
De toutz ses freres & ses soers
Moult grant dolour font en lour coers
Quant se vient a son departire

590 Car la veissiez sans mentière
Dames & damoiselles plover
Et en lour compleintes doluser
Lune pur son amy ploiroit
Et lautre son amy regretoit

Coment le Prince est venuz a Plûmuth
oue son gât poer et illoeqes ad demurre
tanque il fust tut prest pur passer auuant
Est arrivez a Burdeaux, comètre les nobles seigniours et barons de Gascoigne luy ont rescue que got ioie hon' comètre apres ceo le Princes prist les champs oue p force mais combatauntz prist exila p force pluszours chastels villes en Gascoigne.

Ensi prist li Princes congie, Qui le coer a zoit haut et lee Vers Plummuthe prist son chemin Tant chevaucha soir et matyn Qu’a Plummuthe fu arrivez, Et illoec est tant demorez Que touz ses granz arros fu pres. Et s’avint auxi tost apres Qu’il fist carker touz ses vesvalx A tout vitailes et joialx, Hauberks, hiaumes, lances, escutz, Arcs, saitez et encor plus; fist touz ses chevalx eskipper Et assezt tost se mist en mer, Et touz li noble chevalier. La peust on, au voir jugier, Veoir le flour de chevalerie Et tres noble bachelerie, Qui feurent en grant volente De bien faire et entalente. Lors comencerent a sigler; Tant siglerent par my le mer Qu’il arriuerent a Bourdiaux, Dont mout fesoient granz reviaux Li noble baron du pais.

La veissiez granz et petiz Venir vers le Prince, tout droit, Qui doucement les festoit. Devers lui vient tout entreet Lui noble Prince de la breet. Li nobles Princes de Labret Et li sire de Montferrat, Qui ot le coer pre et vaillant.
Mussindén | Roson | Courton
Et de faussard Amenión
Et li grant p de Pomiers

630 Et meintz des nobles Chiualer
Et le droit p de Lessparre
Quei vous ferroy ie longe barre
Por alongier plus la matiere
La viendroient cest chese clere

635 De Gascoigne tout lui baron
Et le Prince de tresgrant noun
Les sauoit trop bien conioier
Quei vous dirra ie sanz menter
A Burdeux soiourna un poy

640 Tant qil auoit fait tout son arroy
Et bien ses chialx reposez
Bien tost apres fuist apprestez
Et mist ensemble sur les champs
Plus qe .vj. Mill combatantz

645 Deuers Tholouse chiuacha
Unges ville ny demora
Quil ne faisist tout exiler
Et prist Carkason et Vesier

f. 97* Et Narbone tout la país

650 fuist p luy gastez et maluais
Et plusieurs villes Chasteaux
Dount pas ne firent grantz Reueaux
En Gascoigne lui enemy
Plus qe quatre Mois demy

655 Deña es champs ceste foitz
Adonques il fist moul de desrois

Coment le Prince se retourna vs Burdeaux
et illoeqs deña en grant deduit
et grant ioie
tanq liure fue passe lors il mist sez gentz
p ordinance en sez chastels tout entour.

Puis deuers Burdeaux retourna
Lui Prince | le demora
Tanqe y fuist passe tout lyuer

660 Il et si noble Chiualer

Line 660 si, marginal correction soñ.
En grant deduit et en grant joie
En grant deduit a en grant ioie

Estoient la si dieux manioie
Estoient la, se Dieux m’avoie.

La fu joliete, noblece,
La fuist iolite et noblesce

ffranchise | bonte | & largesce
ffranchise, bonte et largece ;

665 Et a ce que j’ay de semblance
Il mist ses genz par ordinance
Et, a ce que j’ay de semblance,

En ses chastiaux trestout entour
La ou ils firent leur sejour
En ses chastiaux trestout entour,

Warrewik fuist a la Rolf
Warrewik fu a le Reole

Et auxi a court pole
Et auxi, a courte parole,

Salesbury fust a seint fooy
Salsbury fu a Seinte foy,

Et ce fuist ensi come le croy
Et se fu, ensi com je croy,

Suffolk droit a seint Million :
Suffolk droit a Seint Million :

A Leybourne & tout environ
A Leybourne et tout environ

fiurent ses homes herbergiez
fiurent si home herbergie.

Quant ensi feurent hostagiez
Quant ensi feurent hostagie,

Luy bon Chaundos & Audelee
Li bon Chandos et Audelee

Qui mout quoioint renommee
Qui mout queroient renommee,

Ouesqes le noble Captal
Avoecques le noble Captal

680 Qui le coer ot preu a loial
Qui le coe ot preu et loial,

Salerent logier sur les champs
Salerent logier sur les champs,

La ou ils demurrent longe tamps
Leur il demoreren long tamps.

Mainte bele escarmuche firent
Mainte bele escarmuche firent

Et mainte fois se combatiorent
Et mainte fois se combatièrent

Pour conquaster leur logement.
Pour conquaster leur logement.

Dusq’a Caours & vers Agent
Dusqu’a Caours et vers Agent

Entre priset leur chiuachie
Entre priset leur chevauchie

Et pristrent port seinte Marie
Et priset Port Seinte Marie.

Puis sen retournerent aere
Puis s’en retournerent aiere

Tout encontremont la Ryuere
Tout encontremont le ryviere,

Salerent prendre Pieragos
Salerent prendre Pieregos,

Une Cite qe ot grant los
Une cite qui ot grant los ;

Illoeqes salerent herbergier
Iloeq s’aleren herbergier

Tut un grant part de lyuer
Toute une grant part de l’yvier.

692 Moult pfu noble le seignioure
Moult par fu nobles li sejour,

Car maint issaut et maint estoure
Car maint assaut et maint estour

ffesoient contre le Chastell
ffesoient contre le chastiel,

Car manoit qe petit praiell
Car n’avoit que petit praiel

Entre le Chastell & la Ville
Entre le chastel et le ville.

La estoit la Counte de Lylle
La estoit li contes de Lylle

Line 669 la, marginal correction le.
Line 700 la, marginal correction lui.
Et lui Counte de Pieregos
Quei vous dirroy je plus des motz
Coment le Prince reassembla son poair
î fist son chiuachie en seint Onge  
î en altres diuers parties de Gascoigne
î prist certens fortes ses et Seigniours
deuant la bataille de Paiters  
ent vandroient au Roy de ffrance.

Ensi le Prince sojourna
En Gascoigne  
si demora
705 Le space de .viij. mois ou plus
Mout pfu grant ses vertus
Quan ce vient encontre lestee
Lors ad son poair assemble
Puis refist une chiuachie
710 En seint Onge le vous affie
En Pieregos  
en Kersin
Et vient jusqes Roumorentyn
La prist il le toure sur assaut
La prist auxi monß Buscikant
715 Et le grant f° de Craone
Et des autres mout ãnt fuysonc
Plus de .CC. en yot pris
Toutz gentz darme de ãnt pris
Quinsze iour deuant le bataille
720 De Paitiers sachiez tout sanz faille
Apres chiuacha en Barri
Et pmy Gascoigne auxi
1.10* Et ijesqes a Tours en Tourayn
Adonqes cest bien chose certeyn
725 Les nouels au Roy Iohan
Vindrent  
dont mout fist grant a han
Et dist qe poy se priseroit
Si grant vengeans nepreindoit

Ensi li Princes sojourna
En Gascoigne et s’i demora
L’espace de viii mois ou plus. 705
Mout par furent grant ses vertus.
Quan ce vint encontre l’este
Lors a son pooir assemble;
Puis refist une chevauchié
710 En Seintonge, je vous affie,
En Pieregos et en Kersin,
Et vint jusqes Roumorentyn.
La prist il le tour sur assaut,
Auxi monseignour Buscikaut,
715 Et le grant seignour de Craôn,
Et des autres mout grant fuyson ;
Plus de .cc. en y ot pris,
Toutes genz d’armes de grant pris,
Quinsze jours deuant le bataille
720 De Poitiers, sachiez tout sanz faille.
Apres chevaucha en Barri
Et par my Gascoigné auxi,
Et jusqes a Tours en Tourayne.
Adonc, c’est bien chose certayne,
725 Les novelles au Roy Jehan
Vinrent, dont mout fist grant ahan,
Et dist que poi se priseroit
Se grant vengeance n’en preindoit.

Coment le Roy de ffrance fist assembler
sa ãnt puissance  
charteres encontre le
Prince et son poair  
luy Prince ad pris
son chemyn vers paitiers  
comét il prist
deux Countes  
plusours
autres furent pris  
mortz.
Lors fist amsembler sa puissance
De tout le Roy alme de ffance
Ny demora ne Duc ne Counte
Ne Baron | dont hôme fecist counte
Qe tout ne fesoit amasser
Et ensi come iay oy counter

Et chiuachirent sansz null si
Tout ensi pdeuers Toures
Mout p⁄u noble lour atours
Lui Prince en oy nouelš
Queux lui semblerent bones et beles

Deuers Paitiers prist son chemin
Moulte oue lœi menoit grant train
Car moulte eurent fait demange
En ffance | p lour grant baronage
Et sachez qe le samey

Le noble Counte de Ioygny
Ouesq; le Counte dantoire
Prist le Prince ceste chose voire
Et combaterent vaillantent
Les ffrancois a lour logement

Mais ils feurent toutz mortz en pris
Ensement le dit lœi esçêptz
Dount Englois fesoient grant joye
P⁄my lour hoost si dieux mauoie
Et lui Roy Johan chiuacha

Tant q le Prince adevauncea
Et qe lœu hoost lautre choisi
Et a ce que ie entendi
Lœu declaut lautre se longerent
Et si trespresse herbergerent

Qils abuuroient p seint piecre
Lour chiuax a un Riuer.
Coment le Cardinal de Piergos vient a Brismos oue eint clerchie a Roy de fffraunce pur faire accord pendre luy le Prince sur ceo oie entendu la volonte et auis du Roy de fffraunce sen chiuacha le Cardinal deus le Prince p' meisme la cause.

Mais la endroit vint a Brymos 
Lui Cardinal de Piergos 
Qui amesna ousesq lui 
770 Maint Clerc v maint legasi 
Doun doucement au Roy de fffrance 
Ad dit de humble volunte france 
Sire fait il pur lamoure de dieu 
Bone pole tient bon lieu 
775 Car il vous plese a moy lesser 
Que je puisse aler chiuacher 
Deuers le Prince pur aler 
Si hôme vous purroit accorder 
Car certes ceste grant bataille 
780 Tant serra horible sans faille 
Que pite serra et damages 
Et granz orgoilles et gntz outrages 
Que tant beale creature 
ffaudra morir de grief mort seure 
785 Et si nepoit hôme destourner 
Morir de faille a lassembler 
Dont certes countre enfandra 
Cely qe le tort en aura 
P deuant dieu au Jugement 
790 Si li escripture ne ment 
Dont respondi lui Roy Iohans 
Cardinal moult estez sachantz 
Bien voillons qe vous yalez 
Mais sachez bien entendez 
796 La ne ferrons pas en nre vie 
Si ne reanous en no baille 
Les Chastelx t tout la terre
Que puis qu’il vient hors d’Engleterre, 
Nous a gastez et exiliez
A malveis droit a pieciez
Et auxi quite le querelee
Dont la guerre se renouuelle
‘Sire,’ ce dist li Cardinaus,
‘Tant ferai que bien serrez saus,
Et a souffit de vostre droit.’
Lors se parti de la endroit.

Coment le Cardinal chiuacha du Roy de France
vers lost du Prince p’ entrainer de la corde auantdit.

Vers lost du Prince chiuacha
Si tost qu vers lui arriua
Moulant doucement lad saluee
En plorant, par grande pite :
‘Sire,’ fait il, ‘pour Dieu merci,
Car prennez au jour d’hui merci
De si mainte noble persone
Qui au jour d’huy, cou est le some,
Pourroiez ci perdre la vie
En ycest grant estormye.
Sietez tant que n’ieiz pas tort.
S’on vous peuis mettre a acort
Dieux et le sainte Trinite
Vous en pourroit savoir bon gre.’

Coment le Prince respondi au Cardinal
sur la traite du dit accorde.

Li Princes dist a coer entieu :
‘Certes, biaux, dous peres en Dieu,
Bien savons que ce que vous dites
Est voirs, ce sont raisons escriptes.
Mais nous volons bien soutenir
Que no querelle, sanz mentir,
Est juste, vraye et veritable.
Bien savez que ce n’est pas fable,
Que mes peres, Roys Edouwarz,
Certes estoit li plus droiz hoirs
Pour tenir et pour possesser

Luy Prince dist a coer entieu
Certi baux douce pieere en dieu
Bien sauoms ce ce que vous ditez
Est voirs, ce sont raisons esceptez
Mais nous volons bien sustiner
Que ne querell sans mentir
Est just, vraye et veritable
Bien sauez ce ce nest pas fable
Que mon pier Roy Edwardz
Certes estoit le plus droitez hoirs
Pur tener a pur possesser
France que chescuns doit amer
Au temps qu'el fuist coronez Roys
Lui Roy philippes de Valois
Mais nient contreestant pas ne voile
Qe home die que par mon orgoille
Moerge tant bele Iuuenta
Mais ce nest my mon entente
Qe ie face le contraire
De la paix | si heme le pooit faire
Einz enferray tout mon poir
Mais sachez que tout pur voier
Ie ne puis pas cest matier
Acompler | sanz le Roy mon pier
Mais respit puisse bien doner
Des mes homes & acorder
Pur p traitier plus de la paix
Si acorder ne voillent cest foitz
Ie su ci tout prest pur attendre
La grace de dieu | au voir entendre
Car ane querelle est si verraye
Qe de combatre ne mesmaye
Mais pur destourner la damage
De la mort | et le gent outrage
Le ferra a vré plaisir
Ou gre de mon pier assentier
France, que chescuns doit amer,
Au tamps qu'i fu coronez rois
Li Rois Philippes de Valois;
Mais nient contrestant pas ne voeil
Qu'on die que par mon orgoel
Moerge tante bele jouente.
Mais ce n'est mye mon entente
Que je face ore le contraire
De le paix, s'on le pooit faire,
Einz en ferai tout mon poir:
Mais sachiez que, tres tout pour voir,
Je ne puis pas ceste materre
Acomplir sanz le Roy, mon pere,
Mais respit puis je bien doner
A mes homes et acorder,
Pour partraitier plus de le paix.
S'acort ne voeillent ceste fois
Je sui ci touz pres pour attendre
Le grace Dieu, au voir entendre,
Car no querelle est si veraye
Que de combatre ne m'esmaye;
Mais pour destourner le damage
De le mort et le grant outrage
Le ferai a vostre plaisir
Ou gre de mon pere assentir.'

Coment lui Cardinal tout enplorant sen
deparci du Prince et retourna p diuers
le Roy de sraunce & lui fist relation de
la traitie & comen sur ceo le Roy de sraunce
assigna pur sa part Euesques & autres seigniours
pur entretraitier & excusez la battle.

Luy Cardinal tout enplorant
Se parti de lui maintenant
Et chiuacha sanz detriance
Deuers le Roy Iohan de sraunce
Et lui ad countee de son gent attrait
Et le Roy pur plus alongier le fait

Li Cardinaus tout em plorant
Se parti de lui maintenant
Et chevaucha sanz detriance
Devers le Roy Johan de sraunce,
Et li conta de son attrait.
Li Roys, pour alongier le fait,
THE BLACK PRINCE

Et pur le bataille excuser
ffist toutz les barons assembler

865 Et mettre ensample de dieux partz
De parler ne fuist pas escars
La vint li cuens de Tankerville
Et ensi come dit lestille

f. 12r
ffist luy Arceuesq de Seus

870 Cils de Thalrus qui ot gnt seus
Charguy l Busciaunt et Clermout
Toutz ceux illoques venuz sont

Coment autres seigniours
englois feurent depar le Prince
ordeignez pur entratier oue
les ffrancois du dit accorre.

Pur le conseil du Roy de sfrance
Dautre part volente france

875 Y fuist de Warrewik lui Counte
Et ensi come dit lui acontes
Lui Count de Suffolk y fu
Qui ot le poil gris et kenu
Si fuist Bertrem de Burgees

880 Qui du Prince fuist le plus pres
Si furent Audelee et Chaundos
Qui en ce temps auoient gnt los
Illoques firent le plement
Et la chescun dist son talent

885 Mais de leur conseil ne vous say
Mais ie say bien tout pur verray
Quils ne poioient estre dacort
Sicome iay oi en mon recort
Dont chescun de eux departy

890 Adonques dist Geoffroy de Charguy
Seignioure fait il puis qens est
Qu ceste traitie plus ne vous plest
Je loffe qu nous vous combatoms
Cent pur Cent et choisiroms

895 Chescun p deuers son costee
Et bien sachez pur verite
Le quel Cent qui sont disconfit

Pour le conseil du Roy de sfrance :
D'autre part, de volente france,
Y fu de Warrewik, li contes,
Et, ensi com dii acontes,
Li contes de Suffolk y fu
Qui ot le poil gris et kenu,
S'i fu Bertremie de Burghes
Qui du Prince fu li plus pres,
S'i furent Audlee et Chandos
Qui en ce temps avoient grante los.
Illoec firent le parlement
Et la chescuns dist son talent.
Mais de leur conseil ne vous say ;
Mais je say bien, tout pour veray,
Qu'il ne poioient estre dacort,
Si come j'oi en mon recort :
Dont chescuns d'iaux s'en departy.
Adonc dist Geoffrois de Chargny :
'Seigniour,' fait il, 'puis qu'ensi est
Que cist traitiez plus ne vous plest,
J'offre que nous vous combatoms,
Cent pour cent, et se choisironz
Chescuns par devers son coste ;
Et bien sachiez, pour verite,
Li quel cent qui sont desconfi
THE BLACK PRINCE

Tut lui autre sachez defit
De cest champ se departiron

900 Et la querelle lesseront
Ie croy que le meillours si serra
Et que deux gre nous ensauera
Que le journe se deporte
Ou tant psone serroit morte

Tout li autre, sachiez de fi,
De cest champ se departiront
Et le querelle lesseront.
Je croy que li mielz si sera,
Et que Dieux gre nous en savra
Que le journee se deport
Ou tant pseudome seront mort.'

De la final responce dones a les francois
p les seigniours englois de la traite. Et coment
les Seigniours du traite si bien de lun
costee come de lautre souint retournez
chescun deuers son Seigniour sanz accorde entre
eux fait | s le Cardinal sen chiuachha tout emplorat deus patiers.

905 Et adonques lui respondi
lui Counte de Warwik ensi
Seigniour fait il que voillez vous
Prendre p ce encontre nous
Bien sauez que vo vous estez plus

910 Des gentez darmeze ' feer vestuz
Quatrefoitz qe nous ne soisons
Et vre terre chiuachons
Veiez ci la Champaigne e la place
Chescun qui poet son meillô face

915 Autre part ie ne say
Ne autre ieo nacorderay
Dieux voille conforter le droit
Ou il semble qe meillô soit
Lors se ptent sanz plus parler

920 Vers leur host prirent atournier
Chescun disoit en son parti
Cil Cardinal nous ad trai
Elas pur dieu mais noun auoit
Car tout plorant seu deparloit

925 Et chiuacho deuers Paiters
Cela lui estoit bien mestiers
Car certes il nauoit bon gree
Ne grace de nulle costee
Lors out lour bataille ordeignee

930 Chescun sanz point de demoere

Et adonques lui respondi
Li conte de Warwik ensi :—
'Seigniour,' fait il, 'quoi volez vous
Prendre par ce encontre nous?
Bien savez que vous estes plus
Des genz d'armes et fier vestuz
Quatrefois que nous ne soisons
Et vostre terre chevauchons.
Vezi le champaigne et le place,
Chescuns qui poet, son meillô face.

915 Autre part je ne say
Ne autre ieo n'acorderay.
Dieux voelle conforter le droit,
Ou il semble que meillô soit !'
Lors se partent sanz plus parler,
Vers leur host prirent a tourner.
Chescuns disoit en son parti :
'Cis Cardinaus nous a trai'—
E las ! pour Dieu, mais non auoit,
Car tout plorant s'en departoit
Et chevauchoit devers Poitiers —
Cela lui estoit bien mestiers,
Car certes il n'avoit bon gree
Ne grace de nulli coste.
Lors ont lour bataille ordenee
Chescuns, sanz point de demoere.
Coment le Roy de ffrance assigna
le Mareschall de Cleremount 
plusieurs autres seigniours oue iii. Mill
combatauntz deux Mill seruauntz 
bien deux Mill Arblastiers pur esteet en lauaunt garde de son host.

Premierment le Roy de ffrance
A mis sez gentes en ordinance
Et dist beau seignour p ma foy
Tant me detrierez ceo croy
935 Que lui Prince meschapera
Cil Cardinle bien tray ma
13 Qui ci mad fait tant demorer
Donqes comeneca a apeller
Le bon Mareschaux de Cleremont
940 Et cely Doudenham qui mont
fluist en toutz temps a priser
Car en lui ot bon Chiualer
Ouesq le noble Duc Dataine
Qui mult fuist noble Chieftaine
945 Seigniour ce dist lui riche Rois
ffaitez apresti vous arrios
Car vous serres en nire aught garde
Et cest vre droit si dieux me garde
Ouesq vous auerez sansz doute
950 Trois Mill homes de vre route
Et si aueretez .ij. Mill seruantz
A glaives & a dartz trenchantz
Et bien deux Mill Arblastiers
Qui vous aideront voluntiers
955 Gardez si vous englois trouez
Ouesq eux vous vous combatez
Et si ny aies point de deport
Que toutz ne les mettez a mort

Coment le Roy de ffrance ordeigna le Duc
de Normandie son fiz | le Duc de Burboyn
et plusieurs autres seigniours oue quatre Mill
combatauntz ëp estre en la second batail de son host.
Lors appella a ceste fie
Son filz le duc de Normandie
Et lui a dit : 'Biaux filz, par foy,
Roy de ffrance serres apres moy,
Et pour cou avrez vous sanz faille
Le nostre second bataille ;
Et le noble duc de Bourbon
Avrez a vostre compaignon,
Et le seigniour de Seint Venant
Qui a le coer preu et vaillant.
Li bons Tristans de Maguelers
Qui moult est nobles bachelers,
Il portera vre baniere
Que est de soi riche et chiere,
Nespnez ia pur Iohn cris
Englois tout soit gtzt ne petitz
Que tout a mort ne les mettez

Car ie ne voile qe si osez
Soient iames pur passer
Un soul pee p deca la mer
Pur moy greuer ne guerroier
Ensy les vorray ie arraier
Dist lui Dauffyns pere p foy
Tant ferrons ensi come ie croy
Que vre bon gre enauns
Adonqes baniers t peignous
Veissiez desploier au vent
Ou fui or t asure resplent
Pourpresp t goules t hermynes
Trompes | Taburs | Chors | et Bussynes
Oissiez pmy loost bouder
Tout faisot la terre tenter
La grant bataille de Dauffyn
La ot maint bon Chialer fyn
Et ensy come dist le nombre
Quatre Milt feurent en nombre
Dune des costees sa place prist
Mout grant espace de terre comprist
Ensi ad lui le Roy deuisce
Cest bataille t ordeigne

Lors appella, a ceste fiè,
Son filz, le duc de Normandiè,
Et lui a dit : 'Biaux filz, par foy,
Roys seres de ffrance apres moy,
Et pour cou avrez vous sanz faille
Le nostre second bataille ;
Et le noble duc de Bourbon
Avrez a vostre compaignon,
Et le seigniour de Seint Venant
Qui a le coer preu et vaillant.
Li bons Tristans de Maguelers
Qui moult est nobles bachelers,
Il portera vostre baniere
Que est de soi riche et chiere,
N'esparniez ja, pour Jesu Cris,
Englois, tant soit granz ne petiz,
Que touz a mort ne les mettez.
Car je ne voei que si osez
Soient james pour repasser,
Uns souls piez, par deca le mer,
Pour moy grever ne guerroier.'
'Ensy les vorray je arroier,'
Dist li Dauffyns, 'pere, par foy.
Tant ferrons, ensi com je croy
Que vostre bon gre en avrons,'
Adonc banieres et peignous
Veissiez desploier au vent,
Ou fins ors et asurs resplent,
Pourpresp et goules et hermynes.
Trompes, tabours, chors et buisynes
Oissiez parmy l'ost bondir ;
Tout faisot le terre tenter
Le grant bataille du Dauffyn.
La ot maint bon chevalier fyn
Et, ensy come dist li nombre,
Quatre mille feurent en nombre.
D'un des costees sa place prist
Grant space de terre comprist.
Ensi a li Roys deuisce
Ceste bataille et ordenee.
Coment le Roy de France ordeigna le riche duc Delliens son frere oue trois Milz combatauntz pur amesner la areregarde de son host.

Adonques appella ce est chose clere
1000 Le riche Duc Delliens son frere
'frere fait il si dieux me garde
Vous amesnerez nire arere garde
Ouesq trois Mill combatantz
Des gentz darmeiz preus et vaillantz
1005 Et gardes bien pur dieu mercy
Que naiies la denglois mercy
Mais les mettez toutz a mort
Car ils nous oquent mult fait de tort
Et arzee destruite nire terre
Puis qils ptirent Dengeleterre
Et gardez si le Prince preignez
Qe p deuers moy lamesnez
f. 14v Sire se dist lui riche Ducs
Volentiers en coer plus

Donc appella, c'est chose clere,
Le riche duc d'Orliens, son frere,
'frere,' fait il, 'se Dieux me garde,
Vous merrez no arieregarde
Avoec trois mille combatanz
Des genz d'armes, preus et vaillantz;
Et gardes bien, pour Dieu mercy,
Que n'aies ja d'Englois mercy,
Mais les mettez tres touz a mort;
Car il nous ont mout fait de tort
Et arse et destruite no terre,
Puis qu'il partirent d'Engleterre.
Gardez, se le Prince prenez,
Que par devers moy l'amenez.'
'Sire,' ce dist li riches duc,
'Volentiers, et encore plus.'

Coment le Roy de France
meismes ouesqe trois de sez fiz
1 plusours Countes 2 autres seigniours
a la nombre de xxiii. Baniers iii Chiuals
armez | iii Chiualers desus | armez
furent en la quart bataille illoeqes.

1015 Ensement ad lui noble Rois
Iohan | ordeignee ses courrois
En la quarte bataille fu
Moult pflu riche sa vertu
Ouesq lui toyez ses filz
1020 Qui moult furent de gnt pris
Le Duc Danio cil de Barry
Estoit auxi ouesq luy
Et si fuist Philosophs ly hardys
Qui moult fu ioefnes et petitz
1025 La estoit Jaques de Burboñ
Lui Counte deu qui ot bon noun

Ensement a li nobles Rois
Jehans ordene ses courrois,
En le quarte bataille fu,
Moult par fu riche sa vertu,
Avoecques lui trois de ses filz,
Qui moult par furent de grant pris,
Li ducs d'Anjo, cil de Barry
Estoient la avoecques ly,
S'i fu Philosophs ly hardys,
Qui moult fu joenes et petiz.
La estoit Jaques de Bourbon,
Li conte d'Eu qui ot bon non
Et lui Counte de longeville
Cils deux si estoient sans gille
ffiltz monp Robt Dartois

1030 Et si estoit a ceste foitza
Lui noble Counte de Sausoire
Quesq lui ce est chose voire
Et si estoit le Court | Daunmartyn

Quci vous feroy ie longe fyn
Tant pfi riche ses arroiz
Car banieres eust vint et trois
Puis ordeigna a lautre lees
Bien CCCC. chialx armez
Et CCCC. Chialers desus

1035 De trestoutz les meillios escus.
Guichard dangle les conduisoit,
Qui noble chialer estoit
Et le bon f° Dangebuguy
Qui ot le coer preu et hardy

1040 En qui le Roy se fioit moutt
Et leur pria sans alentir
Qils pansaient de bien ferir
Et qils ne sespnassent mie

1045 Dauoir la bataille partie
Et chescun les sieweroit apres
Qui de bien faire serroit pres
Et chescun lui ad acordee
De bien faire sa volente

1050 La auoit il tiel noblesse
Si Dieux me poet donner leesse
Qe ce fuist un grant meruelle
Unques home ne vist tel apparaillle
De noblesse ne dordinance

1055 Come feurent de la pte de ffrance

Et li conte de Longeville;
Cil deux si estoient, sans gille,
ffiltz monseignour Robert d’Artois:
Et s’i estoit, a ceste fois,
Li nobles conte de Sansoire
Avoecques lui, c’est chose voire,
Et li conte de Danmartyn.

Que vous feroy je longe fyn?
Tant par fu riches ses arrois,
Car banieres eut vint et trois.
Puis ordena a l’autre les
Bien cccc chevalx armez
Et cccc chevaliers sus,
De trestouz les meillours escus.

1040 Guichard d’Angle les conduisoit,
Qui nobles chevaliers estoit,
Et li bons seigniour d’Aubegny
Qui ot le coer preu et hardy,
Et Eustace de Rippemont

1045 En qui li Rois se fioit moutt,
Et leur pria, sans alentir,
Qu’i1l pensassent de bien ferir
Et qu’il ne s’esparnassent mie
D’avoir le bataille partie,
Et chescuns les sieweroit apres
Qui de bien faire seroit pres.
Et chescuns lui a acorde
De bien faire sa volente.

1050 La auoit il tele noblece,
Se Dieux me poet donner leece,
Que ce fu une grant meruelle;
Onques on ne vit tel pareille
De noblece ne d’ordonance
Come eurent de le part de ffrance.

Coment le Prince mist sez gentz en
ordinance pur combatre | assigna le
Counte de Warrewyk p lauant garde
le Counte de Salesbury pur amesner
la reregarde de son host | comaunda
sire Eustace Dabrichecourt & le seigniour de Courton a courrir pur lost ffrancois descouerer | les quex courrerent si auant qils furent pris p les ffranceis & les ffrancois ent fesoient gnt ioie.

De lautre part ne doutez mye, ffl us Loost engloyse logié, Quë ensement en cely jour Li nobles Princes de valour Mettoit ses genz en ordenance, Et volentiers, a ma semblance, Vousist le bataille excuser Se se peust de la voirid, Mais bien veit que lui coivnt faire. Adonc appel al sanz retraire De Warrewyk, le noble conte, Et tres parfitement lui conte : "Sire," fait il, "il nous coivnt Combatre et puis qu'ensi avient Je vous pri en ceste journée Aiez l'avant garde menee. Li nobles sire de Pomiers, Qui moult est nobles chevaliers, Sera en vostre compaignie, Et s'averez, je vous affie, Touz ses freres avoecques ly, Qui sont preu, vaillant et hardy. Premiers passerez le passage Et garderez no cariage. Je chevauchera apres vous, Avoecques mes chevaliers touz. Eu cas qu'a meschief avenez De nous serez reconfortez ; Et li conte de Salsbury Chevauchera apres auxy, Qui merra no ariere garde ; Et sera chescuns sur sa garde, Eu cas qué il vous courent sus Que chescuns a pie descenduz Soit le plus tost qué il pourra.'
THE BLACK PRINCE

Et chescun dist quil le fera
Que vous averoy je detriee
La matiere | & plus destourbee
Ensi se deuisent la nuyt

1100 La nauoit pas trop grant desduit
Car chescun yfoesit enbushe
La auoit il mainte escarmushe
Et quant ce vient a grant matyn
Lui noble prince oue coer fyne

1105 En appella a brief mot court
Daun Eustace Dabrhecourt
Ouesq le seigniour de Courton
Qui ot le coer fiere come Lion
Et leur comanda a couer

1110 Pur lost de francois descouvrir
Et chescun prist a chiuachier
Mountez son noble courser
Mais ensi comme dist le romant
Cils deuz currenet si auuant

1115 Cils furent retenuz & pris
Dont fuist le Prince mult maris
Et francois ent fesoient gnt ioie
Pur leur hoost si diex manioe
Et disoient p motz expres

1120 Toutz les autres viendraient apres

Coment la giht heuee est comence | lui
Prince se deslogea | chiuachier | neqdoit
my cel iour auoir la bataille | les
francois crioyent a leur Roy a haut
vois | qu les englois fuoient | Mais nouf fost
enci | & cesauoient les francois bien tost aps.

Adonfes comencea la heu
Et moulant grant noise est levee
Et lui Prince se deslonge
A chiuachier se chimina

1125 Car celui iour ne quidoit pas
Combatre ie ne vous mettie pas

Et chescuns dist quil le fera.
Que vous avroy je detriee
Le matere et plus destourbee?
Ensi se devisent le nuyt.

La n'avoit pas trop grant deduit,
Car chescuns y fesoit enbusche:
La auoit il mainte escarmushe;
Et quant ce vint au grant matyn,
Li nobles Princes oue coer fyne
En appella, a brief mot court,
Dan Eustace d'Abriquecourt,
Avoec le seigniour de Courton,
Qui ot le coer fier com lion,
Et leur comanda a couer

Pour l'ost des francois descovrir,
Et chescuns prist a chevauchier
Montez sur son noble coursier.
Mais, ensi com dist li romant,
Cil doic couirent si avant
Qu'il furent retenuz et pris:
Dont fu li Princes mout maris,
Et francois en fesoient grant joie
Parmy leur host, se Dieux m'avoic, 
Et disoient par moz expres:
'Tout li autre venront apres.'

Line 1103 ce, c corrected out of le.
Line 1121 heu, marginal correction uee.
Mais quidoit trestout sans faille
Toutz Iours excuser la bataille
Mais de lautre part lui francois

Sescrioient a haute voix
Au Roy qu'Englois senfuyoient
Et que par tamps les perdroyent.
Lors comencent a chevauchier
les francois sans targier.

Et dist lui Mareschaux doudenham
Certes poi prise ver aham
Tost auronent les Englois perdus
Si ne les alons curir sus
Dist lui Mareschaux de Cleremont

Bieu frere vous vous hastiez mout
Ne soiez mie si engrantz
Car y nous viendrons bien a temps
Car Englois ne sen fuyent pas
Einz veignont plus tost que la pas

Dist doudenham ver demoere
Les nous fera perdre en cele hoere
Dont dist Cleremont q seint denys
Mareschaux mout estez hardys.
Et puis lui dist q mau talent

Ia nauerez tant de hardement
Qe au i de huy puissez faire tant
Qe ia vous soiez si auant
Qe le point de ver lance
Au culf de mon chueil auance

Ensi de mautalent espris
Ont vers Englois leur chemyn pris

Mais se quidoit, trestout sans faille,
Touz Iours excuser le bataille,
Mais de l'autre part li francois
S'escrioient a haute voix
Au Roy qu'Englois s'enfuyoient
Et que par tamps les perdroyent.
Lors comencent a chevauchier
Li francois sans plus atagier.

Dist li Mareschaux d'Oudenham:
'Certes, poi prise vostre ahan.
Tost avrons les Englois perduz
Se ne les alons courir sus,'
Dist li Mareschaux de Clermont:
'Biau frere, vous vous hastez mout.
Ne soiez mie si engrantz,
Car nous y venrons bien a tamps;
Car Englois ne s'en fuyent pas,
Einz viennent plus tost que le pas.'

Dist d'Oudenham: 'Vostre demoere
Les nous fera perdre en cele hoere.'
Dont dist Clermont: 'Par seint Denys,
Mareschaux, mout estez hardys.'
Et puis lui dist par mautalent:
'Ja n'avrez tant de hardement
Qu'aujourd'hui puissiez faire tant
Que ia vous soiez si auant
Que le pointe de vostre lance
Au cul de mon cheval avance.'
Ensi de mautalent espris
Ont vers Englois leur chemyn pris.

Coment la huee et la noise est
leuee | % les deux hostes approcherent
% le Counte de Salesbury qui menoit
la reregarde assembla tut primerment.
Car lui Mareschaux viendrent sur lui %
lui combatoient mout fortement.

Adonques comencea la huee
Lui cries et la noise est leuee
Et les hostes priset approcher.

Adonc commea la huee,
Li cris et le noise est levee,
Et les hoz priset a approcher.
Adonqes de traire et de lancier
Comencierent dambe deux partz
Nul de eux ne se tenoit escars
Senioure a ce que j'entendi
Lui frans conte de Salsbury

Du Prince auoit la reregarde
Mais celui jour si dieu me garde
Assembla tout prïmmment
Car plain d'ire et de mautalent
Viennent sur lui | lui Mareschafl

Sachez a pie et a Chiuault
Et lui courrient sus p gnt force
Quant lui Countes veoit ceste force
Sa bataille vers eux tournar
Et a haute voix lescria

' Avant, seignour, pour Dieu mercy,
Puis qu'il pluest a Seint George ensy
Que nous estiomes li derier
Et nous serons tout li premier,
ffaceons tant qu'honour y aions.'

Adonqes veissez les barons
De combater bien esprouver
Grantz deduytz fusi a regarder
Cely que rien ny conteroit
Mais certes gntz piece estoit

Et meruelouse chose t dure
La auoit mente creature
Que celui jour fuist mis a fin
La combatoient de coer fin
Archiers traiotent a la volee

Plus drut que plume nest volee
Qui furent sur les deux costees
P deïs les chiaualx armes
Atant veissez vous venir poignant
Un Chiaualer preu et vaillant

Qui appellez fuist Guichard d'Angle
Cil ne se bouteiu pas en l'angle
Eins freoit p my le meslee
Sachez de launce a despee
Et lui Mareschafl de Clermont

Line 1194 preu, e superscript.
Coment le Counte de Salesbury oue la
reregarde descomfist le Mareschaux à trestouz
les armes chivalx deuant qe lauant garde
puit estre retourne | et après ceo reassemblerent
tout ensemble | à appcherer a la bataille de
Daufyn au pas dune hayecie la haye | à la
fust descomfitz le Daufyn oue la bataille
de Normandie | à les ffrancois sen
fuyoient à plusieurs de eux furent pris
à occis à lors aprocha le Roy ffrancois
oue sa tres grand puissance deuers
le honorable Prince à son grand host.

Mais a quoy faire conteroy
La matiere à alongeroy
La Romance dist à lui acontes
Que de Salesbury lui Countes
Entre lui à ses compagnons
Qui furent plus fier que Lions
Disconferent les Mareschalam
Et trestouz les armes chevalx
Deuant qe poist estre tournée
Lauaunt garde à repassee
Car la fuist outre la Riure
Mais au voilloer dieu à son pire
Se reassemblerent tout ensemble
Et viendrent ensi qil ensemble
Come gent de noble compaigne
Tut contremont vn montaigne
Tang ils mirent leur trahim
A la bataille du Dauffyn
Qui fuist a pas dune hayette
Et la de volunteer entette
Si vout ensemble reacontrer
En fesantz darmes le mestrier

Mais a quoy faire conteroye
Le matere et alongeroy ?
Li romanz dist et li acontes
Que de Salesbury li contes,
Entre lui et ses compagnons
Qui furent plus fier que lions,
Descomfrent les Mareschalam
Et trestouz les armes chevalx,
Devant qu'estre peuist tournée
Li avantgarde et repassee,
Car ja fu outre le riviere ;
Mais, au voloir Dieu et saint Piere,
Se rassamblèrent tout ensemble
Et vinrent, ensi qu'il me samble,
Come gent de noble compaigne
Tout contremont une montaigne,
Tan que il mirent leur trahin
A le bataille du Dauffyn
Qui fu au pas d'une hayette
Et la, de volente entette,
Se vont ensemble rencontrer
En fesant d'armes le mestrier

Line 1216 ensemble, marginal correction me.
Line 1217, final e of compaigne corrected from i.
Si treschiualroueurment
Que sachez veritablement
Grant merveille fuist a veoir
La gaignerent a lenvoir
Par force le pas de la haye
Dont maint francois a coer sesmaye
Et commencerent a tourner
Le doos | a chiual mouter
La criot hōme a haute gorge
En maint lieuy Guyane seinte George
Que voillez vous que je vous die
La grant bataille de Normandie
ffu desconfie a cel matyn
Et sen departi le daffyn
La en y eut maint mort et pris,
Et li nobles Princes de pris
Se combatoit moult vaillamment,
Et en reconfortant sa gent
Disoit : 'Seigniour, pour Dieu mercy
Pensez du ferir, vez me cy.'
Donc aprocha li Rois de france
Qui amenoit grande puissance,
Car devers lu se voloit traire
Cils qui voloir eut de bien faire.

Coment le Prince voet vener le Roy de france oue son tresgnt poer | plusours englois furent departiez du Prince pchacier les ffrancois a lourfuitiez pur ceo qils quidoient ce temps qils eusent tut fait | lui prince fist sez priers a dieu tout puissant et dist auaut Banier | aprs ceo comencea la melle. Dount Audelee fuist ly primer a lassemblee | adonges combatoient tresfortement | les seigniours englois | les nobles Barons de Gascoigne encontre les ffrancois | et le Prince en auoit per la grace de dieu la victorie | le Roy ffrancois | Philippes son fiz | plusour s

Line 1241 snoult, marginal correction m.
autres Countes & autres Seigniours de
ffraunce furent pris per les englois
& le duc de Burboine & plusieurs autres
seigniours & Chiualers & esquiers de
ffraunce a le noumbre de trois Mill
furent mortz a cel graunt bataille.

Quant lui Prince le vist venir
Un poi se prist a esbahir
Et regarda environ li
Et vit que plusieurs sont departy
Qui feurent alez pur chasier
Car bien quidoyent a voir iugier
1250

1255

1260

1265

1270

1275

1280

Voillez vre seintisme nome
Moi et ma gent garder de mal
Ensi verra dieux celestial
Que vous qe iai bon droit
Adonges le Prince la en droit

Quant il auoit fait sa priere
A dist avant | avant Baniere
Chescun pense de soin honure
Deux Chiualers plains de valour
La tenoient de deux costees

Line 1259 veier, marginal correction o.
Line 1265, marginal correction e.
Ce feurent Chaundos et Audlee.
Adonc commencea le melle
Et Audlee moulant doucement
Pria au Prince humblement

1285 Sire fait il ie en ay voie
A dieu pmis et iuree
La ou ie verray en puissance
Le banier de Roy de ffrance

1290 Que ie assembleray le primer
Si que pury dieu vous voillez prier
Que congic me voilliez donner
Car il est bien temps assembler
Adonques dist lui Prince voir
James faitez veillez voilloir

1295 Adonc James se departi
Du Prince plus n'attendi
P deuant les autres sauvance
Plus qe de long dune lance
Et si fiert sur les enemys

1300 Come home corages et hardys
Mais gaires ne poeuet endurer
Qu'a la terre lui couient verser
La veissiez a lenconter
Sez grossez lances abaissier

1305 Et bouter de chescune part
Chescune enprendoit bien sa part
La veissiez ferir Chaundos
Qui ce jour y acquist gnt los
Warrewik et le Despenser

1310 Montagu qui fuist aprizer
Cils de Mawne et cil de Basset
Qui bien combatoient a souent
Et monp Raoul de Cobehem
Qui ffrancois gnt ahen

1315 Le bon Bartrem de Burghes
Qui moult fuist hardi en ses fees
Dautre part combatoient fort
Et Salesbury et Oxenfort
Et auxi ce nest mecoigne

1320 Lui noble baron de Gascoigne

THE BLACK PRINCE

Line 1292 assembler, d superscript.
Le Captal et cils de Pouniers
Qui moulte fuist vaillant et entiers
Labret | | Lesparre | Lagoulam
| s'orssard et Coughon et Rosain
1325 Mussiden et cil de Campayne
Mout ferantz qui sur toutz se payne
A tout son poair de bien faire
Ces bacheliers et noble affaire
Veissiez la ferer atas
1325 Et doner si grantz hatiplas
1330 Que ce fuist vn grant meruaille
La auoit moulte grant bataille
La veissiez mainte homme mort
Longement dura ceste effort
1330 Tant quil ni auoit si hardy
Qil neust le coer esbahy
Mais lui Prince a haute vois
Cest escrioit par mainte foitz
Avant fi fait il pur dieu
1340 Gaignons ceste place et c'est lieu
Si anons conte de mer vie et hono
Tant fist le Prince de valour
Qui tant auoit seus et memorie
Que vers lui toha la victorie
1345 Et que ses enymis fuirent
Et plusieurs qui sen deupterent
Donst luy Roy Iohan sescrioit
Lui vaillamment se combatot
Ouesg lui maint bon chevalier
1350 Qui bien lui quidoience eider
Mais la force poi lui vailli
Car le Prince li tant assailli
Qu'illoeques fuist a force pris
Et Phelippes auxi qui fuist son fitz
1355 Et monf Iakes de Burbon
Et des autres moulte gunt fuyson
Lui Counte deu | cils dartois
Charles qui moulte estoit curtois
Et le bon Counte daun Martyne

Li Captaus et cils de Pomiers
Qui moulte fu vaillanz et entiers,
Labret, Lesparre et Lagoulam,
s'orssard et Coughon et Rosam,
Mussiden et cils de Campayne,
Montferranz, qui sur toutz se payne
A tout son poair de bien faire :
Ces bachelers de noble affaire
Veissiez la ferer atas
Et doner si grantz hatiplas
Que ce fuist une grant meruaille,
La auoit moulte grande bataille,
La veissiez mainte homme mort.
Longement dura ceste effort,
Tant quil n'i auoit si hardy
Qu'il n'eust le coer esbahy ;
Mais li Princes a haute vois
S'est escrioit par maintes fois :

'Avant, seigneur,' fait il, 'pour Dieu !
Gaignons ceste place et c'est lieu
S'acontons a vie et honour,'
Tant fist li Princes de valour
Qui tant auoit sens et memore,
Que vers lui tournia le victore,
Et que si enemi fuirent
Et que plusieurs en departirent,
Donst li Rois Jehans sescrioit :
Lui vaillamment se combatoit,
Avoec lui maint bon chevalier,
Qui bien lui quidoience aider.
Mais le force poi lui valli,
Car li Princes tant l'assaillia
Qu'illoeques fuist a force pris,
Et Phelippes, auxi, ses filz,
Messires Jakès de Bourbon,
Et des autres moulte grant fuyson :
Li contes d' Eu et cils d' Artois,
Charles qui moulte estoit courtoys,
Li bons contes de Danmartyn

Line 1328 Ces bachelers underlined in the MS. in a later hand.
Qui ot le coer loial et fyne
Et le bon Counte de Joigny
Celui de Tankarville auxi
Et le Counte de Salesbruce
Qui pas derere ne se muce
Et le bon Counte de Sausoire
Ventadour, ce fuist chose voire
Toutz ceux feurent pris en celle joure
Et maint haut baneret de honoure
Dount ie ne puisse les nouns nomer
Mais a ceo qe iay oy counter
Bien en yeuste sessante pris
Contes et Banerețz hardis
t. 19\textsuperscript{t}
Et des autres plus de milt
Dount ie ne say dire lestift
Et a ce qe ie entendy
Morrerent la ie vous affy
De burbōn li noble dus
Cils datainnes qñ ot vertus
Et le Mareschalt de Cleremont
Matas | Landas | et Ripemont
Ouesq monq Renaud de pontz
Et des autres de quoy les nouns
Je ne vous voile mye nomer
Mais a ce qe iay oy contier
Et a ce qe iay oy retraire
En la matiere sanz retraire
Bien eny vst, iii. Mil mortz
Dieux eit les almes car les corps
feurent demorez sur les champs
La veoit hōme englois ioyantz
Et criojent a haute gorge
En mainte lieu Guyane seint George
La veissiez ffrancois espars
A gaignage de toutz parts
Veissiez courrir maint archier
Maint Chualer maint esquier
De toutz parts prisoners prendre
Ensi feurent a voir entendre
ffrançois celi iour pris et mort
Sicome iay oy en mon recort

Qui ot le coer loial et fyn,
Et li bons contes de Joigny,
Celui de Tankarville auxi,
Et li contes de Salesbruce
Qui pas derere ne se muce,
Et li bons contes de Sausoire,
Ventadour, ce fu chose voire :
Tout cil feurent pris en cel jour,
Et maint haut baneret d'honoure
Dont je ne puis les nons nomer ;
Mais, a ce que j'oiy conter,
Bien en y eut sissante pris,
Contes et baneret hardis,
Et des autres plus de mille
Dont je ne say dire l'estille.
Et, a ce que je entendy, 
Morurent la, je vous affy :
De Bourbon li tres nobles dus,
Cils d'Atainnes qui ot vertus, 
Et li mareschaux de Clermont, 
Matas, Landas et Ripemont, 
O monseignour Renaud de Ponz, 
Et des autres, de quoy les nons 
Je ne vous voeul mye nomer ;
Mais a ce que j'oiy conter 
Et a ce que je oy retraire 
En le mater, sanz retraire, 
Bien en y eut iii mille morz. 
Dieux eit les ames ! car li corps 
feurent demore sur les camps. 
La veoit on Englois joyanz, 
Et criojent a haute gorge 
En maint lieua : 'Guyane! Seint George!' 
La veissiez ffrancois espars ! 
A gaignage de toutes pars 
Veissiez courrir maint archier, 
Maint chevalier, maint escuier, 
De toutes parz prisoners prendre. 
Ensi feurent, au voir entendre, 
ffrançois celi iour pris et mort, 
Sicome j'oiy en mon recort.
De la Mois \& iour quante ceste
graunt bataille fust faite.

Seignour cel temps que je vous dy
Ce fuist aps que dieu nasquy
Mii ans trois Centz cyanquant \& sis
Et auxi selonc mon ayys

1405 Disnoef iours droit en Septembre
Le mois qui est deuant Octobir
Avient ceste grant bataille
Que moult fuist horribile sans faille
Pdonez moy si ie lay dit briefment

1410 Car ieo lay passe legierment

Coment le Roy Iohn de ffraunce fust
amenez deuant le Prince l le Prince
lui fist eider \& desarmer \& doucement
ploient ensemble \& se logerent cel
nieut sur le zabulon entre les mortz
\& lendemain au matin le Prince se
desloga \& sachimina vers Burdeux
\& tout la Clergie de Burdeux
vindrent a pcession vers eux \&
demoerèrent au Burdeux en tres-
grant ioie tans lyuere fuist passe
\& adonqes le Prince enuoia au Roy son
pier \& au Roigne sa miere les nouels de son fait
\& pauoir vesseaux \& amesner le Roy Iohn en engletre.

Mays pur ceo \& ie voile retraire
De ceste Prince de noble affaire
Qui moult fuist vaillantz \& hardis
Pd home \& en faiz \& en ditz

1415 La fuist deuant lui amenez
Lui Roy Iohan c'est veritez
Lui Prince moult le festoia
Qui dampne dieu engracia
Et pur le Roy plus honourer

1420 Lui voet eider a deseruier
Mais lui Roy Iohan lui ad dit

Mays pour ce que je voeil retraire
De cest Prince de noble affaire
Qui moult fu vaillanz et hardis,
Preudom et en faiz et en diz,
La fu devant luy amenez
Li Rois Jehans, c'est veritez ;
Li Princes moult le festoia,
Qui Dampnedieu en gracia,
Et pour le Roy plus honourer
Lui veut aidier a desermer.

Mais li Roys Jehans lui a dit :
Beaux douc Cosyns pur Dieu merci,
Laissez il n'apartient a moy
Car p la foi que ieo vous doi
Plus auzt a iour de huy de hoñe
Quonques neust Prince a vn iour
Dont dist li Prince sire douls
Si lui en denous remercier

Et de bon coer vers lui prier
Qul nous voile ottroier sa glorie
Et pdoner ceste victorie
Ensi ambeudeux se deuisoient
Et doucement ensemble ploient

Englois fesoient grant deduit
Lui Prince logea celle nuyt
Entre les morz sur le zabalõn
Dedenis vn petit pavillon
Et ses homest tot entour luy

Cel noet moul pois dormy
d. 20 Le matinet se deslogea
Deuers Burdeaux sachimina
Si en menoient leur prisoner
Et tout lui noble Chiualer

Tant ont chiuache et esre
Que a Burdeaux sont arrive
Noblement feurent festoiez
De tout le poele | bien veignez
As crois | as pession

Et enchantantz les orisons
Viennent tout en rencontre deaux
Tout li college de Burdeaux
Et les dames | les pucelles
Vielles | Ioefnes | Ancelles

A Burdeaux fist home tiel ioe
Si lui verray dieu mon coer esioye
Que mervelle fuist a veoir
La demora sache pur voir
Lui Prince passez tout liuer

Puis envoia son messagier
Deuers le noble Roy son pier
Et a la Royne sa mie

' Biaux, doux cosyns, pour Dieu mercit,
Laisseiz, il n'apartient a moy;
Car par le foy que je vous doi,
Plus avez aujourd'hui d'honneur
Qu'onques n'eut Princes a un jour.'

Dont dist li Princes: ' Sire douls,
Dieux l'a fait et non mey nous:
Si l'en devons remercier
Et de bon coer vers lui prier
Qu'il nous voile otroier sa glorie
Et pardoner ceste victore.'

Ensi andoi se devisoient,
Doucement ensemble parloient.

Englois fesoient grant deduit.
Li Princes logea celle nuyt
Entre les morz, sur le salbon,
Dedens un petit pavillon,
Et si home tout entour ly.

Cele noet moul pois se dormy.

Le matinet se deslogea,
Devers Bourdiaux s'achimina,
S'en menoient leur prisoner;
Et tout li noble chevalier

Tant ont chevauchie et erre
Que a Bourdiaux sont arrive.
Noblement feurent festoie
De tout le poele et bien veignez;
As crois et as processions

Et en chantant les orisons
Vinrent tout en l'encontre d'iaux
Tout li college de Bourdiaux,
Et les dames et les pucelles
Vieilles, joenes et ancelles:

A Bourdiaux fist on tele ioe,
Se li vrais Dieux mon coer esjoye,
Que mervelles fu a veoir.
La demora, sachiez pour voir,
Li Princes, passez tout l'ivier.
Puis envoia son messagier
Devers le noble Roy, son pere,
Et a la Roine, sa mere,
THE BLACK PRINCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Et les nouvelles de son fait</th>
<th>O les nouvelles de son fait,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tout ensi que dieux li ot fait</td>
<td>Tout ensi que Dieux li ot fait,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1465 Et manda que home li tramessist</td>
<td>1465 Et manda qu’on li tramessist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessealx dont amesnir poist</td>
<td>Vessialx, dont amener peust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Le Roy de ffrance en Engleterre</td>
<td>Le Roy de ffrance en Engleterre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pur fair plus de honô a la terre</td>
<td>Pour plus faire honour a le terre.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Coment le Roy dengleterre et la Roygne
firent grant ioie de les nouels queux
le noble Prince lour awoit maunde ᥺
ent loerent dieu ᥺ maunaderent vesseaux
a Burdeux ᥺ le Prince amesna le Roy
Iohn ᥺ les autres prisoners en engletre ᥺
ent maunda nouels au Roy son piere ᥺ le
quel lui vient a lencontre ᥺ les conuoia
iesqes a Loundres ᥺ la firent tresgrantz
festes ᥺ reueaux ᥺ ᥺ ūntz Justes ᥺ demesne-
rent grantz dedutz ᥺ grant ioie par
lespace de quatre ans ᥺ plus.

Quant le Roy la nouel oy
Moult grandement sesjoy
f. 21v
Loeant dieu enioinant sez mains
Disant beau pierre souerayns
De toutz sez biens soiez loiez
Et la frank Roigne assetz
Looit dieu et la vierge pure
Qui luy auoit cel porture
Enuoie come de sōn filz
Lui Prince qui tant fuist hardiz
Le messagier tost delivrerent
Vessealx ᥺ Barges lui manderent
Tant ᥺ ce fuist vn grant acontez
Que vous aloneroit li acontez
A Burdeaux viendrent li vesseal
Dount lui Prince fist grant reuell
Gairs ne voet plus demorer
Tout son arroy ad fait trusser
En meer entrentent li baron
Et tout li Chiualer de noun

Quant li Roys le novelle oj’
Moult grandement s’en esjoy,
Loant Dieu, en joindant ses mains,
Disant: ‘Biaux peres soverayns,
De touz cez biens soiez loez!’
Et le france Rome assez
Looit Dieu et le vierge pure,
Qui luy avoit tel porteüre
Envoië com de son filz,
Le Prince, qui tant fu hardiz.
Le messagier tost delivrerent.
Vessialx et barges lui manderent
Tant que ce fu uns granz acontes.
Que vous s’aloneroit li contes?
A Bourdiaux vinrent li vesseal
Dont li Princes fist grant revel.
Gaires ne veut plus demorer.
Tout son arroy a fait trousser;
En mer entrentent li baron
Et tout li chevalier de non;
Le Roy et toutz les prisoniers
De ceaux dont il leur fuist mestiers
tirent ens es vessiaux entreer
tant siglerent auoir counter
Qu'il sont venuz en Engleterre
Et si tost qils ont pris la terre
Au Roy manderent les nouvelles
Queux li feurent bons et beles
Et encontre li fist mander
toutz les barons pour honorer
Lui meismes son corps y vient
Ouelui de contes plus que vint.
Jusques a Londres convoierent
Le Prince, que le festoierent.
La furent il bien festoie
Des dames et si bien veignie
Qu'onques ne fu faite tel joie.
Se li vras Dieux mon coer esjoye,
Com il fu faite a cely tamps.
La fu li nobles Roys puissanz
Et la Royne, sa moullier,
Et sa mere, qui l'ot mault chier,
Mainte dame, et mainte dansele
Tres amoureuse, frike et bele.
Danser et chacier et baler
ffaire granz festes et joster,
ffist on com en regne d'Artus
L'espace de quatre ans ou plus.

Coment le Roy dengletre refist vn
voiage en ffrance ousesq son
baronage | ilui noble Prince | Ducs
Henry | des autres plus de dis Milt |
chiuacha permy | Artoys | plusieurs
pays de ffrance ousesq deuant Parys |
la furent loges sur les Champes |
Mais ne combatoient mye | einz
tournèrent leur chiuach pardeuant
Chartres ou la pays fust accordee |
puis iuree | le Roy Iohn de ffrance
Puis refist li Roys vn voyage
En france ouesq son baronage
Et li noble Prince auxi
1520 Et de Lancastre Ducs henri
Et des autres plus de x Mif
Dont ie ne voile dire lestilh
Car c'est droit que ie me deliue
Mais ensi come dit le liure
1525 Il chiuacha p my Artois
Et Pikardie et Vermendois
Et Champaigne Burgonie et Vrie
Pmy Bayane ie vous affie
Et vient ieges deuant Parys
1530 La fuist le noble Roy de pris
Et lui noble Prince vaillantz
La feurent logez sur les champz
Et embatailez pur combatre
De cela ne poet hôme debatre
1535 Mais ils ne combatirent mye
Puis tournerent leur chiuachie
Devant Chartres l la acordee
fui la paix que puis fuist iuree
Et la fuist en ceste paix faire
1540 Li Prince de tresnoble affaire
f. 22r Car p li et p son enhort
feurent les nobles Roy a dacort
Et fuist deliuere de prison
Lui Roy Johan qui ot grant noun
1545 Et la fuist p la paix baillié
Tout Guyan en la baillie
Du noble p su filtz
Li Prince qi tant fuist hardiz
Et celle paix qi ie vous die
1550 Ce fuist en lan qi dieu nasqui
Mill trois Centz ouesq sessante
Au temps qi Russinale la chante
Oep jours en ioli mois du May
Qe oiseux ne sont pas en esmay

Puis refist li Roys un voyage
En france avoecque son barnage,
Et li nobles Princes auxi,
Et de Lancastre ducs Henri
Et des autres plus de x mille,
Dont je ne vocel dire l'estilh,
Car c'est droit que je me delivie ;
Mais, ensi come dit le livre,
Il chevaucha par my Artois
Et Pikardie et Vermendois
Et Champaigne, Burgogne et Brie,
Parmy Bayane, je vous affie,
Et vint jusques deuant Parys.
La fu li nobles Roys de pris
Et li nobles Princes vaillans ;
La feurent logie sur les camps
Et embattaile pour combatre —
De cela ne poet on debatre —
Mais il ne combatirent mye.
Puis tournerent lour chevauchié
Devant Chartres. La acordee
fui le paix, qui puis fu juree ;
Et la fu en este paix faire
Li Princes de tres noble affaire,
Car par li et par son enhort
feurent li noble Roy d'acort,
Et fu delivres de prison
Li Roys Jehans qui ot grant non ;
Et la fu par le paix baillié
Toute Guyane en le baillie
Du noble Roi et de son filz,
Le Prince, qui tant fu hardiz.
Et celle paix que je vous di,
Ce fu en l'an que Dieux nasqui
Mil trois cenz, avoecque sissante,
Au temps que li rossignols chante,
Oet jours eu joli mois de may,
Qu'oisel ne sont pas en esmay.
Coment le Roy Dengleir7 le Pnce que
iour poer sen retournerent en Engleir 
 après feurent les deux Roys ensemble
 a Caleis | t ly Pnce t tous les Barons 
Chiualers de noun | si bien de l’un 
Roialme com del altre | la iurerent 
la payx dambedeux parties saunz 
toiz retourner le guerre 
 após ce chescune se retournar
hastiuement a sou pays.

En Engleterre sen retournerent
Et lour grant arroy amenerent
Moult noble fest lour fist hóm
Et moult bien les festoia hóm
Apres le iour del conissance

Droit en ce temps ie sui certains
feyrent toutz les deux Roys ensemble
A Caleis | ensi qil me semble
Lui Prince | tout li baron
Et tout li chiualer de noun

De tout le Roialme Dengleterre
Et auxi bien a voir retrere
De tout le Roialme de ffrance
La furent de volente de ffrance
La iura chescun sur le liure

Et auxi bien tout a deliuere
Sur le seint digne sacrement
Qe la paix tout principalment
Tiendroient sanz iâmes fauscer
Et sanz guarre renoueller

En Engleterre retournerent
Et lour grant arroy amenerent.
Moult noble feste lour fist on
Et moult bien les festoia on.
Apres le iour de le Toussains,
Droit en ce temps, j’en sui certains,
feyrent tout li doi Roy ensamble
A Caleis, ensi qu’il me samble :
Li Princes et tout li baron,
Et tout li chevalier de non
De tout le royon d’Engleterre,
Et auxi bien, au voir retrere,
De tout le roiaume de ffrance
La furent, de volente ffrance.
La jura chascuns sur le livre,
Et auxi bien tout a delivre
Sur le seint digne sacrement,
Qe la paix tout principalment
Tenroient, sanz james fausser
Et sanz guarre renoveller:
Ensi d’acort feurent tout doy,
Par paix fesant li noble Roy.
Le Roy de ffrance sen rala
Qui plus gaires ne demora
Et li noble Roy vient en Engleterre

Ensi dacord feurent tout doy
P paix fesant lui noble Roy
Le Roy de ffrance sen reala
Qui plus gaires ne demora
Et li noble Roy vient en Engleterre

Et lui noble Prince de noble affere
A graunt iôie se retournerent
Et les hostages enmenerent

1 Line 1573 fauscer, c omitted and superscript.
THE BLACK PRINCE

Quei vous ferroy ie vn long aconhte
De ce dont h̅ome doit faire conte

Coment le noble Prince se maria a vne
dame de ̅gt price apres ce sen ala a
la dite dame ouesque luy en Gascoigne
la prist possessioun de la terre de
la pais illoeques regna p vij. ans

1585 Luy francs Prince se maria
Apres | gaires ne demora
A vne dame de grant pris
Qui de samour lauoit espris
Que bele fuist | plesante et sage

1590 Et apres celui mariage
Ne voet gaires plus atergier
Eins sen ala sanz detrier
En Gascoigne encontre f̅arsson

1600 En Gascoigne regna vij. ans

1605 A bon loial et sage
La tenoient comunalty
Et si ose dire appremen
Que puis le temps qe dieux fuist neez

1610 Ne fuist tenuz si beaux hostiels

Que vous feroy je lonc aconte
De ce dont on doit faire conte?

Luy francs Princes se maria

Li frans Princes se maria

Enjoye, en pais, et en solas —
Or ne vous menteray je pas —
Car tout li prince et li baron
De tout le pays environ

Vinrent a lui pour faire hommage;
A bon seignour, loial et sage,
Le tenoient communalty
Et, s'ose dire, proprement,
Que, puis le tamps que Dieux fu nez,
Ne fu tenuz si biaux hosteils

Lines 1599 and 1600 transposed in the MS.
Come il fist ne plus honnoble
Car toutz jours auoit a sa table
Plus de iii Chiualers
Et bien quat tantz Esquiers
La fesoient justes et reueaux
En Angouleme t a Burdeux
La demouroit tout noblesse
Tut ioie tout leeesse
Largesse | ffranchise et honô
Et lamoient de bon amô
Tout si subgit t tout li sien
Car il lour fesoit moul de Bien
Moult le prisoient t amoient
Cils qui entô lui demoroient
Car largesse le sustenoiht
Et noblesse le gouvernoit
Sens a temperance t droiture
Rayson t justice t mesure
Hoôme poet dire p reasôñ
Qe tiele Prince ne trouast hôme
Qi alast serchier tout le monde
Sicome il troure a le Rounde
Li veisin t li enemy
Avoient grant doute de ly
Car tant fuist haute sa vaillance
Qe p tut regnoit en puissance
Siçome hôme ne doit mye sez faiñz
Oblier en ditz ne en faiñz
Ore nest pas raisôñ qe le faigné
Dun noble voyaige despaigne
Mais bien est raisons qe hôme lemprise
Car ce fuist le plus noble emprise
Qones cristiens emprist
Qar p force en son lieu remist
Vn Roy | quauoit desheretee
Son frere Bastard t maisnée
Ensi come vous purrez oier
Si vn poy vous voillietz ascoultier
Com il fist, ne plus honourable,
Car tous jours avoit a sa table
Plus de iii chevaliers
Et bien quatre esquiers.
La fesoient justes et reviaux
En Angouleme et à Bourdiaux;
La demouroit toute noblece,
Toute joie et toute leeece,
Largece, ffranchise et honô,
Et lamoient de bon amour
Tout si soubgit et tout li sien,
Car il lour fesoit moul de bien.
Moult le prisoi et amoient
Cil qui entour lui demoroient,
Car largece le soustenoit
Et noblece le gouvernoit,
Sens, atemperance et droiture,
Raysons et justice et mesure:
On pooit dire par raison
Que tel Prince ne trovast on,
Qui alast serchier tout le monde,
Si come il torne a le roonde.
Li voisîn et li enemy
Avoient grant doute de ly,
Car tant fu haute sa vaillance
Que par tout regnoit en puissance,
Si qu'on ne doit mye ses faiz
Oblier en diz ne en faiz.
Or n'est pas raisons que je faigne
D'un noble voyaige d'Espaigne,
Mais bien est raisons qu'on l'em prise:
Car ce fu le plus noble emprise
Qu'onques crestiens emprist,
Car par force en son lieu remist
Un Roy, qu'avoir desherite
Son frere, bastart et mainsne,
Ensi com vous oir pourrez
S'un poy vous ascouler volez.

Line 1615 omitted and inserted after line 1646.
Line 1637 Sicome, marginal correction ε.
Coment p la bataille en Brutaigne
le duc auoit conquis la gaigne sa terre
la puissance Dengleterre Charles
de Blois autres seignours furent occis
mon Bertrem Klaykyn plusieurs altres
vaillantes furent pris a meisme la bataille.

Ore est bien temps de commencer
Ma matier | moy adresser
Au purpos ou ie voille venir
A ce que je vys a venir
Apres la bataille en Britanie
Que le duc ouesq sa compenie
Conquesta gaigna sa terre
Par la puissance d'Engleterre.
Et la fu morz Charles de Blois
Et maint baron noble et courtoys,
Et de ffrance & de Pikardie
De haut & puissant lignie.
La fu messires Bartrems pris
De Clayekyn, qui ot grant pris,
Et maint haut seignour de parage,
De nobles et puissant ligne.
Dont je ne voeil les nons namer,
Car trop me pourroie tarder
A revenir a mon pourpos,
Et pour plus abregier mes moz.

Coment apres la bataille en Brutaigne
mon Bertrem Claykyn trahist hors
de roialme de ffrance la grande compaignie
plusieurs altres chiualers
esquiers pur fair vne voiage es parties
Despaigne a cause de guerre quauoit longement
dure entre Espaigne & Aragon pur 

Vous sauez que mon Bertrans
Qui moult fuist hardi & vaillantz
Vous sauez que sires Bertrans,
Qui moult fu hardis et vaillanz,

Line 1662 Klaykyn, marginal correction C.
Traist hors du roialme de France,  
Par sa proece et sa puissance,  
Toute la grande Compaignie  
Et mout de le chevaucherye,  
1675  
1700  
1705

P le gre du Pape de Rome  
1676 fiist a li aler main hôme  
Barons et bachelers et contes  
Chevaliers, escuiers, viscontes  
Au temps que ie fay mencion,  
1680  
1705

Entre Espaigne et entre Aragon  
Avoit guerre mout merveilouse  
Qui avoit dure, mout crueluse,  
Le temps de xiiiis ans et plus ;  
Et pour ytant fu esleis  
1685  
1700

Monsieur Bartram de Clayekyn  
Qui ot le coer hardi et fyn  
Et le bon Jehan de Bourbon  
Qui conte de la Marche eut non  
Et d'Audenham le mareschal  
1690

Qui ot le coer preu et loialt  
Eustace Dabrichecourt  
Qui fuist hôme de noble Court  
Monsieur Hughe de Calvelee  
Qui volentiers fiert de l'espee  
1695

Et monsieur Hughe de Gournay  
Et maint autre Chiualer vray,  
Qu'il iroyent en cel pais  
Et feroient pour aler conquérer  
Que paix serroient entre les Roys,  
1700

Et que le pays et les destroys  
Feroient de Gernade ouuer  
Et que pouraler conquerer  
Pourroient tant home de bien,  
Et tant bon seignour terriien —  
1705

Ensi feurent il toutz dacord  
Que vous feroi je lonc recort ?  
Pur cel accort prist grant argent  
Dans Bartrem et toute sa gent.
Coment mons Bertrem Claykyn & sa compaignie passerent les portes de Aragon & ont maunde au Roy Petre de Castille la nouvelle | qu'il vousist ouerer la passage qils purrount aler en vne seinte voiage desuis les enemys deu | le Roy enavoit indignacioune | se appalla pur defendre sa tre | & contre rest la compaignie | mais ils entrerent en Espaigne dount le Roy Petre fuist coroucez | disoit qu'il emprendroit vengeance | mais bien tost apres le Roy Petre p gnt des loialtee fuist oustee de sa regalie | sen fuist hors de sou roialme | et ceux de Castille coronerent le Bastarde Henry Roy de Espaigne.

Quant eurent leur voie acoille,
Ly & tout sa compaignie
Les portes passerent Daragon
Et puis en bien court faisson
Manderent au Roy de Castille
Per vn Messager la nouvelle

Coment il vousist accord
La pays Daragôn & jurer,
Et qu'il voeille ouerer la passage
Pur en vn seint voiage
Desus les enemis de dieu

Ou tut bon fait darmes cit lieu
Cil que fuist orgoillous & fiers
Et qe poy cremoit les daungiers
Auxi ne de ceux ne dantru
Enprist en son coer grant amyn

Et dit qe poy se priseroit
Si enuers ceux gentz obeissoit
Lors fist assembler ceste effort
Et si l'apparaille moult fort
Pur defendre le soen pais

Lors manda & grantz & petitz

Quant eurent leur voie acoillie,
Ly et toute sa compaignie
Les pors passerent d'Aragon,
Et puis, en bien courte saisson,
Manderent au Roy de Castelle
Par un messagier le nouvelle,

Coment il vousist accorder
Pays a Aragon et jurer,
Et qu'il voeille ovrir le passage
Pour aler en un saint voiage
Desus les enemis de Dieu,

Ou touz bons faiz d'armes ait lieu.
Cils qui fu orgoilleus et fiers,
Et qui poy cremoit les dangiers
Auxi, ne de ciaux ne d'autrui,
En prist en son coer grant anui,
Et dit que poy se priseroit
S'envers teus gens obeissoit.
Lors fist assembler son effort
Et se s'appareilla moult fort
Pour defendre le sien pais.

Lors manda et grantz et petiz

Line 5 of Headlines purrount, marginal correction roient.
Line 1728 l'apparaille, marginal correction a.
Et siens
1750
1745
t
\%
bon
Pikard
eust
1735
1755
vncle
Gascoigne
Germeyn
1763
doient
ne
Englois | f francois | f Breton
Normand | Pikard | f Gascoigne
Entrentent toutz dedeins Espaigne
Auxi fist la giit compaigne
Le bon de Caluerlee Hugon
1740
Et Gourney le soon compaignôn
Et main bon Chialera hardy
Passerent la sanz detry
t. 25' Et conquistrent p lour emprise
Tout la terre que conquise
1745
Avoit lui Roy Petro iadys
Moult enfuist en son coer malys
Dans Petro despaigne lui Roys
Dist qil ne prise vn nois
Si de tout ce nen prist vengeance
1750
Mais poi li vaili sa puissance
Car ny yst pas vn Mois passe
Qe p la grande desloialtee
De ceux qe li doient servir
Lui couient despaigne partir
1755
Et de guerpir son grant Roial
Car toutz lui feurent disloial
Cils qil li denoient amer
Siq hôme doit dire a voir counter
Ne doit estre sires claimez
1760
Qi de ses hômes nest amez
Apparant est p celi Roy
Qi tant estoit de fier arryo
Qi nairoit doublte de nul hôme
Mais quidoit bien cest la sôme
1765
Qi nul greuir ne li peust
Pur grande puissance qil eust
Mais il ne fuist gaires de temps
Qi nairoit amis ne parents
Cosyn | Germeyn | vncle | ne ffre

THE BLACK PRINCE

Gentilx homêes franks & velyens
Et bien quidoit estre certeyns
Dencontre eux sa terre defendre
Beaux douce seigniour voillez entendre

Englois | f francois | f Breton
Normant et Pikart et Gascon
Entrentent tout dedens Espaigne
Auxi fist le grande Compaigne :
De Calverlee, li bon Hugon,
Et Gourney, li siens compaignon,
Et main bon chevalier hardy
Passerent la sanz nul detry
Et conquisent par lour emprise
Toute la terre que conquise
Avoit li Rois Petro jadys.
Moult en fu en son coer marys
Dans Petro d'Espaigne, li Roys ;
Dist qu'il ne se prise une nois
Se de tout ce n'en prent vengeance.
Mais poi li vallii sa puissance,
Car n'y eut pas un mois passe
Que par le grant desloialte,
De ciaux qui le devoient servir
Lui covint d'Espaigne partir
Et deguerrpir son grant roial,
Car tout lui feurent desloial
Cil qui le devoient amer :
Si qu'on doit dire, au voir conter,
Ne doit estre sires claimez
Qui de ses hômes n'est amez.
Apparant est par celi Roy,
Qui tant estoit de fier arryo
Qu'il n'avoir doublte de nul home,
Mais quidoit bien, ce est le some,
Qi nuls grever ne le peuis
Pour grant puissance qu'il euis ;
Mais il ne fut gaires de temps
Qu'il n'avoir amis ne parents,
Cosyn germeyn, oncle ne frere

Line 1751 yst, marginal correction eust.
Line 1755 guerpir, marginal correction e.
Qui de li ne se desepere.
Son frere bastart coronarent,
Toute le terre li deunerent,
Et tout le tinrent a seignour
En Castille, grant et menour.

Coment le Roy Daun Petre sen alera
vers Seuille þ la fist truser son
tresour au meer | tant sigla qil vint
au port de Calonge sur la meer þ la
Bastard chiuachã pmy Castille þ
prist possessioun des Citees þ homage
des seignours de la tre | les queux touz
sacorderent qe Henã serroit Roy de Cas-
tille horpris un loial þ vaillant Chialã
qi fust appellez fferant de Castres.

A quoi faire vous celerio
Le materie ð alengeroie?
Dans Petro noesa plus attendre
Einz s’en ala, au voir entendre,
Trestout droit a Seuille lors

A quoi faire vous contender
Le materie et alengeroie?
Dans Petro n’osa plus attendre,
Einz s’en ala, au voir entendre,
Trestout droit a Seuille lors

Ou dewre fuist ses tresors
Nefs et Galayes fist tourser
Et son tresour y fist porter
Hastivement en meer se mist
Sicome la materie dist

De jour et de noet tant sigla
Qu’au port de Calonge arriva,
Le quel si est dedenz Galice
Et le Bastard ne fuist pas nycce
Parmy Castille chiuachã

Unques Citee ny demora
Dount il neust la possession
Ny remist Counte ne Baron
Que toutz ne li firent homage
forsq en soul qì home tient a sage

Unques citez n’ıy demora
Dont il n’eust possession ;
N’y remest conte ne baron
Que tout ne li fissent homage,
forsq un soul, qui on tint a sage,
fferant de Castres l’apelloient

P nour | cils qi le conissoient
Moult pfly vaillantz ð gentieux
Et iura si li vailli dieux

Par non, cil qui le conissoient.
Moult par fu vaillanz et gentieux
Et jura, se li vallist Dieux,
Que j'a jour ne relinquieroit
Cely qui estoit roys de droit,
Et, se tout faire le voiloioint —
Cil qui le pooir en avoient —
Si ne pourroit il consentir
Un bastart roialme tenir.
Mais tout li autre du païs
S'acorderent tout que Henris
Se demorast roys de Castille
Et de Toulette et de Seville,
De Cordual et de Lions.
Par l'acort de touz les barons
Ensi fu Castille conquis,
Par la puissance et par l'empriase
Monsiour Bartram de Clayekyn.
Or pourrez vous oïr le fyn,
Coment depuis ce jour avint
Ne passa mye des ans vint.

Coment le Roy Petre esteant a Calonge
sur la meer mout dolentez des adyseitees
queux lui souent auenuz | si souenist qil
auoit alliances ouesq le Roy Dengleterre
et sa pointa p lui et sa puissance bien estre
socourez et de sez dolours amers releuez.

Ore comence noble matiere
De noble et puissant mestiere
Car piteez amour et droiture
Mist ensemble sa moriture
Ensi come vous prurez oïer
Bien mauez oi gestier
La matiere depardeuant
Moult fuist le Roy Petre dolant
A la Calonge sur la mer
Et plein de dolorouse amer
Car sils lui auoient failli
Qui li denoiuent estre amy
Moult pestoist plein de tristour
Et ne sciet auiser quel tour
Dont il poist socours auoir.
Ne pour or fin ne pour avoir.  
Un jour fu li Roys avisez  
Qu'aliences et amistez  
Avoit eues de moul long temps —  
Dont bien se tenoit pour contens —  
Avoecque le Roy d'Engleterre,  
Qui tant estoit de noble affaire,  
Que Dieux lui ot done vertus  
Que, puis le temps le Roi Artus,  
Ne fu Roys de tele puissance;  
Et se pour ycelle alliance  
Et pour amour et pour lignage,  
Et pour Dieu et pour vassellage  
Le voloit faire socourir,  
Encore se pourroit garir.

Coment le Roy Petre appella a lui  
son conseil, ferant a Castres ly  
conseilla denuoier al Prince  
de lui requerer des socours.

Lors a son conseil appelle;  
Le matere lour a moustre,  
Et chescuns dist qu'il disoit bien.  
Donc un noble seigniour terrien  
Parla, qui moul fu plains d'avys,  
feran de Castres li gentils,  
Et dist: ' Sire, entendez a moy.  
Par celle foy que je vous doi,  
Tout premiers, se vous m'en croies,  
Au Prince droit vous manderez  
D'Aquitaine, qui est ses filz;  
Moul par est preudhom et hardiz  
Et des genz d'armes si puissance  
Que je croy qu'y n'est hom vivanz  
forsque Dieu, qui li fesit tort;  
Et, se vous le trovez d'acort  
De vous aider, soiez certains  
Qu'Espaygne ravrez en voz mains  
Avant que cest an soit passe.'  
A tout ce fu bien accorde.

Line 1865, traces of an erased letter are visible after passe.
Coment le Roy Daun Petre escript sez
lîres au Prince % ly requérant a sez bons
socours | 1 que ly plerroit denuoir
nief pur lui emperler % enuioa
sez messages oue meisme lettyrs.

Daun Petro le Roy de Castille
Erraument esçpt % seaille
Empriant a Prince humblement
1870 Que pur dieu primerment
Et pur amour % pur pitee
Pur alliance % pur amistee
Et pur cas de linage auxi
Et pur droit qil ad sanz null si
1875 A tresnoble Prince puissant
Hoñable preu % vaillant
Car il lui plese a socourer
Droiture % li qui requerer
Ly voet en noun de pacience
1880 Et qil vousist p sa vaillance
Envoier Niefs pur ly passer
Et pur lui saluement amesner
Car il voleit pler a lui
Li messages vint sanz detri

Dans Petro li Roys de Castelle
Erraument escript et saielle,
Em priant au Prince humblement
Que pour Dieu tout premierement 1870
Et pour amour et pour pite,
Pour alliance et amistee
Et pour cas de linage auxi
Et pour droit qu'il a, sanz nul sy,
Au tres noble Prince, puissant, 1875
Honorable, preu et vaillant,
Car il lui plese a socourir
Droiture et li, qui requerir
Le voet eu non de pacience ;
Et qu'il vousist par sa vaillance 1880
Envoier nefs pour ly passer
Et li salvement amener,
Car il voloit parler a li.
Li messages vint sanz detri.

Coment ly messages du Roy
Petre troua le Prince a Burdeaux
% luy ad presente les lîres et le
Prince senmueilla | 1 sur ceo appella
a ly sez chiualers % meillours conse-
illers | 1 leur mounstra les lettyrs |
les queux ly disoient leur auis
touchant cest fait | 1 sur ce ordeignez
furent gentz darmes ï querer le Roy Petê.

1885 A Burdeux le Prince troua
Qui moult fortement sesmerueilla
Quant il auoit la lîre lue
Sitost come il eust survewe

A Bourdiaux le Prince trova, 1885
Qui moult fortement s'esmerveilla
Quant il avoit la lettre lue.
Sitost come il l'eut surveüe,

Line 1874, d of ad in rasura; ad also as a marginal correction.
Lors appella ses Chialers
Et toutz ses meillieurs conseillers
Les lres lour ad toutz moustrez
Ensi come ils furent dittez
Et lour dist beaux seigniours p foi
Merveille ai de cee que je vi

ffols est qui saffie en puissance
Vous avez bien view que france
Estoit le plus pais
Des cristiens solom mavis
Et ore ad droit et dieux consentu

Que nous avons ev vertu
Pur le nre droit conquerter
Et auxi ai ie oy contier
Que li Leoperdz lour compaigne
Se deployerent en Espaigne

Et si estre pooit en nre temps
Homme nous entendroiet plus vaillantz
Vn bon conseil sur ce point
Seigniours vous veiez bien a point
Ore en ditez vre ppes

Adoncqes li dist Chaundos
Et puis Thomas de fflétôô
Cils deux estoient compaignon
De son conseil li plus priuee
Et lui disoient pur verite

Que ce acomplir ne pourroit
Si asccun alliance nauoit
Au Roy de Nauarre qui lors
Tenoit la passage des ports

Au Roy de Nauarre manderent
Le Counte Darmynak auxi
Et toutz les barons sans nul si
Du noble pais Daquitaine
Et lors c'est bien chose certeine

Tut le grant conseil fuist assemblee
Chescun disoit ce qu li semblee
Bon affaire de cel emprise
Et sachez qu'ele fu comprise
P tel conseiff et tel accorde

Lors appella ses chevaliers
Et touz ses meillieurs conseillers.     1890
Les letres lour a touz moustreez
Ensi come ils furent ditteez,
Et lour dist: 'Biaux seigniours, par foi,
Merveille ai de ce que je voi.
ffols est qui s'affie en puissance.     1895
Vous avez bien veu que france
Estoit li plus puissanz pais
Des crestiens, selon m'avis,
Ore a droiz et Dieux consentu
Que nous avons eü vertu
Pour le nostre droit conquerter ;
Et auxi ai je ojy conter
Que li leopert et lour compaigne
Se desployeroient en Espaigne,
Et s'estre pooit en no tamps,
On nous en tenroiet plus vaillanz.
Un bon conseil desur ce point,
Seigniours, vous veiez bien a point :
Ore en dites vostre pourpos.'
Adonc li respondi Chandos
Et puis Thomas de fflélloton —
Cil do estoient compaignon
De son conseil li plus priue —
Et lui disoient, pour verite,
Que ce acomplir ne pourroit
S'auncne aliai ne avoit
Au Roy de Navarre, qui lors
Tenoit le passage des pors.
Par le conseil qu'il accorderent
Le Roy de Navarre manderent,
Le conte d'Armynak auxi
Et touz les barons, sans nul si,
Du noble pais d'Aquitaine ;
Et lors, c'est bien chose certeine,
Touz li granz consiauz s'assambla.
Chescuns dist ce que li sambla
Bon affaire de cele emprise ;
Et sachiez qu'ele fu comprise,
Par tel conseill et tel accort,
THE BLACK PRINCE

1930 Sicome ie i en mon recorde
   Qe hôme fist les vessealx appailler
   A Bayone sanz detrier
   Gentz d’armes & archiers auxi
   Pur aler quere sanz detri

1935 En Espaigne le Roy Peron
   Monj Thomas de ffelton
   Lui grant Seneschal Daquitaine
   Deuoi estre lour chifteigne
   Mais entre eux qils djussent trusser

1940 Lour vessealx & eux aaprester

Coment le Roy Daun Petre arriua a Bayone
   t amesna ousesqe lui sez filz & filles & ce qe
   ly fuist lesse de soune tresour & ly Prince
   sen ala encontre ly & firent gmt deduit &
   apres ce le Prince & le Roy de Nauarre
   graunterent de socorer le Roy Petre.

Luy Roy Daun Petro a Bayone
Arriua en propre persone
Et amesna filles et fieux
Et celi remaint qe dieux

Ly eust lessee de son tresor
Peers perles | argent & or
Quant ly Prince en sceuent nouvelles
Ly semblurent bons et belles
Contre ly a Bayone ala

Et noblement le festoia
En grant ioe et en grant deduyt
Et la firent maint bele conduyt
Qe vous purroye ie detrier
La matier + plus alonger

Tout feurent daccord sanz detri

1956 Et le Roy de Nauarre auxi
De Roy Daun Petro conforter
Et en Espaigne lui remesner
Puis qe pur dieu & pur pitee

1960 Et pur droiture & amistee
Si humblement li requiroit

1930 Sicome j’oi en mon recort,
   Qu’on feist vesseaulx appailler
   A Bayone, sanz detrier,
   Genz d’armes et archiers auxi,
   Pour aler querre, sanz detri,

1935 En Espaigne le Roi Peron.
   Messires Thomas de sfellton,
   Li granz Seneschaus d’Aquitaine,
   Devoit estre lour capitaine.
   Mais, entrues qu’ils fissent trusser
   Lour vesseaulx et yaus aaprester,

1939 djussent, marginal correction e.
Bien socouruez estre deuoi
Tout feurent d'accord sur ce point
Et de lors ne s'aresta point

Bien socouruez estre devoit:
Tout feurent d'accord sur ce point.
Et des lors ne s'aresta point

Comment le Prince reuernoit a Burdeaux

1965 Luy Prince qui tant eust vertus
A Burdeux sen est reuenuz
Et fist ses genz apparailler
Maint noble vaillant Chiualer
Manda p trestout son pais

1970 Ni demora grant ne petitz
Et Chaundos ne demora mye
Car a la granda compagnie
Ala quere les compagnons
Jesques a quatorsze penons

1975 Sanz les autres qui retournerent
Despaygne quant ils ascouterent
Que li Prince eider voilloit
Le Roy Daun Petro de son droit
Congé pristrent du Bastard Henri

1980 Le quel lord dona sanz detry
Et les paia moult volontiers
Car ne ly fesoient mestiers
Roy de Castille fuist a ce temps
Et bien sen tenoit pur contens

1986 Pur grand puissance q'il eust
Lors sen revint a brief moot cot

Li Princes qui tant eut vertus.
A Bourdiaux s'en est revenuz
Et fist ses genz appareillier.
Maint noble et vaillant chevalier
Manda par trestout son pais ;
N'i demora grant ne petiz ;
Et Chandos ne demora mye,
Car a le Grande Compaignie
Ala querre les compagnons
Jusques a quatorsze penons,
Sanz les autres qui retournerent
D'Espaygne, quant il ascouterent
Que li Princes eider voilloit
Le Roy dan Petro de son droit.
Congie prisent du Roy Henri,
Liqueus lord dona, sanz detry,
Et les paia moult volontiers,
Car ne ly fesoient mestiers.
Roys de Castille fu a ce temps,
Et bien s'en tenoit pour contens
Que nuls tolir ne li peust
Pour grant puissance qu'il eust.
Lors s'en revint, a brief mot court,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Text</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Qui saoient de lui pler fait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1995</td>
<td>Retournerent en Acquitaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Moult lour purchacea dencombrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Des Geneteurs et dez villains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Car mout pestoit coueytous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Seignô le temps que ie vous dy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Du temps quant ly tresnoble Prince commencea c'est graund emprise.

Seignour, le tamps que je vous dy

Ce fu apres que Dieux nasquy,

Mil ans trois Centz sessante et sis

Que chanter lair oisson gentils ;

Trois semaines devant le jour

Que Jesus Crist par sa douceur

De cely tamps ne doutez mye,

---

Line 1995 omitted by the scribe and inserted after line 2022.
Des les tresgn tz ordeignaunce faitz a Burdez
aux p le Prince p la voyaige despaigne.

Luy francs Prince moult noblement
ffist ordeigner son paiment
Adonques veissiez a Burdeux
fforger espeès et coteaux
Cotes de ferre & Bacynettes
Gleyues | haches | et gantilettes
Mout pfuy noble li arrois
Si auoir y deust .xxx. Roys

Li frans Princes moult noblement
ffist ordener son paiment.
Adonc veissiez a Bourdiaux
fforger espeés et cotiaux,
Cotes de fer et bacynettes,
Gleyves, haches et gantilettes.
Mout par fust nobles li arrois
S'avoir y deui'st .xxx. rois.

Coment lassemble fust fait a dast
les compagnouns se logerent en
Bascle | entre les mountains . plus
que deux moys pur attendre le
passage | et la demorerent tout
liuer lesqes au moys de fleurere.

A Dast fuist fait lassemble
Du Prince a la criere membre
La sassemblerent li baron
Et les Chiualers denuiron

Toutz les compagnons a temps
Se logierent en celi temps
En Baskle | entre les montaignez
Se logierent les grantz compaignes
Plus qu'ejueux Moys y deferent

Mult d'euffrete y endurerent
Tout pur attendre le passage
Qils peussion alier lour voiage
La demorent tout lyuer
Lesques au Moys de fleureur

Tant que tout fuist assemble
Et li lointaigne ly priue
Mais a ce que ie entendy
Luy Prince de Burdeux party

A Dasc fu faite l'assamblee
Du Prince a le chiere membre.
La s'assemblerent li baron
Et li chevalier d'viron.

Tout li compagnon enz es camps
Se logierent en celi tamps :
En Basklé, entre les montaignes,
Se logierent les granz compaignes;
Plus que deux moys y demorerent,
Mout de souffrete y endurerent,
Tout pour attendre le passage
Qu'il peussent aler lour voiage.

La demorerent tout l'vyier
Jusques au moys de feverier,
Tant que tout furent assemble
Et li lointain et ly prive.
Mais, a ce que je entendy,
Li Princes de Bourdiaux party

Coment le Prince se departi de Burdeaux
la tsnoble dame la Pncesse fist tsamers
dolours à complaintz a cause de son
departir | le Prince conforta la dame
molt noblement | bien tost après
la tresnoble dame enfaunta vn filz
qe fust nômez Richard | ly Prince
maint gent enauoient gnt ioie.

Apres le Nouel xv. iours
Et la tresamers dolours
f. 29v Eust a coer la noble Princesse
Et la regretoit la dieuesse
Damôrs qil anoit assenee
A si treshaua maiesta
Car elle avoit le plus puissant
Prince de ce siecle vivant
Sovent disoit : 'Las ! quoi feroie,
Dieux et Amours, se je perdoie
Le droit flour de gentilese,
Le flour de tres noble hautece,
Celi qui eu monde n'a per
De vaillance, au voir recorder ?
Mors ! tu me seroies prochaiane.
Or n'ay je coer, nanc ne vayne
Que ne me faille, et tout li membre,
Quant de son partir me remembre ;
Car tous li mondes dit ensy
Qu'onques nuls hom ne s'enbaty
En voiage si perilleus.
He ! tres dous pere glorieus,
Confortez moy par vo pite.'
Lor a ly Princes escoute
Ce que la france dame dist
Moul tres noble confort luy fist
Et luy a dit : 'Dame, lessiez
Vo plorir, ne vous esmaiez,
Car Dieux est puissanz de tout faire.'
Li Princes de tres noble affaire
Doulcement la dame ad confortee
Et lor, se Dieux me reconfortee,

Line 2055 ele, 1 added in the margin.
Prist de luy congie doulcement
Et luye dist amiablement
Dame en coer nous reuerons
En tiel point que ioie en avrons
Et nous et tout li nostre amy,
Car mes coers le me dit ensy.
Moult doulceyment s'entracolèrent
Et en baisant congie donnerent
La veissiez damoiselles plorant.
Et damoiseles dolouerant.

La Princesse eut de dolour tant
Quaonques fuist grosse denfant
Que de le dolour delivra
D'un mout bel fil et enfanta,
Liqueus filz Richard ot a non :
Dont grant joie par tout fist on,
Et li Princes, se Dieux m'avoie,
En eut auxi a coer grant joie ;
Et dient tout comunalment :
'Vez cy mout bel commencement.'

Coment ly Prince sen est departiz de
Burdeaux venoit a Dascy la deïna
tanqe nouvelles ly venoient que le Duc de
Lancastre son frere venoit deuers ly
lors ly attendi illoeqes le Duc sen
hasty deuers le Prince son frere enchi-
uachant pmy Constantyn Britaigne
Duc Johann de Bret si festoa mout noblemët.

Lors se parti a voir entendre
Lui Prince plus ne voilloit attendre
Pluis longement ny mist soijour
Mout plui riche son atour
A dasc vient la saiônà
Car nouvelles vn li porta
Que le duc de Lancastre vient

Lors se parti, au voir entendre,
Li Princes, plus ne veut attendre :
Plus longement n'y mist soijour,
Mout par fu riche son atour,
A Dasc vint et la soijourna,
Car nouvelles on li porta,
Que li ducs de Lancastre vient
Qui grant gent governe et maintient
Lors sanisa qil demôroit
Et li soen frere attendroot
Et sachez qe li noble ducs
Qui moulit ot en li vertus
Quant il ot dire sez diz
Que li Prince estoit deptiz
De Burdeux moulit ent fuist dolanzt
Car ni quidoit venir a tamps
En Constantyn fuist arriuez
Moult soy hastia à cheuachier
Et tut li noble chevalier
Constantyn passa en Bretayne
Contre li ad beal compaigne
Car de Bretayne vient duc Jehans
Ouesq li ot de plus grantz
Barons de tretout son pais
Ceux qui plus tenoit a amys
Clisson | Cauolle | ò plusours
Queux li fesoient grantz honôs
En son pais le festoia
Mais moulit petit y demora
Car il le couenoit hastier
Pur le Prince qe voilloit passer
Conge ad pris sans detrier
A duc Johan ò a sa mulier

Coment le Duc de Lancastre tant chiuacha
qil est venuz a Burdeaux | ò la troua la Princesse
quelle luy festoia moulit doucement ò luy
ad demandee des nouvelles Dengleterre |
et en apres luy noble Duc de Lancastre sen
chiuacha pmy les landes tant qil est
venuz a la Citee de Dask | ò la troua le
Prince son frere le quel ly vint alen-
contre ò sen contraerent moulit amiablement:
qu le Prince ly ad demande des nouels dengleterre
moulit òt ioie demesnerent ensemble ò
le Counte de ffous lors estoit illoeges.

Line 2124 compaigne, e final corrected out of ie.
| Quei vous ferroie longe demain | Que vous ferroie longe demain? |
| Tant chiuachat e soir main | Tant chevauchat et soir et main |
| Que droit a Burdeux est venuz | Que droit a Bourdioux est venuz |
| De Lancastre li noble ducs | De Lancastre li nobles ducs; |
| Et la troua la Princesse | Et la troua il la Princesse |
| Que de tout honur est maistresse | Qui de tout honour est maistresse, |
| Que le festoia tres doulement | Qui le festoia doulement, |
| Et moult tresamiablement | Et moult tres amiablement |
| Li a demande de sa terre | Li a demande de sa terre, |
| Coment hōme fait en Engleterre | Coment on fait en Engleterre: |
| Et le duc li ad tout conte | Et li ducs li a tout conte. |
| Et puis sachez de verite | Et puis, sachez de verite, |
| Que li duc gaires nattendi | Que li duc gaires n'attendi, |
| Que de Burdioux s'en departi; | Que de Bourdioux s'en departi; |
| Parmy les landes chevaucha | Parmy les landes chevaucha |
| Et moult durement soy hastia | Et moult durement se hasta |
| Tant qu'il vient a dase la Citee | Tant qu'il vint a Dase le cite. |
| Ou son frere le Prince ad trouee | Son frere, le Prince, a trove, |
| Qui a encontre de li vient | Qui a l'encontre de li vint, |
| Et des Chiualers plus q vint | O des chevaliers plus que vint: |
| Et si sachez qe a cest foitz | Et se sachez qu'a ceste fois |
| Y estoit lui conte de ffoys | Y estoit li conte de ffoys. |
| Grant ioe ensemble demesnerent | Grant joie ensemble demesnerent |
| Auxi tost qils sentrcontrerent | Auxi tost qu'il s'entr'encontrerent; |
| Lors sa-collerent en baissant | Lors s'acollerent en baissant, |
| Et li Prince li dist en riant | Et li Princes dist en riant: |
| Duc de Lancastre frere douls | 'Ducs de Lancastre, frere douls, |
| En nre pais bien veigniez vous | En no pais bien veigniez vous. |
| Dites, quoi fait li Roys, nos pere, | Dites, quoi fait li Roys, nos pere, |
| Et le Roigne, nostre mere, | Et le Roigne, nostre mere, |
| Tout no frere et tout no amy? | Tout no frere et tout no amy? ’ |
| ' Sire,' dist il, 'le Dieu mercy, | 'Sire,' dist il, 'le Dieu mercy, |
| Il ne font trestout forse bien. | Il ne font trestout forse bien. |
| Nos pere dist que s'il faut rien | Nos pere dist que s'il faut rien |
| Qu'il poet faire, si li mandez. | Qu'il poet faire, si li mandez. |
| No mere vous salute assez, | No mere vous salute assez, |
| Tout no frere se recomandent | Tout no frere se recomandent |
| A vous et par my il vous mandent | A vous et par my il vous mandent |
| Qu'il volentiers fussent venu | Qu'il volentiers fussent venu |
| Se bon congic euuent eü.’ | Se bon congic euuent eü.’ |

Line 2153 vient, e omitted and superscript.
Coment le duk de Lancastre & le Prince venuz a Dask en gnt deduit en attendantz le passages outre les portes cest assauoir le paas de Rounceualle & le Counte de froitz se retourna en son pais | hōme disoit qe le Roy de Nauarre estoit alez oue le Bastard Henī | monē Hugh de Caluelle vst pris certeins villes en Nauarre | sur ce le Roy de Nauarre tramist sez messages au Prince | aprēs vint monē Martyn de Nauarre au Prince lour approcha le passage.

Encement tout plant envenirent
A Dasc | le mains se tenirent
Et si saches qe celf nuyt
Demesnerent moul grant deduyt
De lour parlement plus ne say
Ne plus ne vous enconteray
Lui Counte de floyys se retourna
Ou pais ou il demurra

Et lui Prince a dast demoere
En atendant le temps lēure

Qil poist passer les portes
Qe vous seroit longe li recordz
En coer ne sauoi il pas

Si passeroi p le pais
De Rainchenanus car hōme disoit
Qe li Roy de Naurre estoit
Alliez oue le Bastard Henry
Dount hōme maint feurentesbachy

Maiē en ce temps lē termynne
Mirand lē point la Reine
Ot pris Hugh de Caluerley
Dount Naurre fuist enfrae
Luy Roy tramist sōn messager

Au Prince tost sanz atergier
Et li ad mande tout le fait

Ensement tout parling en vinrent
A Dasc et par les mains se tinrent,
Et se sachies que celle nuyt
Demenerent moul grant deduyt.
De lour parlement plus ne say
Ne plus ne vous en conteray.
Li quens de floyys se retourna
Ou pais ou il demoura,

En atendant le tamps lēure

Que il peutist passier les porz.
Que vous seroit lōns li recorz ?
Encores ne savoïl il pas
S'il passeroient par le pas

De Rainchevaus ; car on disoit
Que li Roys de Navarre estoit
Alliez ou Bastart Henry,
Dount tamaint feurent esbahy.

Mais en ce tamps et ce termynne
Mirande et le Pont la Reine
Ot pris Hughes de Calverlee,
Dount Naurre fu esfrae.

Li Roys tramist son messagier
Au Prince tost, sanz atergier,
Et li a mande tout le fait,

Line 2186 atendant, t added in the margin.
Ce que Hughes lour avert fait.
Apres vint messire Martyn
De Naverre qui ot coer fyn;
Tant fist par son sens qu'il ot sage
Qu'il lour approcha le passage.

Coment le Roy de Nauarre
deuers le Prince a seint Johan
du pee des portz et le Duc de
Lancastre lui vint alencontre 

lors furent les searmentz renouellez 
ap's ce fuist ordeigne qu'elat garde passeroit.

Assez vous purroye conter
Pour la matier destourber;
Mais bien tost puis ce iour auient
Que li Rois de Naverre vint
A seint Johan du pee des portz,
Et a l'encontre lui vint lors
De Lancastre le noble ducs,
Et Chandos qui molt fuist prus

Deuers le Prince li amesenerent
Et vn lieu ou ils le trouerent
Piers forard auoit a noun
De lieu la ville et la Maison
La fuist li Roy Petro venuz

Et la fuist sur le corps Johan
Touz lour fementz renouellez
Et la fuist chescun accordez
De tout ce qu'il devoit avoir
Or voc je faire mon devoir
De bouter avant ma matiere,
Car l'endemain, c'est chose clere,
Li Roys et li ducs et Chandos
Se departirent a brifs moz,
Car accorde ensi estoit
Que l'avant garde passeroit
Tout premier, ce lundy proschein;
Et cils sanz faire longe demain
Sont a seint Johan arrivez
Illoecques feurent hostelle,

Line 2231 ce omitted and superscript.
Apres 2255 dautres:
1 Que chescun se voille appailler
2 Pur passer le proschein lundy
3 Voire cil qui feurent esly
4 Pur passer oasis lauant garde

Ore est droit que ie preigne garde
A lauant garde deuier
Beaux seigniours primers do nomer

Coment le Duk de Lancastre amesna lauant garde
de seignours & dautres esteantz en sa compagni.

Le duc de Lancastre qui prus
fuist hardi | corageus
Et si ot en sa compaignie
Moult de noble Chialerie
La fuist le bon Thomas Duffort
Qi li coer ot hardi | fort
De Hastynges le bon Hugon

Et Beauchamp son compagnon
Guilliaume qui moult fuist gentils
Au Count de Warrewyk filz
Le sire de Neofylyf auxi
Et maint bon Chialer hardi

Qui maintenant ne voiler nosmer
Car ailloirs en vorray pler
Apres vous doy nomer Chanudos
Qui fuist Conestable del hos
Qui menoit tousz les compagnons

Des queux vous vorroi nosmer les nons
Tout primers le β² de Rays
Qui fuist bon | preus en ses faiz

Apres le seigniour danbeterre
Qui volontiers persueoit la guerre

Monʃ Garsis de Castelle
Qui ot le coer preu | loielle
Et Gilbard de la Mote auxi
Et de Rochewarde Ammery
Et monʃ Rōbt Camyyn

Le duc de Lancastre, qui preus,
flu et hardis et corageus,
Et si ot en sa compaignie
Moult de noble chevalerie.
La fu le bon Thomas d’Uffort
Qui le coer ot hardi et fort,
De Hastynges le bon Hugon,
Et de Beauchamp son compagnon,
Guilliaume, qui moult fu gentils,
Au comte de Warrewyk filz,
Le sire de Noefylyle auxi
Et maint bon chevalier hardi,
Qui, maintenant, ne voel nomer,
Car ailloirs en vorray parler.

Apres vous doy nomer Chandos,
Qui fu Conestable del hos,
Qui menoit tousz les compagnons,
Desqueux vous voeil nomer les nons:
Touz premiers le seignour de Rays
Qui fu bons et preus en ses faiz,
Apres le seigniour d’Aubeterre
Qui volontiers pursueoit guerre,
Monseigniour Garsis de Castel
Qui ot le coer preu et loiel,
Et Gilbard de la Mote auxi
Et de Rocheward Ammery
Et monseigniour Robert Camyn,

Line 2258 Conestable del hos underlined in a later hand.
THE BLACK PRINCE

2270 Cressewell & Briquet le fyn
   Et monsieur Richard Taunton
   Et Guillaume de fiélétou
   Et Willecok le Boteller
   Et Peurel qui ot coer fier
2275 Johan Sandes home de renon
   Et John Alein son compagnon
   Et puis après Shakell & Haulee
   Tout cil Peignoun sans demoree
   Sfeurent a Chaundos compagnon
2280 Et mis p desoubz son peignon
   Après feurent li Mareschaft & deuereux
   Qui feurent prodhômes & loialx
   Li vus fuist Estephen de Cosinton
   Qui moult estoit noble persôn
2285 Et laute le bon Guychard dangle
   Qui ne doit estre mis en langle
   Einz est bien droit qe home scn remorge
   Ouesq eux le peignon seint George
   Et moul dautre chiualrie
2290 Avoient en leur compagnie

Cressewell et Briket le fyn
   Et monseigneur Richard Taunton
   Et Guillaume de fiélétou
   Et Willecok le Boteillier
   Et Peverell qui ot coer fier,
   Johan Sandes, home de renon,
   Et Johan Alein, son compagnon,
   Puis après Shakell et Haulee.
   Tout cil peignon, sans demoree,
   Sfeurent a Chandos compagnon,
   Et mis par desouz son peignon.
2280 Apres feurent li Mareschal
   Qui feurent prodhome et loial :
   L' uns Estephene de Cosintone,
   Qui moult estoit noble personne,
   Et l'autres le bon Guychard d'Angle,
   Qui ne doit estre mis en l'angle,
   Einz est bien droiz qu'on s'en remorge;
   Avec yaux le peignon seint George,
   Et moul d’autre chevalerie
   Avoient en leur compagnie.

Coment lauant garde passa outre les portz
   portz | à la noumber de x, Mift chialax.
   oue grand peyne | durteee | les gentz
   se logerent dedeinz Nauarre.

Seigniour ore vous ay devisee
Lauant garde | tout nomee
Qui ne se sont pas alenty
Mais passerent le lundy

2295 Quatorsze iours en seueuerer
   Mais puis que dier equivalent
   Suffri mort pur nous en la crois
   Ne fuist passage si estrois
   Car home veoit gentz & chiaux
   Qui moult y suffroient des maux

2300 Trebuchier pmyla montaigne
   La ny aouit point de compaigne
   Li pere nattendoit lenfant

Seigniour or vous ay devisee
L'avan garde et toute nomee,
Qui ne se sont pas alenty
Mais passerent tout, le lundy,
Quatorsze jours en feuerier.

2295 Mais puis que Dieux le droitier
   Souffri mort pour nous en le crois,
   Ne fu passages si estrois;
   Car on veoit genz et chevaux,
   Qui moult y souffroient des maux,
   Trebuchier parmy le montaigne.

2300 La n'y aouit point de compaigne ;
   Li pere n'attendoit l'enfant :

Line 2281 deuereux underlined in a later hand.
THE BLACK PRINCE

La auoit froidure si grant | La auoit froidure si grant
De Niege & de gielle auxi | De neige et de gele auxi
Que chescun estoit esbahy | Que chescuns estoit esbahy;
Mai ouesq la grace de dieu | Mais avoc le grace de Dieu
Tout passa en tems & en lieu | Tout passa en tamps et en lieu,
Bien x mille chevalx & plus | Bien x mille chevalx et plus,
Et les genz qui furent desus | Et les genz qui furent desus;
Dedenz Naverre se logierent | Dedenz Navarre se logierent,
Et lendemain s'appaillet | Et lendemain s'apparaillet
Toutz ceux qui estoient sanz faille | Tout cils qui estoient, sanz faille,
Ouesq le Prince en sa bataille | Avoec le Prince en sa bataille.

Des seigniours qe furent oue le Prince en sa bataille & dautres a la nombre de xx, Milt chiusaix & coment ils passerent outre les portz & le Roy de Nauarre les conduist & amesnat.

Ore est bien droit qe vous nōme | Ore est bien droiz que je vous nōme
De ses nobles Barons la sōme | De ces nobles barons le some:
Tout primers li Prince & lui Roy | Touz primiers le Prince et le Roy
Daun Petro qe bien nomer doy | Dan Petro, que bien nomer doy,
Et li Roy de Nauarre auxi | Et le Roy de Navarre auxi,—
Cils troiz passérent sanz detri | Cil troiz passérent sanz detri—
Mesb Lowyke de Harcourt | Monseignour Lowyk de Harcourt
Et monb Eustace Dabrichecourt | Et Eustace d’Abrichecourt,
Mesb Thomas de ffeltoen | Monseigneur Thomas de ffellton
Et de Parteney le baron | Et de Parteney le baron,
Et touz les frīres de Pomiers | Et touz les frīres de Pomiers
Qui moult estoient nobles Chiualers | Qui estoient nobles chevaliers,
Et puis le seigniour de Clichōn | Et puis le seigniour de Clichon
Et le bon seigniour de Curton | Et le bon seigniour de Curton.
Lui sire de la Waure y fui | Li sires de la Waure y fu,
Qui ot en li moulant grant vertu | Qui ot en li moulant grant vertu,
Si fuist monb Rōbt de Knolles | Si fu messires Roberz Knolles
Qui neust mie trop des polles | Qui n’est mie trop de paroles;
Lui Viscount de Rocheward | Li viscount de Rocheward
Y fuist auxi | si dieux me gard
Et de Bourcier le droit seignour | Et de Bourcier li droit seigneur
Et main bon chiualer donour | Et main bon chevalier d’onour.

Line 2312 sappaillet, re added in the margin.
Line 2324 Pauteney, not clear: u might be a carelessy made it.
Line 2335 Bourcier underlined in a later hand.
Coment le Roy Maiogre le Counte
Darminak et plusieurs autres vaillants
Seignieurs et chevaliers estoient en la re-regard et passèrent outre le paas et se logerent en la Conke de Pampilon.

Le meskerdy si dieux me garde
Passa auxi la reregare
De Maiogre li noble Roys
Et li vaillant Counte Curtoys
Darminak qi tant fuist gentils
Berart de la Bret li hardis
Et de Muscydœn li seigniour
Et des autres Chevaliers donour
Donct noblez estoit li renons
Et si auoit dautres peignons

Le meskerdy, se Dieux me garde,
Passa auxi l'ariéregarde :
De Maiogre li nobles Roys,
Et li vaillanz conte courtoys
D'Arminak qui tant fu gentils,
Berarz de Labret, li hardis,
Et de Muscyden li seigniour,
Et d'autres chevaliers d'onour
Donct noblez estoit li renons ;
Et si auoit d'autres peignons
Coment en apres passerent le 5e de la Bret & le Captal oue ii. Centz combatantz
à ly hoost fuist contre ensemble à le Bastard Henri en eust nouvelles.

Coment le Bastard Henri enuooia sez ires
au Prince pur sauoir qelle part il
voilelez entrer en Espaigne et qil lui serroit
a deuaut pur ly doner la bataille.

En la lif come vous orrez
A trespuissant et honéz
2405 Et noble Prince Daquitayne
Chier sire ceste chose certeine
Come nous a vous entendu
Que vous et voz gentz sont venu

f. 347 Et passez decea les portz
2410 Et que vous aUES fait acordz
Et estez alliez au
Ouesq le nRE enemy
Dont nous donons grant merueille
Je ne say qui le vous conseille
2415 Car vnes rien ne vous mes fis
Ne enuers vous rien ne mespris
Pur quoy vous nous deussiez heier
Ne que vous nous deussiez toller
Tant poy que dieux nous ad prestee

2420 De terre p sa volunté
Mais pur ce qe nous savons bien
Qu'il n'ai seigniour terrien
En cest monde ne creature
Qui dieux ait donee auenture
2425 Tant en armes come il ad a vous
Et bien savons qe vous et tous
Les vres acquerez sans faille
fforsq pur avoir la bataille
Vous prons amiablement

2430 Que vous vous voillez seulement
Lessier savoir p quelle partie
Entreze en nRE seigniourie
Et nous vous auons en couenant
Que nous vous serrom a deuant

2435 Pur vous batailler del uerer
Lors fist ses lres sealler
Et les tramist p sòn heraud
Qui chimina sans nul defaut

En le lettre, com vous orrez:
'Trespuissanz et tres honorez
Et nobles Princes d'Aquitayne!
Chiers sire, c'est chose certeine,
Come nous avons entendu,
Que vous et voz gens sont venu
Et passe par decea les porz,
Et que vous aves fait acorz
Et estez alliez auxi
Avoecques le nostre enemy,
Dont nous avons grande merveille.
Je ne say qui le vous conseille,
Car onques rien ne vous mesfis,
2415 Ne envers vous rien ne mespris
Pour quoi vous nous doiiez haer,
Ne que vous nous doiiez toilir
Tant poy que Dieux nous a prestee
De terre par sa volente:
Mais pour ce que nous savons bien
Qu'il n'i a seigniour terrief
En cest monde ne creature,
Qui Dieux ait donee aventure
Tante en armes, come a a vous,
Et bien savons que vous et tous
Les vostres ne querez, sans faille,
ffors que pour avoir la bataille,
Vous prions amiablement
Que vous nous veulliez seulement
Lessier savoir par quel partie
Entreze en no seigniourie,
Et nous vous avons en couvant
Que nous vous serons au devant
Pour vous bataille deliver.'

Lors fist ses lettres saiéler
Et les tramist par son heraut,
Qui chemina sans nul defaut

Line 2420 sa, first written, but corrected to s.
Line 2422 terrien, i omitted and superscript.
Coment le prince receuist les lettres du Bastard \( \frac{\text{et ces Barons \text{ et appelle son conseil \text{ et estre auisez de la response de meisme les lettres \text{ et a ceo temps mons\' Thomas de fleloton demanda}}}}{\text{et le Prince troua au Roy Petre \text{ et a}}}

\( \frac{\text{conge du Pince pur aler espier loost du Bastard \text{ et auoit congé \text{ et adonques \text{ sen chiuchama pmy}}}}{\text{et les lettres lui bailla.}} \)

\( \frac{\text{et le Roy de Nauarre fust pris p traison \text{ et mons\' Martyn de la Carre fuist fait gouvernour du pais de Nauarre \text{ et sen ala countrer nouvel au Prince de la prise du Roy de Nauarre \text{ et ly supplia a garder \text{ et gouverner la pais \text{ et le Prince graunta de luy aider \text{ et adonques comaunda le Pince que loost se deust apparaider pur departer lendemain \text{ et lors passa loost le paas de Sarrys \text{ et chimina pmy Espuske iezques a saue tre.}}}}}}}{\text{et tous les conseilz appellez}} \)

\( \frac{\text{Et li Prince si dieux manoire f fist de la lettre moulant grant joie}}{\text{Et li Princes, se Dieux m'avoie, f fist de le lettre moulant grant joie}} \)

\( \frac{\text{Et la monstro a ses barons \text{ Et leur deuisa les raisons.}}}{\text{Et le monstro a ses barons \text{ Et leur deuisa les raisons.}}} \)

\( \frac{\text{2445 La fuist li Roy Petro mandez Et tout le conseilz appellez Pur la response conseiller Coment le purroit renvoier Et respondre p deuers lui}}{\text{2445 Lor fu li Roys Petro mandez Et tous li consiaux appellez Pour le response conseillier, Coment le pourroit renvoier Et respondre par devers li.}} \)

\( \frac{\text{2450 Mais en ce temps que je vous di Mons\' Thomas de fleloton Au Prince demanda vn doun Qil li pluist soulement De li grantier tout primerment}}{\text{2450 Mais en ce temps que je vous di Sire Thomas de fleloton Au Prince demanda un don, Que il li pleüist soulement Li grantier tout premierment}} \)

\( \text{Line 2453 pluist, marginal correction e.} \)
Qu'il peuist aler chevauchier
Pour aler lour host esplier ;
Et li Princes lui accorda.
Et adonc Thomas appella
Les compagnons, sachiez pour voir,
Autant come il voloit avoir.
Thomas d'Ufford et felleton,
Guillaumes, o coer de lyon,
Hughes de Stafford et Knolles
Y feurent, a courtes paroles ;
Et la sourvint a l'assemblee
Messire Simon de Burlee.
Bien feurent, sicom j'oy dire,
Oet vint lances, sanz contredire,
Et si feurent .ccc. archiere.

Lors se prissent a chevauchere
Parmy Navarre, jour et nuyt ;
Guydes avoient et conduyt.
Au Groign passerent le riuere,
Dont l'eau fu et rade et fiere,
Et se logeоient a Naveret,
Pour entendre et oir du fet,
Coment lour hos se gouvernoit.
Entreus que ce la se fesoit,
ffu li Roys de Navarre pris
Par traison, dont esbahis
ffu li Princes et ses consiaux.
ffu li Princes et ses consiaux.
Or fu gouvereres et baus
De tout le pais de Navarre
Messire Martyns de la Carre.
Par le conseil de le Reine,
Qui de toutz biens avoir est digne,
Vint au Prince, si li conta
Le prise ensemle qu'ele va,
Et li supplia a garder
Le pais et le governor.
Li Princes grant mervaille en ot
Quant il oy de mot en mot,
Et respondi de bone guyse:
Coment le Prince oue son hoost est venuz en Espaigne se logea es villages pres de saue terre qui doit auoir assaille la ville. mais se rendirent au Roy Petre illoeqes soijourna le Prince vi iours sez gentz feurêt a Naueret espioient lost du Bastard prierent le chiualer du gaite de meisme lost le quel fust prisoner a mon § Simonde de Burelee autres deux ou trois furent pris queux lour disoient la veritee del hoost du Bastarde eux ent manderent nouels au noble Prince.

Ore fuist loost venuz en Espaigne
Qui lespandi p la champaine
Pres de saue terre es villages
Se logea lui noble baronages
La ville quidoit assailler

Or ne le puisse pas reauoir
Mais vous savez bien tout pur voir,
Trestout les meultz qi e puisse faire
C'est que me parte de sa terre.

Je sui moult dolanz de le prise.
Ore ne le puis pas ravoir,
Mais vous savez bien, tout pour voir,
Trestout le mieulz que puisse faire
C'est que me parte de sa terre.

Je sui moult dolanz de le prise.
Ore ne le puisse pas reauoir,
Mais vous savez bien, tout pour voir,
Trestout le mieulz que puisse faire
C'est que me parte de sa terre.

Je sui moult dolanz de le prise.
Mais bien sachez sanz alenter
Qu'au Roy dan Petro se rendirent
Tout auxi tost que le choisirent.
Illoeqes sejourna vi jours
Li Princes, ou pais entours ;
Et entre ce jour et ce temps
A Naveret feurent ses gens,
Qui bien sovent hors chevauchoit
Et l'est du Bastart espioient,
Tant qu'il avint que sur lour gait
Une noet emprissent lour fait:
Tout a cheval en yaux se frirent
Et le chevalier de gait prirent
Et des autres ou deux ou trois.
Lors prist a lever lui esfrois:
A monsiour Simon de Burlee
flue prisoners celle journee
Li chevaliers que je vous di.
Lors se revinrent sanz detri
A Navaret ou se lегоeioent,
Et par les prisoniers qu’avoient
Sorent del host le verite.
Erraument au Prince ont mende.

Coment le Bastarde se deslogea si vient
encontre le Prince Thomas de fleton
sez compaignouns se deslogierent de
Nauereit chiuacherent deuant lost
du Bastarde pur espier plus iustement
de lour fait si venoient deuant Vitoire
ent enuoirient nouvelles au Prince si
le Prince vint deuant Vitoire si le
Bastarde auxi vint si se logea de lautre
lees de la montaigne si le Prince est
venuz sur les champes si illoeqes troua
sez chualers si lour fist moult bon chier.

Et le Bastard sot dautre part
Les nouvelles de l’autre part
Et dist qil se deslogeroit
Et qe a l’encontre lour viendroit

Et li Bastarz sot dautre part
Les nouvelles de l’autre part,
Et dist qu’il se deslogeroit
Et qu’a l’encontre lour venoit.
THE BLACK PRINCE

Et quant Thoma de felleton
Le sot t tut son compaignon
De Naveret se deslogierent
Toutz jours deuant loost chiuachirent
Pour reportier plus iustement
Les nouvelles certeinement
Tant firent de lors demoeree
Que les Espaignards sont passe
Et bien auoient en memoire
Qils vindroien deuant Vitoire
Au lees p deceaa la montaigne
Deuant Vitoire sur la plain
Sire Thomas de felleton
Se logea t son compaignon
Au Prince manderent la fait
Tout ensi qis auoient fait
Quant li Prince ad entendu
La chose tout ensi come el fu
Coment le Bastard vient tut droit
A luy qui combatre voilet
Lors dist si me aide Ihú Cris
Moult pest cils Bastard hardys
Aloms vers li seigniour pur dieu
Deuant Vitoire prendre lieu
La nestoit pas veus en core
Lui Bastard ains fuist sur la playne
De laute rees de la montayne
Quant li Prince frist sur les champs
Qui moult estoit prus vaillantz
Illoeques troua ses chiuahers
Moult les ad veu volontiers
Et si lour dist beux seigniours duse
Plus de Cent foitz bien veigniez vous

Coment les courrous du Prince courroient
\% reporterent le fait des enemis \%
Prince fist sez gentz regnier \% ordeignier
sez batailles \% fist lez ordeignier pur

Line 2556 Vitoire, the second i omitted and superscript.
Line 2561 la, marginal correction e.
les baniers exploiter & plusieurs seigniours
& autres feurent faitz chiualers.

Ensemble come ils se deuisoient
Les coureurs p les champs eroient
Deuers le Prince resporterent

2585 Les coureurs des enemys
Anoient veu ce lour fuist auis
Adonques est li hoost esmeue
Et trestout li hoost venne
A larme y oist home criere

2589 Li Prince fist ses gentz rengiere
Et ses batailles ordeignier
La se poot home regarder
Cil qui rien ne contoist dedure
Car home y pooit veoir re lure

2595 Or | syn | asure | argent
Et goules | sable ensemment
Synnoble | purpre | hermyne
La eust maint banier fyne
De soie | de sendal auxi

2600 Car puis le temps qe ie vous dy
Si tresnoble chose a veoir
Ne fuist a recorder le voir
La fuist lauantgarde ordeigne
Tresnoblement a cel iourne

2605 La veist home chiualers faire
Des esquiers de noble afferre
Le Roy Daun Petro Chiualer
ffist le Prince trestout primer
Et Thomas de Holande apres

2610 Qui defaire armes estoit pres
Et puis Huon de Courtenay

2615 ffist Chiualer Raoul Cammois
Qui fuist beux en faiz & curtois
Et Gautier Vrsewik auxi
Et puis Thomas Dauvirmetri

Come ensemble se devisor
Li coureur par les champs couroient,
Deuers le Prince raporterent

Les coureurs des enemys
Avoient veiz, ce lour fu vis.
Adonc est li hos esmeue
Et trestoutli hos venne.
‘A l’arme!’ y oist on crier.

Li Princes fist ses genz regnier
Et ses batailles ordener.
La se pot on au regarder —
Cils qui rien n’i contoit — dedure,
Car on y pooit veoir relure
Orsyn et asur et argent
Et goules et sable ensemment,
Synnoble et pourpré et hermyne ;
La eust mainte baniere fyne
De soie et de sendal auxi,

Car, puis le tamps que je vous dy,
Si tres noble chose a veoir
Ne fu, a recorder le voir ;
La fu l’avantgarde ordenee
Tres noblement cele iournee ;
La veist on chevaliers faire
Des escuiers de noble afferre.
Le Roy dan Petro, chevalier,
ffist li Princes trestout premier,
Et Thomas de Holande apres,
Qui de faire armes estoit pres,
Et puis Huon de Courtenay,
Philippe et Peron, que bien say,
Johan Triuet Nicolas Bonde
Et li ducs ou tous biens abonde

ffist Chiualer Raoul Cammois,
Qui fuist beaux en faiz & courtis,
Et Gautier Vrsewic auxi,
Et puis Thomas Dauvirmetri

Line 2584, no blank space in the MS.; at line 2585 is a marginal note: defac. hic.
Monſ Johano de Grendon

La eustst XII. ou enuiron
Ly noble ducz & redoutez
Qui bien doit estre renomez
Et bien sachez fut entre fait
La eust mant bon Chiuader fait

Dount ie nesay les nounz nosmer
Mais a ceo qe iay oi countier
Ly Prince ouesq ses gentz
Enfist ce iour plus de deux Cents

Et monseignour Johano de Grendon.
La en fist xii. ou enuiron
Ly nobles ducz et redoutez,
Qui bien doit estre renomez.
Et bien sachiez, tout entresait,
La eut maint bon chevalier fait
Dont je ne say le non nomer;
Mais a ce que j'oi conter,
Ly Princes avoecques ses gentz
En fist ce iour plus de deux cenz.

Coment loost du noble Prince fuist
Rengie en attendant la bataille |
mais ne pleust a deu qe les enemys
venissent mye celle iour |
a la reregarde del hoost du dit Prince fuist
derere p vii. leuges du pais |
% a vespres
loost du dit Prince se logea |
% fuist
criez qe lendemain touz se retournerent
a ceste playne |
% qe chescune sroit % sa garde.

A quoi fair vous mentiroie
Et la matiere alongeroie
Rengiez feurent la tout iour
Et prest pur attendre lestour
Mais ne plust pas au filz marie
Qe cely iour venissent mye

Les enemys | car p seint pierre
La reregarde fuist derere
Plus de vii leuges du pais
Dount lui Prince fuist mlt maris
A vespres salarent logier

Adonqes fist le Prince crier
Qe chescun droit en cely playn
Retournast droit a lendemain
Et nult se passast lauant garde
Et qe chescun fuist sur son garde

Et se logeast oue sa baniere
Mais p la foi qe ie doi a seint pierre

A quoi faire vous mentiroie
Et le matiere alongeroie?
Rengie feurent la tout jour
Et prest pour attendre l'estour;
Mais ne pluet pas au filz Marie
Que cely jour venissent mye
Li enemy, car, par seint Piere,
L'arieregade fu deriere
Plus de vii lieuwes du pais:
Dont li Princes fu moult maris.
A vespres s'alarent logier.
Adonq fist li Princes crier
Que chescuns, droit en cely playn,
Retournast, droit a l'endemain,
Et nult ne passast l'avant garde,
Et que chescuns fust sur sa garde
Et se logeast ou sa baniere;
Mais, par le foi que doi seint Piere,
Monseigneur Thomas de Felleton
Et Guillaume son compagnon
Plus de 11 lieues du pais

Sire Thomas de Felleton
Et Guillaume ses compagnon
Plus de 11 lieues du pais
S'en alla logier, moy fu vis.

Comment le Counte Dantille frere au
Bastard demanda congé de chiuacher pur
espierr et reporter le fait del hoost du Prince
le quel auoit congé sen chiuacha sur celle
fait plusieurs seignieurs et autres a le
noumbre de vj Milt en sa compagnie.

Ore est bien temps que je vous conte
De Dantille le noble Counte
Qui appella disant envis
Son frere le Bastard Henri :

Sire, fit-il, or m'escoutez.
Il est bien voir am vous sauez
Tout de vray que nié enemy
Sont logez assez pres de cy
Et pur ytant si vous voilliez

Et le congé vous men dourez
Le matinnet chevaucheray
Et le vray vous reporteray
Des enemis coment ils font
Ly Bastard errantz li responct

Ly Bastard errant li responct
Qu'a ce faire bien s'acordoit
Et qu'en sa compagnie iroit
Sanses, liqueux estoit ses frere,
Et si iroit, c'est chose cler,
D'Odenhem, le bon maireshal.
A vii, mille homes a cheval
Seroit faite le chevauchée :
Ensi fu le chose establée.
Sire Bartrem's y fust alez,
De Clayekyn ; mais arivez

Toit celi jour, ce dist on,
Car tout droit venoit d'Aragon
Ensi fu compris leur atres.
Durement manacent Engleis,
Coment le Counte Dantilles oue sez gents
sen est approches al hoost du Prince
primerment encontra a mons Hugh de Caluelee
fist qnt damage as englois et eussement fortement suppriss.lauant garde
si neust esteel li noble duc de Lancaestre.

Ore voille dieux eider le droit
Et li Prince logiez estoit
Deuant Vitoir et Enuirôñ
Ne auoit borde ne maisôn

Que tout ne fuist de sa gent plaine
Mais ce est bien chose certeine
Le Prince ne se gardoit mie
Lendemain de la chiuachie
Que Dantilles li apprestoit

Car sachiez que pas ne dormoit
A la my noet se leua
Le plusm grant chimyn chiuacha
Tut droit contremont la montaigne
Tant qil amesna sa compaigne

Tut contrevale vn vallee
Primer Huon de Caluelee
Encontra q se deslogeoit
Qui deuers le Prince venoit
Ses somers et son cariage
ffirent les courreurs qnt damage
Dont monta la noise et li cries
Et les courreurs q les logiez
Courrioen aual et a mont
En lour litz maintz tuez sont

La eust estee si dieux me garde
ffortment suprise lauant garde
Si neust esteel li ffranks ducs
De Lancastre plein des vertuz
Car si tost qil oý le cry

Hors de son logement sailly
Et prist pas sur la montaigne

Or voeille Dieux eider le droit!
Et li Princes logiez estoit
Devant Vitoire; et environ
N'y avoit borde ne maison
Que tout ne fust de sa gent plaine.

Mais, ce est bien chose certeine,
Li Princes ne se gardoit mie
L'endemain de le chevauchie
Que dans Tilles li apprestoit;
Car sachiez que pas ne dormoit,
A le mye noet se leva,
Le plusm grant chemyn chevauchia
Tout droit contremont le montaigne,
Tant qu'il amena sa compaigne
Tout contrevale une vallee.

Premiers Huon de Caluelee
Encontra, qui se deslogeoit,
Qui devers le Prince venoit.
Ses somiers et son cariage
ffirent li courreur grant damage,
Dont monta la noise et li cris;
Et li courreur par les logiz
Courrioen aual et amont;
Enz en lour liz maintz tuez sont.

La eust este, se Dieux me garde,
ffortment souprise l'avantgarde,
Se n'eustt esti li frans ducs
De Lancastre, pleins de vertuz;
Car si tost qu'il oý le cry,
Hors de son logement sailly
Et prist pas desur le montaigne.

Line 2702 courreurs, x before s omitted and superscript.
| La se ralia sa compagnie | La se ralia sa compagnie |
| Et toutz les autres meulz | Et toutz les autres, que meulz meulz ; |
| Et si dist home si meide dieux | Et si dist on, se meide Dieux, |
| Que Espainardz se quidoient prendre | Qu'Espaignart se quidoient prendre |
| Celle montaigne a voir entendre | Celle montaigne, au voir entendre ; |
| Mais au duc et a sa banier | Mais au duc et a sa baniere |
| Sassemblerent a lye chier | S'assemblerent a lye chiere |
| Toutz les banieres del hoos | Toutes les banieres del hos. |
| La vnoient li Prince et Chandos | La vint li Princes et Chandos |
| Et la fuist li hos ordenee | Et la fu li hos ordenee ; |
| La veissiez sansz demoeree | La veissiez sansz demoeree |
| Les coureurs rebater p force | Les coureurs rebatre par force. |
| Chescuns de bien faire s'esforce | Chescuns de bien faire s'esforce. |

**Coment le gnt bataille de Espaignardes**

| cheuecha et encontrent ffelton et plusieurs chzialers et autres esteantz sur vne mountaigne et monp Guillers de ffelton se fry entre les ennemys come chialer corageous et si occist moult chialrrousement vn Espaignard et si combatist moult vaillantment et les ennemys ettoien launces et dartes tant qils tuerent son chial desouth ly et au derrein le tresnoble chialer fuist occis. |

| Lors chevaucha le grand bataille des Espaignardz sachez sansz faille | Lors chevaucha le grand bataille |
| Des Espaignardz sachiez sansz faille | Des Espaignarz, sachiez sansz faille ; |
| Si ont encontre ffelten | Si ont encontre ffelton |
| Et monp Richard Taunton | Et monseignour Richard Taunton, |
| Degory says Raoul de Hastynges | Degorys says, Raoul de Hastynges |
| Qi la mort ne counte a ij. gynges | Qui le mort ne conte a ii guignes, |
| Et monp Gaillard Beguer | Et monseignour Gaillard Beguer |
| Et maint bon vaillant Chialer | Et maint bon, vaillant chevalier ; |
| Bien estoient Cent combatantz | Bien estoient cent combatant |
| Ensemble quei petitz quei gntz | Ensemble, que petit que grant. |
| Sur une petite montaigne | Sur une petite montaigne |
| La rallierent leur compagnie | La rallierent leur compagnie ; |
| Mais monp Guillers li prus | Mais sire Guillaume, li preus, |
| Moult hardis et moult corageus | Moult hardis et moult corageus, |
| Se fri entre les ennemys | Se fri entre les ennemys |
Come home sanz sens & sanz auis
A Chiuatt la lance baissie
Amont sur la trage florie
Vn Espaignard ala ferir
Qe tout p my le coer sentier

Lors curroït sus traite lespee
Et Castillains p lour poestee
Lui suirent sur les tutes parz
Et li jettoient lances % dartz
Son chiual ont desoubz li mort
Mais a pie se defendoït fort

Come home qui ot coer de lion
Monf Guilles de ffeltōn
Mais sa defence poy vally
Car mort fuist dieux en eit mercy

Coment les Espaignardes entoure le nombre
de vi. Mill assaillerent moult fortement les
englois que ne furent mye a le nombre de C.
estauntz sur vne mountaigne | les englois
combatoient moult noblement
Mais au derrein per graund
force ils furent pris % amesnez
deuers le Bastarde Henry.

Sur vn montaigne qils prirent
La lour fesoient maint estour
Les Espaignardz qe sanz soiour
Mult durement les assailloient
Et lances % dartz lour lachoient

Et fors Archigais esmelluz
Et cils q mult eurent vertus
Come gent de Hardi corage
Lour moustroient lour vesselage
Car plus de Cent foitz cel iour

Saualerent sanz nulf soiour
Les glaies trenchantes en lour mains

Com hom sanz sens et sanz avis,
A cheval, le lance baissié.
Amont sur le targe florie
Un Espaignart ala ferir,
Que tout par my le coer sentir
Lui fist le fier trenchant d’acier ;
Jus a le terre tresbuchier
Le fist, veiant toute le gent.
Come hom plein de grant hardiement
Lor couroit sus, l’espee traite,
Et Castillain par lour poeste
Le suirent sur toutes parz,
Et li jettoient lances et darz.
Son cheval ont desoubz li mort ;
Mais a pie se defendoït fort,
Come hom qui ot coer de lion,
Sire Guillaume de ffelton ;
Mais sa defense poy valli,
Car morz fu: Dieux en eit mercy!
Et p fors soiez certeins
Ils les fesoient reculer
Ne ia ne les poist greuer

Li Castelain si dieux me garde
Ne p getdir de launce ne darte
Ne feuissent ffrancs ë Bretõn
Normand ë Pycard ë Burguytón
Qui y suruiendrent p vn val

Et dondenham le Mareschal
Et monf Iohan de Noefville
Cils estoient ensemble Mille

Tout auxi tost come ils les virent
Tut a peee maintenent se mirent

Englois ë Gascoigne bien veoient
Que la plus durer ne poioient
Car ils nauoient nul socors
Et ffrancois plus tost que le cours
Les viendrent a pée assailier

Et les autres sanz alentier
Se defendoient fierment
Mais ils ne furent mye cent
Encontre plus de vi milliers
Et la fesoient Chiualeres

Et la fesoient darmes tant
Que vnques Olyuer ne Roland
Ne poioient vnques plus darmes faire
Ensi come iay oë retraire
Mais leur defense poy vaille

Car par grant force il lour failly
Qils se rendissent prisoner
La furent pris a voir iuger
Hastynges ë Degory says
Gaillard Beguer qui fust pflaitz

Les trois freres de ffileton
Ouesqly Richard Tauntõn
Mitton ë des autres assetz
Dount ie ne say pas les nounus nosmez
En ce point feurent ce iour pris

Dount mout fuist li Prince maris
Mais ils quidoit certeinemt
Que tut li hoost żprement

Et par force, soiez certeins,
Il les fesoient reculer;
Ne ja ne les poueussent greuer

Li Castelain, se Dieux me gart,
Par geter de lance ne dart,
Ne feuissent ffrancos et Breton,
Normant, Pycart et Bourguynnon
Qui y survirent par un val
Ou d'Oudenham le Mareschal
Et monseignour Jehan de Noefville:
Cil estoient ensemble mille.

Tout auxi tost come il les virent
Tut a pée maintenant se mirent.

Englois et Gascon bien veoient
Que la plus durer ne poioient,
Car il n'avoient nul socors,
Et ffrancois plus tost que le cours
Les vinrent a pée assailir;
Et li autre sanz alentir

Se defendoient fierement:
Mais il ne furent mye cent
Encontre plus de vi milliers.

Et la s'esprovoient chevaliers
Et la fesoient d'armes tant
Qu'onques Olyvier ne Roland
Ne poioient onc plus d'armes faire,
Ensi com j'ay oë retraire;
Mais leur defense poy vaille,

Car, par grant force, il lour failly
Qu'il se rendissent prisonier.
La furent pris, au voir jugier,
Hastynges et Degorysays,
Gaillard Beguer, qui fust pflaitz,

Li troi frere de ffileton;
Avocques lor Richard Tauntõn,
Mitton et des autres asseç,
Dont je n'ay pas les nons nomez,
En ce point feurent ce iour pris:
Dont mout fu li Princes maris.
Mais il quidoit certeinemt
Que toute li hos proprement
Coment le Bastarde fist ãnt ioie de la reuene
du Counte Dantilles | ṭ de les autres ṭ de la
prise des englois ṭ fortement manacea
le Prince ṭ sez gentz ṭ ṭ coment il
feust conseillez au Bastarde pur
destruiere les englois ṭ ṭ le Prince
oue sez gentes fuist deuaunt Vitoire
tout dis en attendant la bataille.

Au retourner lour fist grant ioie
Li Bastard Henry si dieux mauoye
Et lour dist bien soiez venuz
2830 Beaux seigniours bie vous sui tenuz
Et puis disoit ṭ motz expres
Toutz les autres viendront apres
Mais me quide ma terre tolier
Li Prince ṭ moy assailler

Pur ytant li ferray savoir
Quo grant couetise dauoir
Li ad fait ceste voyage emprendre
Qui prisonier li porroit prendre
Tant li douroie dargen ṭ dor
2840 Que faire en purroit vn tresor

Au retourner lour fist grant joie
Li Roys Henry, se Dieux m’avoye,
Et lour dist: ‘Bien soiez venuz,
Biaux seigniours, bien vous sui tenuz,’
Et puis disoit par motz expres:
‘Tout li autre venront apres.
Mar quide ma terre tolier
Li Princes et moy assaillir:
Pur ytant li ferai savoir
Que grant coveitise d’avoir
Li a fait ceste voyage emprendre.
Qui prisonier li pourroit prendre
Tant li douroie d’argent et d’or
Que faire en pourroit un tresor.’

Line 2815 denseemle, ṭ omitted and superscript.
Line 2817, fuist corrected into feust.
Quant li mareschalf l'entendi
Mault doucement li dist ensi
Sire dist il quei ditz vous
En coeur nauez vous pas toutz
2845 Les bons Chiualers desconfitz
Mais bien soiez certains et fis
Quant a ceux vous combateretz
Que gentz darmes vous les trouveretz
Mais si bon conseill voillez croiire
2850 Vous le purrez ceste chose voiere
Bien desconpire sanz coup ferir
Si vous voillez faire tenir
Le paas | ou ils doient passer
Et bien vre Hoost faire garder
2855 Si ne lour facez la bataille
Par grant faute de vitaille
Le varrez despaigne partir
Ou de fayme les verrez morir
f. 41r Ensi fust conseillez li Roys
2860 Bastard | du conseil des francois
Et li Prince duant Vitoire
ffuist rengiez sur les champs encore
Qui tutdis illoeqes attendidoit
Si le Bastard descenderoit
2865 Ses batailles toutz rengiez
Et ses baniers desploiez
Sur les champs soi logea la nuyt
La nauoit pas grant deduit
Car maint y ot p seint Martyn
2870 Qui nauoient ne pain ne vin
Pas ne fust trop bons li soiour
Car souent y auoit estour
Et escarmuches de geneteurs
Et des Englois y ot plusieurs
2875 Et des vns et des autres mortz
Mault pfluyl le temps lays et hors
Et de pluie et de vent auxi
Seigniour cel temps que ie vous dy
Quant li mareschaux l'entendi,
Mault doucement li dist ensi :
'Sire,' dist il, 'quoi ditez vous?
Encore n'avez vous pas touz
Les bons chevaliers desconfiz.
Mais bien soiez certains et fis,
Quant a cliaux vous combaterez,
Que genz d'armes les troverez.
Mais, se bon conseil volez creire,
Vos le pourrez, c'est chose voire,
Bien desconpire sanz coup ferir,
Se vous volez faire tenir
Le pas ou il doient passer
Et bien vostre host faire garder ;
Se ne lour faites ja bataille,
Par grande faute de vitaille
Les verrez d'Espaigne partir
Ou de faym les verrez mourir.'
Ensi fu conseilliez li Roys
Bastarz, du conseil des francois.
Et li Princes devant Vitoire
ffuist rengiez sur les camps encore,
Qui touz dis illoec attendidoit
Se li Bastarz descenderoit,
Ses batailles toutes rengiez
Et ses banieres desploiez.
Sur les camps se logea le nuyt.
La n'avoit pas trop grant deduit,
Car mainz y ot, par seint Martyn,
Qui n'avoient ne pain ne vin.
Pas ne fu trop bons li sojours,
Car sovent y auoit estours
Et scarmouches de geneteurs ;
Et des englois y ot plusieurs
Et des uns et des autres morz.
Mault par fu li tamps lays et ors
On de pluue et de vent auxi.
Seigniour, cel tamps que je vous dy,
Du temps quant ces choses p deuant escriptz furent faitz. 
coment le Prince se deslogea, la chimine pmye Nauarre 
passa le paas de la garde, vient a viane et illoeqes se logea, 
apres ce passa le pont de la Groygne, se logea deuant le Groygn 
es vergiers.
Et le Bastarde retourna de seint Vincent 
se logea sur la Ryuer deuant Naddres 
le Prince trasmist au dit Bastarde vne letter.

Ce fut en Marce ne doutez mye
Que souvent pleut, vente et nivie —
Onques ne fut plus mauvais temps —
Et li Princes fu sur les camps
Ou moul faulou souffrir des malx
Pour genz d'armes et pour chevalx.

Et le lundi se deslogea
Li Prince et s'achemina;
Parmy Naverre est retournez ;
Un pas passa qui appellez
fu par non le pas de la Garde.

Tant chemina, se Dieux me garde,
Qu'a Viane logier se vint ;
Et apres ce moul tost ayvnt
Que il passa le pont du Groyng.
Li Princes, qui moul a grant soyng
Et desirier de le bataille,
Celi jour se logea, sanz faille,
Devant le Groyng ens es vergiers
Et par desoubz les olyviers.

Et li Rois Bastarz par espie
Sceut que l'os du Prince est logiè
Devant le Groyng ens es gardyns.
Lors n'aresta soirs ne matins ;
De Seint Vincent tourna ariere
Et se logea sur le rivièr
Desoubz Naddres en un vignoble :
Bele host avoit puissant et noble.
Li Princes adonc li tramist
Une lettre qui ensi dist ; —
Coment le Prince tramist au Bastard sez
lîrè responsales sur la tenure cy ensuant

Trespuissant & tres honoreez
2910 Henry | questes clamez
Duc de Tristemare | et autrement
Sappelle pur le temps present
En ses lîrè | Roy de Castille
Bien avons oy la nouvelle
2915 De voz nobles lîrè presentes
Quo soient gracieusez & gentz
De queus le tenô est pur voir
Quo voluntiers vouldriez sauoir
Pur quoi nous sumes alliez
2920 Et de nîrè foy fiances
Ouescq le vîr enemye
Quel nous tienigos pur nîrè amy
Sachiez quus nous le denous faire
Pur les alliances pfaire
2925 Quexous ont estee du temps passee
Et pur amour & pur pitee
Et pur droiture sustiner
Car vous deueroiez bien senter
En vîr coer | qu ce nest pas droitz
2930 Qun Bastard deust estre Roys
Pur vn droit heir desheriter
Nul hom ne se deit accorder
f. 42r Qui soit de loial mariahe
Dun autre point vous faceoms sage
2935 Quo pur ce quo hôme vous prise tant
Et quo hôme vous tient pur si vaillant
Si accorder vous ambedeux porroie
Moul pointediers menpeneroye
Et ferroie tant de ma part
2940 Qen Castille auerez grant part
Mais raison & droit si se donne
Quo lesser vous faut la corone
Et ensi se purroiet nourrir
Bon paix entre vous sanz mentir
2945 Et quant del entre en Espaigne

‘Tres puissanz et tres honourezz
Henris, qui ducz estes clamezz
De Tristemare et autrement
S'appelle pour le temps present
En ses lettres Roys de Castelle.
Bien avons oy le nouvelle
2915 De voz nobles lettres presenz,
Qui sont gracieuses et gentz,
Des queus le tenour est pour voir
Quo volentiers vourriez savoir
Pour quoi nous somes allie
Et de nostre foy fiaicz
Avoecques le vostre enemye,
Que nous tenons pour nostre amy.
Sachiez que nous le devons faire
Pour les alliances parfaire,
Qui ont este du temps passe,
Et pour amour et pour pite
Et pour droiture sustenir ;
Car vous deveriez bien sentir
En vo coer que ce n'est pas droiz
2915 Qu'uns Bastarz deust estre Roys
Pour un droit heir desheriter ;
Nul hom ne s'y doit accorder
Qui soit de loial mariage.
D’un autre point vous faisions sage,
Que, pour ce qu'on vous prise tant
Et qu'on vous tient pour si vaillant,
S'acorder vous ansedeaux pooie,
Moul pointediers m'en peneroye
Et feroie tant de ma part
2910 Qu'en Castille averiez grant part ;
Mais raisons et droiz si s'adonne
Que lessier vous faut le corone,
Et ensi se pourroiet nourrir
Bone paiz entr'ous, sanz mentir.
Et quant de l'entree en Espaigne
2945
Sachez que moy et ma compaigne, Avoecques l’aide de Dieu, Y entrerons par lequel lieu Que nous y plera a entrer, Sanz nulli congie demander.’

Coment vn haraud porta les Irès du Prince & les presenta au Bastarde | t le Bastarde sur ce demaund sa conselle & chescune ent disoit son auis & surce firent ló ordinance encontre le Pnce.

Ensi fut le lettre dictee
Et puis apres fu saiclee.
Le baillierent a un heraut,
Qui ot le coer joiant & baud

Sachez que moy & ma compaigne
Ouesq l’eide de dieu
Y entrezome p le quel lieu
Que nous y plerra a entrer
Sanz null congie demander

Ensi fut la lre dictee
Et puis apres fut seallee
Et la baillerent a vn heraud
Qui ot le coer ioiant & baud

2955 Et moult demenoit grantz reuaux
Car høme li dona beaux ioiaux
Robes dertyn | manteaux furrez
Et lors ne sest plus arrestez
Congie prist & sen departi

2960 Vers son Meistre le Roy henri
Vient | t la lre li dona
Le Bastard quant il la regarda
E auoit apperceu la voluntee
Que le Prince li a mandee

2965 Bien sciet que moult ot de vaillance
Et sanz plus faire demorange
Appella son conseil ensemble
Et demanda que vous ent semble
De tout cego conseill bon affaire

Chescun ent disoit son affaire

2970 Mon♣ Bartrems de Claykyn
Qui ot le coer hardi & fin
Li dit seigniour ne vous doutez
Car temprement combatterez

Mais cognossez le grant pooir
Que li Prince mayne pur voir
La est florue de chialerie
La est florue de Bachelrie
La sont les meillours combatantz

2980 Que soient en monde viuantz
The Black Prince

Sicq vous avez bien mestier
Que vous facez apparailler
Voz gentz | mettre en ordinance
Daun Bartrem ne aiez dotance

Respondi li Bastarz Henris
Car iaueirai ie su tut fis
Bien .iii. mil cheualx armez
Qui serront sur les deux costez
Des deux eele de ma bataille

Et si verrez sachiez sanz faille
Bien quarte mil genetours
Et des gentz d'armes des meillours
Que home poet trouver par tout Espaigne
Aueray deux mil en ma compaigne

Et si puisse auoir si saches
Cinquant mil homes a peedz
Et des arbalastiers vi. milz
Entreci iesges a ce vilt
Ne demeure frank ne villeyn

Touz sont de moi aider certeyn
Et si me ont mis p lour foi
Que touz iours me tiendront p Roi
Sicq ie nay mie paour
Que ie nen ay le meliour

Ensi deuiserent la nuit
En grant ioe & en grant deduit

Coment le Prince se deslogea deuant la
Groign vn matine | sez gentz rengiez cel
iour chiuacha deux leuges | quidoit bien
celui iour auoir la bataille | enuoia
sez courrours pur reportier la veritee
del hoost du Bastarde Henry qe fuist
logiee a Naueret | les deux hostes
adonques deux leuges d'ensemble.

Et lui Prince naresta mye
Lendemain a laube esclarie
De deuant la Groign des logiez

Sest qe rien nest atargiez

Line 2990 omitted by the scribe and inserted after line 3006
En droit bataille ordignee
Chevaucha celle matinee,
Rengiè si joliement
Qu'onques ne vit si noble gent
Nuls hom, puis que Jesus nasqui. 3015
Celi jour fu le vendredi.
Deux lieuwes chevaucha cel jour
Li Princes, sans prendre soiour,
Et bien quidoit, sachiez pour voir,
Celi jour le bataille avoir. 3020
Ses coureurs envoia par tout,
Liquel se travaillerent moult
Pour le verite raporter;
Mais, a verite recorder,
De l'autre host virent le couvine
Et perceurent qu'en ce termine
flurent logie sur le riviere
Pres de Naddres, en le bruere,
Enz es vergiers et enz es camps —
Moult par estoit leur hos puiszanz — 3030
Et que de rien semblant ne fissent
Que cel jour chevauchier deussent.
Au Prince erraument raporterent
De l'ost ensi qu'il le troverent,
Qui se logea a Naveret. 3035
La ot on tout entreset
L'ordonnance de le bataille.
Or feurent, si sachiez sansz faille,
A deux lieuues pres, ensembla
Les oz logiéz, com moi samble. 3040
Cele noet chescuns sur sa garde
Estoit et de li se prent garde,
Et se coucherent tout armee;
Et devant qu'il fust ajorne
Tramist li Rois Henris espies
Vers Englois en plusieurs parties
Pour savoir leur deslogement;
Mais, se li estoire ne ment,
Au plus matin se deslogierent,
Et a chevauchier commencement; 3050

Line 3041 chascon, marginal correction u.
Mais le Prince oue le coer fin
Nala pas le plus droit chemyn
Ancois prist sachez de certayn
Le chimin a la droite main

3055 Vn montaigne et vn grant val
Avallerent tout a chialu
Si tres noblement ordeigne
Et si coyntenent serree
Que merveillusse fu a veir.

3060 Et li Bastard sanz alentir
Avoit tres a la mynuyt
Ordeigne sa bataille et droit
A pie estoit monp Bartrans
Et li bon mareschali vaillantz

3065 Dodrhem qui tant fuist gentils
Et li ConteAU Sauses de pris
Lui Conteu de dene emensement
Qui Daragon fuist ppremente
Si fuist li Beghes de Villaine

3070 Qui estoit bon chifeine
Monp Johan de Noef ville
Et dautres plus de iiiij. mille
Dont je ne say nomer les nouns
Qei Despaigne qui Daragons

3075 Qei de ffrance qui de Picardie
De Britayne et de Normandie
De moulzt dauztre pais lointain
Puis fuist a la senestre main
A chialu le Conte Dantille

3080 Qei auoit plus de xij. mille
Genetours, homes a chialu
Au destre les fuist le Roial

De la grand bataille du Bastard quauoit
ouesque lui xv Mill homes darmes et gent
nombre des arblastres et des chualx armez
iii. Mill et Cent et le Priour de seint
Johan le Baptistre et le Meestre de seint
Jakes estoient en sa bataille.

Line 3070 chifeine, marginal addition e.
Au Roy Bastart qe home dist Henri
Le quel auoit ouesqe lui
Bien xv. Milt hōmes armez
Et des gentz du pais assetz
Arbalastiers villayns servantz
A lances & a darts trenchantz
Et a fondes pur getter piers
Au corps 3"5 cheval qil t
Princes ot Priours monp.

Coment le Prince descendi de la
mountaigne | & monʃ Ioʃn Chaundos adonqes
fuist mis a Banier dount sez compagnons fesoʃet
ṣнт ioʃe ᵇ eux taillerent de combatre.

Ore fut la chose devisee
Et tut leur hoost est oderqene
Et le Prince voct sanz attendre
Jus de la montaigne descendre
Quant lun hoost lautre apecoit

Or fu le chose devisee
Et toute leur hos ordenee,
Et li Princes veut sanz attendre
Jus de le montaigne descendre.
Quant l'une hos l'autre apercoiot
Chescun sciet bien quil ny auoit
ffors decombatter sont certain
Null ne attendreloit demain

Mon Johan de Chaundos
Est venuz au Prince tantos
Et la porta sa baniere
Qui fut de soie riche & fiere

Moult doucement lui dist en sy
Sire fait il pur dieu mercy
Serui vous ay de temps passe
Et tut quant dieux mad donee
De biens ils me veignent de vous

Et bien sauez qe ie sui touz
Le vre sarray tout temps
Et sil vous semble lieu & temps
Qe ie puisse a Banier estre
Iai bien de quoi a mon maistir

Qe dieux mad done pur tenir
Ore en faitz vre plaisir
Veiez le cy ie vous present
Adoncys le Prince sanz attent
Et le Roy daun Petro sanz detri

Et le duc de Lancastre auxi
La banier li disploierent
Et p le haut li baillerent
Et li disent sanz plus retraire
Dieux vous en laist vre preu faire

Et Chaundos sa banier prist
Entre ses companions le mist
Et leur ad dit a lee chiere
Beaux seigniours Veiez ci ma baniere
Gardez le bien come le vre

Car auxi bien est vre come nre
Les companions ont fait grant ioye
Ils souleument ont pris leur voie
Et ne voillent plus attendre
Au combatre voillent entendre

Chescuns scuet bien qu'il n'y auoit
ffors de combattre; sont certain.
Null n'attendreloit demain.

Messires Johans de Chandos
Est venus au Prince tantos
Et li aporta sa baniere,
Qui fut de soie riche et fiere.

Moult doucement lui dist en sy:
'Sire,' fait il, 'pour Dieu mercy,
Servis vous ay du temps passe,
Et tout, quant que Dieux m'a done
De biens, il me viennent de vous;
Et bien savez que je sui touz
Li vostres et seray tout temps;
Et s'il vous samble lieu et temps
Que je puissé a baniere estre,
J'ai bien de quoi, du mien, mettre,
Que Dieux m'a done pour tenir.
Ore en faites vostre plaisir.
Vez le cy, je le vous presente.'
Adoncys le Princes, sanz attente,
Li Roys dans Petro, sanz detri,
Et li ducs de Lancastre auxi,

Le baniere li despoierent
Et par le hante li baillerent;
Et li disent sanz plus retraire:
'Dieux vous en laist vostre preu faire.'

Et Chandos sa baniere prist;
Entre ses companions le mist
Et leur ad dit a li chiere:
'Biaux seigniours, vez ci ma baniere.
Gardez le bien com le vostre,
Qu'auxi bien est vostre com nostre.'

Li compagnon ont fait grant ioye.
Il souleument ont pris leur voie
Et ne se voillent plus attendre;
Au combatre voillent entendre.
Celle baniere, que vous dy,  
Portoit Guillaume Alby.

Coment les Englois sont descendu a pee

\[ \text{Englois sont a pie descendu,} \]
\[ \text{Qui moulunt le coer esmiu;} \]
De gaignier et conquere honour
\[ \text{Et li Princes leur dist ce jour;} \]
\[ \text{Et li Princes fist sez priers a deu tout;} \]
Seigniours ni ad autre termine
\[ \text{'Seigniour, n' a autre termine,} \]
Vous sauez bien que de famine
\[ \text{Vous savez bien que de famine,} \]
Par defaut de vitaille sumes pres pris
Faute de vivres, soms pres pris,
\[ \text{Et veiez la noz enemys} \]
Qui de vitaille ont assetz
\[ \text{Qui de vitailles ont assez,} \]
Pain et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et fres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
Et fres, de doulce eawe et de mer,
\[ \text{Maiis il les nous faut conquester} \]
Maiis il les nous faut conquester
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
\[ \text{Que partir puissons a honour.'} \]
Adonc li Princes de valour
\[ \text{Adonc li Princes de valour;} \]
Deuers li ciel joindi ses mains
\[ \text{Et dist : ' Vrais peres soverayns,} \]
Mains et vin et pissons sales
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Et tres, de doulce eawe et de mer,} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Au fer de glayve et d'espee;} \]
\[ \text{Or faceons tant ceste journee} \]
Ad pris | t lui dist pur certain
Sire Roy a iour de huy saurez
Si iames Castille reaueretz
Aiez en dieu ferme creance
Ensement disoit sansz doutance
Ly Prince a coer sufficant
Et lauant garde va deuant

A pris et lui dist, pour certain :
'Sire Roys, aujourd'hui saurez
Se james Castille ravrez.
Aiez en Dieu ferme creance.
Ensement disoit, sansz doutance,
Ly Princes a coer souffissant.
En l'avant garde va devant

Coment le Duc de Lancastre | monp
Iohn Chaundos passerent en lauant
garde | la furent fait chiualers | le
duc conforta tres noblement sez gentz

De Lancastre lui noble ducs
Qui mout eust en lui des vertus
Et Chandos le bon Chiualer
f. 45v
De Lancastre li nobles ducs,
Qui mout eut en lui de vertus ;
Et Chandos, li bon chevalier,

ffist la Chiuialers sansz targer
Curson Priour & Eliton
Et Monp Guilliam de ffaryndon
Et ammori de Rocheward
Cely de la Mote Gaillard
ffist la chevaliers sansz targier :
Curson, Priour et Eliton,
Et Guillaume de faryndon,
Et Ainmeri de Rocheward,
Cely de la Mote Gaillard,
La eut il maint chevalier fet
Qui feurent plain de vessellage
E de noble e puissant linage
Li ducs de Lancastre enz eu champ
La eut il maint chevalier fet
Qui feurent plain de vassellage
E de noble e puissant linage,

Dist a Guilliam de Beauchamp
cel de son champ
Dist a Guillaume de Beauchamp :
'Vez la,' fist il, 'noz enemys ;
Mais, ensi m'aide Jesus Cris,
Hui me verrez bon Chiualer
Se morz ne me fait encombrer.'

Puis dist banier avant auant
Preignons dampne dieu a garant
Et face chescun son honô
Et lors li frans ducs de valour
Deuant toutz ses hômes se mist
Puis dist : 'Banieere, avant, avant !
Preignons Dampnedieu a garant,
Et face chescuns son honour.'
Et lors li frans ducs de valour
Devant touz ses homes se mist ;

Plus de Cent deuenir enfist
De lour corages plus hardis
Que deuant ne feurent ce mest auis
Plus de cent devenir en fist
De leur corage plus hardis
Que devant ne feurent, m'est vis.

*Line 3200, Chiuialers sans targer underlined in a later hand.
Line 3206 fo, marginal correction eet.
Du commencement de la gent
bataille de sez seigniours qui
feurent a la bataille oue le duc de
Lancastre de l’assemble a la bataille
de mons Bertrem coment maint
bon chiualer fuist tresbushe a terre.

Or commence bataille fier
Et prist a lever le pourriee.
Archiers traient a la volee
Plus drut que plueve n’est volee.
Li ducs de Lancastre devant
S’en va, come home vaillant;
Apres li va Thomas d’Ufford,
Et Hugh de Hastynges, le fort,
Chescuns baniere desploie;
Chescuns tenez lance baissie.
Sur le main destre fu Chandos,
Qui celi jour acquist grant los,
Et Estiephene de Cossyngtone,
Jehans Devereux, noble persone;
Et la fut ly bons Guicharz d’Angle,
Qui ne se tenez pas en l’angle;
Avoecques li ot ses deux filz
Et d’autres chevaliers de pris,
Qui bien fessoient lour devoir;
Et la estoit, sachez de voir,
Li tres nobles sires de Res.
La veist on venir tous pres
A pres, banieres et peignons,
Ensemble tous les compagnins
Chescuns tint la lance en poignie
Et fesoient grant envaie
Pour courir sur lour enemys;
Et archier traioint tous dis
Et arbalaster d’autre part,
Qui feurent ouësqt le Bastard
Mais tout a pie tant chiminerent
Que tout ensemble sen contrenrent
A la batail de Bertran
Qui moult leur fist soëffer a hau
La viessez a lassembler

3255
Ensemble de Glaynes bonter
Chescun de bien faire se payn
La ne fut ceste chose certayne
Nuif coer en monde si hardis
Que ne puis estre esbahis

3260
Pour les grantz cops qils se denoient
Des grantz bachez qils portoient
Et des espees & cotiaux
Ce ne fuist mie grantz reviaux
Car vous viessez tresbuchier

A terre maint bon chualer

Coment maint banier fut versee a
"tre a monb Ioñn Chaundos fut abatuz a
"tre a vn Castillayn cheuz s ly a lui plaia
mais p la grace de dieu il recoui a occist le
Castillayn a apres cee refiért en la
mellee & combatist moult fortment.

f. 46t

Grant fuist la noise & le fumiere
La ny ot peignon ne baniere
Que ne fut a terre versee
Tiel foitz fut celle journee

3275
Chaundos fut a terre abatuz
Par desus li estoit cheuz
Vn Castillain qui moult fuist grantz
Appellez fut Martins fferantz
Le qel durement se paynoit

3280
Coment occire le purroit
Et li plaia p la Visiere
Chaundos a treshardichiere
Vn cotel prist a son costee
Le Castillain en ad frappee

3285
Qen son corps lui a embatu
Per force le cotel agu

Qui feurent avoec le Bastart ;
Mais tout a pie tant chiminerent
Que tout ensemble s'encontrenent
A le bataille de Bertran,
Qui moult leur fist souffrir ahan.
La veüissiez a l'assambler

3255
Ensemble de glayves bouter:
Chescuns de bien faire se payne.
La ne fut, c'est chose certayne,
Nuls coers eu monde si hardis
Que ne peust estre esbahis

3260
Pour les grantz cops qu'il se denoient
Des grandes haches qu'il portoient,
Et des espées et cotiaux.
Ce ne fu mie grantz reviaux,
Car vous veissiez tresholdichier
A terre maint bon chevalier.

3270
Le Castillain mort s’estendi
Et Chaundos sur ses pées sailli
Entre ses poignés ad pris lespee
Et se refiert en la melle
Que moult estoit dure & cremeuse
Et au regarder merueillouse
Cil qui de ly estoit atayns
De la mort piust estre certains

Li Castillains mort s’estendi,
Et Chandos sur ses pées sailli.
Entre ses poins a pris l’espee
Et se refiert en la mellee,
Qui moult estoit dure et cremeuse
Et au regarder merveilleuse.
Cil qui de luy estoit atayns
De le mort peut estre certains.

Coment le Duc de Lancastre t’schiualrousemet
combatoit | se mist en tresgraunt aventure.

Et d’autre part li nobles ducs
De Lancastre, pleins de vertuz,
Si noblement se combatoit
Que chescuns s’en esmerveilloit,
En regardant sa grant proueece,
Coment par sa noble hautece
Mettoit son corps en aventure;
Car je croy qu’onques creature,
Povre ne riche, ne se mist
Cel jour si avant come il fist.
Et ly Prince n’attendoit pas.
A l’estour plus tost que le pas
S’en venoit, si sachiez sanz faille.
Du les destre de sa bataille

Coment le Banier au Roy de Nauarre t
monp Martyn de la Carre se partirent
oue le Captalt oue t ij Milles combatauntz
pur combatre au Counte Dantilt t
deuant qils purroient assembler le
Counte Dantilt sen departist.

Le banier au Roy de Nauarre
Et monp Martin de la Carre
Se partirent oue le Captalt
Qui ot le coer preu t loiail
Et le droit seigniour de la Bret

Le baniere au Roy de Navarre
Et sire Martins de la Carre
Se partirent ou le Captal,
Qui ot le coer preu et loiail,
Et le droit seigniour de Labret,

Line 3292 merueillouse, marginal correction e.
Line 3294 piust, e superscript.
Qui de bien faire sentremet
Ensemble furent bien .ij. Mift
Pur combatre au Count dantilt
Qui fuist sur la senestre main
De dan Bertran au coer certain
Mais ie vous puisse bien recorder

Quo deuant qils purroient assembler
Dantilt s’en prist a partir
Et le Captail sanz alentir
Sur ceux a pey prist son retour
Moult les travaillèrent cejour

Come gent de hardi corage
Se defendoient p vasselage
A senestre dautre costee
Du Prince ceste veritee
Pcy le seigniour de Cisceon

Et mone Thomas de felleeton
Et mone Gautier Hewet
Qui souent pler de ly fait
Cils venoient pur visiter
Lauant garde & pur conforter

Coment lui tsnoble Prince venoit oue
sa graunt bataille pur combatre la
reregarde fuist comandee destre a vn
petit moutaigne d deuers les chualx
armez la fuist le Roy de Mayogre
plusieurs seigniours la bataille commence
de tous partiez combattirent tanqe
les Espaignardes sen fuirent.

Lors senforce li ferrei
Et fors fuit lui abatis

Car lui frank Prince daquitaire
Tout sa grant bataille amayne
Na nauoit cely qui se faigne.

Une bien petite moutaigne
Avoit desoubz le main senestre
La ot on comande a yestre

Lors s’enforce li feréis
Et fors fu li abateis,
Car li frans Princes d’Aquitaine
Toute sa grant bataille amayne :
La n’avoit cely qui se faigne.

Line 3331, Hewet underlined in a later hand.
Line 3339 Na, marginal correction la.
La reregarde sur le les
Par deuers les chialx armez
La fuit de Maiogre le Roy
Que pas oblier ie ne doi,
Et le preu conte darmynak
Et le seigniour de Sauerak
Monp Berard de la Bret
Et Bertrukat qui fu en het
De combatre | & entalentes
Et ce ne vous ay pas nomez
Monp Hugh de Caluerlee
Pur quoy vous serroit destobee
La matier | & plus alongiée
Moult fui la bataille enforcie
Qui comence de toutz partz
Archigaies & launces & dartz
Lanceoient Esaignardz p force
Chescun de bien faire senforce
Car plus drut traioient archier
Que ne soit pluine en temps dyuer
Chialx & hómes lour bleseoient
Et les Espaignardz bien pcoieont
Que plus ne purroient endurer
Les chialx prirent a tourner
Et la fuite de sont mys
Quant les vist li bastard Henris
En ly nauoit que coreucier
P trois foitz les fist realer
Endisant seigniours aidez moy
Pur dieu car vous maizez fait Roy
Et si maizez fait seurement
De moy aider loialment
Mais sa pole rien ne vaut
Car toutz jours renforce lassaut.

Coment le Bastard sen fui & les Espaignaldes
furent descomfitz | & apres ce les ffrancois
se combatirent & furent auxi descomfitz | & monp
Bartrem & plusieurs seigniours & chialers furent
pris & gentz darmes mortz | & des englois le p"}

de fferers fuist occis amesme cel bataille.
Quoi voiliez vous que je vous dye?
Il n’avoit en la compagnie
Du Prince home tant fust petitiz
Qui ne fut bien auxi hardiz
Et auxi fiers come vn lion
Home ne poet comparisoñ
faire de Olyuer tRolant
Espaignardz se tournoint fuyant

Qui ne fut bien auxi hardiz
Et auxi fiers come un lion:
On ne poet pas comparison
faire d’Olyvier et Rolant.
Espaignart se tournoint fuyant,
Chescuns ses frains abandonnez.

Quoi voiliez vous que je vous dye?
Il n’avoit en la compagnie
Du Prince home tant fust petitiz
Qui ne fut bien auxi hardiz
Et auxi fiers come vn lion
Home ne poet comparisoñ
faire de Olyuer tRolant
Espaignardz se tournoint fuyant

Lors commence li esfortz
Et la veissiez le pee taillie
Occire destoch t detaille
Luy Bastard sen fuit tut vn val
Mais en coer sont en estal

Je
Et
Luy
Et
Oues(5
Li
Dodrehem
Et
Li
Monp
Conte
Illoec
En
Car
Mais
Luy
ffrancois
Occire
Et
Ou
Mais
Dolantz
Espaignardz
Et
Qui
Du
Chescun
II
104
fut
nauoit
ne
plusours
pour
des
la
si
la
auxi
la
moult
ne
Beghes
Bastard
en
comence
fuyer
Et
Olyuer|

Je
Et
Luy
Et
Oues(5
Li
Dodrehem
Et
Li
Monp
Conte
Illoec
En
Car
Mais
Luy
ffrancois
Occire
Et
Ou
Mais
Dolantz
Espaignardz
Et
Qui
Du
Chescun
II
104
fut
nauoit
ne
plusours
pour
des
la
si
la
auxi
la
moult
ne
Beghes
Bastard
en
comence
fuyer
Et
Olyuer|

Lors commence li esfortz
Et la veissiez le pietaille
Occire d’estoch et de taille.
Li Bastarz s’en fuit tout un val.
Mais encore sont en estal

ffrancois et Bretons et Normanz;
Mais petit dura leur beubantz,
Car moût tost feurent desconfi;
Et se sachiez, trestout de fi,
Qu’on crioit la a haute gorge

En maint lieu ‘Guyane! seint George!’
Illoec fu pris sires Bertrans
Et li Mareschañ sufficiantz
D’Odrehem, qui tant fust hardiz,
Et uns conte qui eut grant pris,
Conte de Dene fu nomez.

Li Conte Sausnes n’en doutes,
Y fu pris, qui fu capitanes,
Avoec le Beghe de Vellaine,
Monseignour Jehan de Neofville

Et des autres plus de ij. Mille
Et pur faire juste report
Luy Beghes de Villiers fut mort
Et plusours autres dont de noun
Je ne say faire mencionue

Line 3402 la, marginal correction i.
Line 3412, Villiers underlined in a later hand.
Mais li reportez y fuist tenuz
Cink cent home d'armes ou plus
Morirent en la piece de terre
Ou hôme eust mayn a mayn a feare
Auxi de la pte des Englois

Morust vn chialer pœes
Ce fut le droit seignior de serriers
Li glorious dieux si seint piers
Eit les almes des trespasses
Seignior pur dieu ore entendes

De la place ou lagrant bataille estoit de
la chase apres la bataille coment les
Espaignardes plus de deux Mift se noieret
en vne Riuere environ vii. M. vii. C. furêt
mortz | issint que leawe ent fut vermaille | les
englois entrèrent en la ville | la furent
psoners pris | le Prnce qui se tenoit oue sa
baniere leue fuist molt reioiouse.

La place ou hôme combati
Estoit sur vn beal palnie ioly
Ou il neust arbre ne buysson
Dune grant lenge environ
Solonc vn beal Riuere

Que molt estoit si radde si fiere
Le quel fist ceo iour de maus
Sur Castillains car li enchaus
Dusq a la Riuere dura
Plus de deux Mift en ynoia

Deuant Nazareth sur le pont
Vous face assavoir que mont
fut li enchace pillouse si tiers
La veissiez vous Chialers
De paour en leawe fallir

Et lun surltre morir
Et si dist hôm p grant meruaille
Que la Riuere en fut vermeille
Du sank que issoit hors de corps
Des hômes si des Chialx mortz

Le placé ou on combati
Estoit sur un bel plain joly,
Ou il n'eut arbre ne buisson
D'une grande lieue environ,
Selonc une bele riviere,
Qui molt estoit et rade et fiere,
Lequell fist ce jour de maus
Sur Castillains, car li enchaus
Dusqu'a le riviere dura.
Plus de deux mille en y noia.
Devant Nazares sur le pont
Vous fac assavoir que fu mont
Li enchaux perilleus et fiere.
La veissiez vous chevaliers
De paour en l'eawe saillir
Et li uns sur l'autre mourir;
Et se dist on par grant merveille
Que la riviere en fu vermeille
Du sank qui issoit hors des corps
Des homes et des chevallx morz.
3445 Tant fut grantz la disconforture
    Que ieo croy qu'enques creature
    Ne pooit enques auoir vewe
    Le pil, si dieux mauoye
3450 La nombre ent fuy reporte
    Environ vii. Milli vii. Centz
    Et si vous diçois bien que les gentz
    Du prince entrerent in la ville
3455 Et la fut pris en une Cave
    Lui grant mestre de Calletraue
    Et le Priour de seint John
    Qui moult leur fist goeffir dahan,
3460 Cils deux estoient sans destri
    Retrait p deck costees vn haut mure
    La ne furent pas anseure
    Car gentz darmes sus se mentoient
3465 Mais humblement se viendrent rendre
    Car ne les oserent attendre
    Ensi feurent ils mortz t pris
    Dont tres fortement fut reioiz
3470 Le quel se tenoit sur les champs
    Et ot sa banier leueuc
    Ou sa gent se fut reassemble
    Tant fu grantz la desconfiture
    Que je croy qu'enques creature
    Ne pooit onc avoir veiue
    Le pareille, se Dieux m'aiuwe :
    Tant fu grises le mortalite,
    Li nombres en fu reportez
    Environ vii. mille et vii. cenz ;
    Et se vous di bien que les genz
    Du Prince entrerent en le ville.
    La en eut de morz plus de mille ;
    Et la fu pris en une cave
    Li grantz mestres de Calletrave,
    Et li Priours de Seint Jehan,
    Qui moult leur fist souffrir d'ahan,
    Li mestres de seint Jake auxi.
    Cil doi estoient sans detri
    Retrait par d'encoste un haut mur ;
    La ne furent pas asseuir,
    Car genz d'armes sus se mettoient
    Qui la assaillir les voloient,
    Mais humblement se vinrent rendre,
    Car ne les oserent attendre.
    Ensi feurent il mort et pris,
    Dont tres fortement fu resjoiz
    Li tres nobles Princes vaillantz,
    Liqueus se tenoit sur les camps
    Et ot sa baniere leueuc
    Ou sa gent se fut rassamblee.

Du temps ant ceste bataille estoit.

Seigniour le temps que ie vous dy
    Ce fut droit p vn samady
3475 Trois iours droit en moys daueriit
    Que tiel doule oisselet gentill
    Preignent a refaire leur chantz
    Per prees t bois t p champs
3480 Deuant Nazarz le grant bataille
    Seigniour le tamps que je vous dy
    Ce fut droit par un samedy
    Trois jours droit eu moys d'averil
    Que cil doule oisselet gentil
    Prendent a refaire leur chantz
    Par prees, par bois et par champs.
    En celuy tamps fut, tout sans faille,
    Devant Nazres le grant bataille

Line 3453, a of la in rasura.
Coment le Prince se logea a noet oue sez gentz oue le Bastarde fuist logie la noet deuant la menerent gnt deduit gcioient dieu la trouverent vitailles assetz gnt pleintee de richesse.

Tout ensi fui come oy auez
En cel noet fut hostellez
Lui Prince droit en logement
Ou lui Roy Henri proprement

Avoit este logiez la nuyt
Illoec menoient grant deduyt
Et gracioient dieu le pier
Le filz | la benoite mier
De la grace quil lour ad fait

Car bien sachez tout entrefeats
Que la trouverent vin et pain
Toutz les loges ent furent plain
Cofres vessel or et argent
Dont il pleust bien a mainte gent.

Coment le Roy Daun Petre est venuz au Prince
ly enmercia de ce qil auoit fait pur luy
disoit au Prince coment il voloit prendre vengeaunce de ceux qui auoient estee contre ly le noble Prince a ce respoindit lui disoit son sage auis.

Luy Roy daun Petre est venuz
Au Prince qui moult fui ses durez
Et lui ad dit nire cosin chier
Je vous doy bien remercier
Car a jour de huy mauez fit tant
Que iames jour de mon Viuant
Je ne le purray desuerir
Sire fit il vre pleisir
Merciez dieu noun pas moy

Li Roys dans Petro est venuz
Au Prince, qui moult fu ses druz,
Et lui a dit : 'No cousin chier,
Je vous doy bien remercier,
Car au jour d'huy m'avez fait tant
Que james jour de mon vivant
Je ne le pourray deservir.'
'Sire,' fit il, 'vostre pleisir,
Merciez Dieu et non pas moy,

Line 3482, letter erased after l of cel.
Line 3495, c erased after n of daun.
Car p la foy qe vous doy
Dieux lad fait t noun mie nous
Sig nous denous estre touz
En volunte de li prier
Merci t de lui regracier
Daun Petre dist qil disoit voir
Et de ce avoit bon voilloir
Mais il voilieit prendre vengeance
Des traitoures qui p puissance
Lui ont fait tant de mal sentier
Lors dist le Prince sanz mentir:

Coment le Prince conceilla le Roy Petre
de perdoner as ceux qui auoient estee
encontre lui t le Roy Daun Petre luy
ignite forspris vn qui avoit a noun
Gome Garilles t le quel fuit trayne
pmy loost t la goulle trenche.

Sire Roy donez moi vn don
Je vous pri, se vous semble bon.
Dist lui Roy Petro las pur quoy
Dist li Roys Petro: 'Las! pour quoy,
Sire, demandez vous a moy?
Tout est vtre ce que je ay'
Lors dist li Princes sanz delay:
'Sire, du vostre ne voille rien.
Miser je vous conseille pour bien,
S'estre volez Rois de Castelle,
Que par tout mandez le nouvel
Que ottroie avez le don
De donner a touz ciaux pardon
Qui ont encontre vous este;
Et se par male volente
Et par mauveus conseil auxi
Ont este o le Roi Henry
D'ore en avant lour pardonez,
Mais que de bones volentez
Il veignent merci vous prier.'
Li Rois dans Petro ottroier
Le voet mais ce est a grant payne.
Puis dist au Prince Daquitayne
Beau cosin ie le vous ot troie
fforsq dun | mais ne ne vorroie
Dauoir trestont le de Siuylle

3540 Pur deporter Gomes Garille
Car certes ce est le traitour
Qui plus mad fait de deshonour
Et li Prince li dist ensi
ffeitez vre voiller de luy

3545 Et les autres touz pdonez
Seuches frere au Bastard fut amenesz
Et plusieurs autres prisoners
Qui il pdona voluntiers

3550 Pur le Prince % pur sa priere
Et lors se retourna arere
Tout droit | ou il estoit logiez
Et illoeqs fut apparaillez

Gome Garilles % Trayn li fisst hôme
Et trenched la goule desoubz le mentôn

3555 Adonqes deuant tout la gent
Pur quoy ferroy ie vn parlement
De la matière plus lontayne
Le Prince le lundi pschayne

Coment le Prince % le Roi Petre sen depa-
tirent de Naddrres pdoners Burghes % les
noueU sen alerent a touz parties.

De deuant Naddrres se party
3560 Et le Roi daun Petro auxi
Per deuers Burhes chiminerent
Et lors les nouvelles alerent
Per Espaigne de touz partz
Qe disconfitz fut li Bastardz

De devant Naddrres se party
Et li Rois dans Petro auxi.
Par devers Burhes chiminerent ;
Et lors les nouvelles alerent
Par Espaigne de toutes parz
Que desconiz fu li Bastardz.

Coment la fême du Bastarde estoit
a Burghes % quant elle aouoit oy les
nouelles elle s'en fui moult dolent
en Aragon % fist sez ꜯntz % dolorousez

Line 3561 Burhes, g added in the margin.
compléntes de la fortune | après ce comenda le Prince mout noblement
| le Prince sevint loger a Bernesques.

A Burghes estoit sa moulle
Que neust myc temps detergier
Si tost qelle la nouelle saoit
Sen ala plus tost qelle pooit
Et ce qelle pooit porter

De bien que elle pooit trusser
Tant chimina t jour nuit
Ouesq ceux qui li font conduite
Que Arragon est venue
Moulle durement fut esperdue.

De bien que elle pooit trusser
Du bien qu'elle pooit trusser.

De tout le monde et le meillurr,
Et que tout le monde meistrie.'
Ensi dist le dame jolie
Qui se compleindoit en ses ditz.
Et li nobles Princes de pris
S'en vint a Benesques logier,
Et li Roys Petre a chevauchier
Coment le Roi Petre sen chiuacha deuant Burghes & les Burgeises venoient encontre lui | & ly receuierent moult belement & apres ceo le Prince venoit a Burghes & la demorra per vn moys | & le Roi Petre manda p tout Espaigne | & lours souvnt venuz les gentz de touz partiez | & lui prierei nticy i illes pdona.

Se prist deuant Burghes tut droit
Encontre de li la endroit
Vindrent li riche Burgeois
Qui lui disoient bien veignez Rois
Lors fust a Burghes receuz
Et ly Prince y est venuz

Apres le terme de vi. iours
Et a Burghes fut ly sojours
Bien le terme dun Mois passe
Per tout Espaigne ad home d
Si qil niad Cite ne ville

Et a Tollette & Seuille
A Cordevalle & a Lion
Per tout le Roialme enuirōn
Que chescun venist sanz detry
Au Roy Petro prier mercy

Lors sont de touz partz venu
Lui estranges & lui conu
Et li Roy touz lour pdona
Seigniour ne vous menteray ia

Se prist devant Burghes tout droit.
Encontre de li, la endroit,
S'en vinrent li riche bourgeois,
Qui lui disoient: ‘Bien veigniez, Rois’
Lors fu a Burghes receûiz,
Et ly Princes y est venuz

Apres le terme de vi jours;
Et a Burghes fut ly sojours
Bien le terme d’un mois passe.
Par tout Espaigne a on mande,
Si qu'il n'i a cite ne ville,

Et a Toule et a Seville,
A Cordeval et a Lion,
Par tout le roialme environ,
Que chescuns venist sanz detry
Au Roi Petro prier mercy.

Lors sont de toutes parz venu
Li estrâne et li conei,
Et li Roys touz lour pardona.
Seigniour, ne vous menteray ja,

Coment le Prince tenoit son jugement deuant Burghes | & tout Espaigne fust a sa ordinance | & la vint fferantes de Castres | & le Prince ly fist qnt honoure | le festoia moult noblement | & la soiourna le Prince vii. mois | & plus q illoeques furent les serenemes renouelles.

Luy Prince tient certainement
Deuant Burghes son Jugement

Li Princes tint certainement
Devant Burghes son jugement
Et tient son gage de bataille
Si qu'on pouoit dire sansz faille
Que en Espaigne ot tel puissance
Que tout fut a son ordinance
La vint de Castres dans siarranz,
Qui moust estoit preus et vaillanz.
Li Princes moust le festoia
Et moust grant honour li porta.
A Burghes, la cite garnie,
Ly Princes et sa baronie
Sojournerent vij. mois ou plus;
Et la fut lour conseilt tenuz
Et la feurent renouellee
Li serement qu'eurent iuree,

Coment le Roy Petre sen ala deuers
Seuille pur purchacer or et argent pur
paier au noble Prince et sa gent
le noble Prince lattendi entour la
vale Dolif | p vi mois et sez gentz soeffrent
giint duretee per defaute de vitaille.

Et que le Roy daun Petro droit
Deuers sa ville sen irroit
Pur purchacer or et argent
Pur paier le Prince et sa gent
Et li Prince deuoit attendre,
Le Roy dan Petre, au voir entendre,
Au Val d'Olif la entour,
Et ordena un certain jour
Qu'il devoit a ly retourner.
Mais a verite recorder
Ly Prince latendi vj. mois,
Don't moust endura de destoys
Son os, et de soif et de fain,
Par defaute de vin et pain.
Un proverbe ay oj' noncier,
Qu'on doit pour sa femme tencier,
Et pour sa viande combatre.
Seigniour, il ne fait nul esbatre,

Line 3627 festoia, f omitted and superscript.
Qui niad ben mangez assetz
Dont il yaouoit assetz
Qui ne mageoient pas de pain
Touz foitz qils anoiyent fain
Et si noisoiyent sans mentir
Villes ne Chastelx assailler
Car le Prince lauoiyent defendu
Mais si home les deust auoir pendu
Lour faloiit il fiare p force
Car grant fayme les enforce
Et li Prince meismement
Prist haumousque primerment
Et fut a Medismes de camp
Et dehà tant sur le camp
Qe de la Ville ot la vitaille
Ou liuerec lour eust la bataille
Auxi tout la gnde compagnie
Plusours en prisen en Espaigne
Mais nepquant pur veritee
Moult ils soefferent de duretee
Toutdiz le Roy Petro attendant
Quant ils eurent defence tant
Et le jour estoit ja passez
Qil deuoit estre retournez

Qui n’a beu et mangie asseiz:
Adont il y avoit asseiz
Qui ne mageoient pas de pain
Toutes fois qu’il avoient fain,
Et se n’osoient, sans mentir,
Villes ne chastiaux assaillir,
Car li Princes l’eut defendu ;
Maiys s’on les deust avoir pendu
Lour faloiit il fiare par force,
Car grant famine les enforce.
Et li Princes meismement
Prist Haumousque premierment
Et fu a Medismes de Camp,
Et demoura tant sur le camp
Que de le ville ot le vitaille,
Ou livre lour eust bataille :
Auxi toute le Grant Companiie
Plusours en prisen en Espaigne.
Mais nepquant pour verite
Moult il souffrirent de dure
Touz dis le Roy Petro attendant.
Quant il eurent demoure tant
Et li jours estoit ja passez
Qu’il devoit estre retournez,

Coment le Roi Petre enuoia sez
Ires au Prince s ly rendist grantz
mercies \& lui excusa de sa painetà
\& le noble Prince s ly enuoia vne lîè.

Une lettre au Prince manda,
De qui le tenor devisa
Qu’il li rendoit moult de mercy
De ce qu’il l’avoient servi,
Car Roys fut de toute Castelle,
Et chescuns son seigniour l’appelle ;
Mais sa gent lui ont respondu
Sachiez, li grant et li menu,
Qu’il ne pourroit avoir argent
S’il ne fesoit voidier sa gent ;
Et pour tant le Prince prioit,
Coment le Prince prist son purpǒs de retournier en Acquitaigne car plusiours disoients que le Bastard yestoit entrez et fist gant damage

t le Prince tant chiuacha qu'il vint a la vale de Sorie & en cel temps Chaundos conceilla ove le conceil Daragoune.

A quoy faire vous controioie

La matiere & alongeroie
Tant vous en purroy conter
Que bien vous purroy tasner
Luy Prince ad bien apecu
Que le Roy Petro ne fu

Pas si foiaux come il quidoit
Lors dist qil sen retourneroit
Car plusieurs disoient ensi
Auxi qe le Bastard Henri
Estoi entrez en Aquitaine

Et moult fesoit soeffrir de paine
A commun peole du pais
Dont le Prince fut moult maris
Lors prist le Prince son retour
De Madregay sans nul sejoi

Tant iour & noet ad chiuache
Qil vient en vale de Sorye
Ou il soloumna bien vn mois
Et Chaundos conseilla en trois

A quoy faire vous controioie
Le matere et alongeroie?
Tant vous en pourroy conter
Que bien vous pourroye taner.
Li Princes a bien aperceu
Que li Roys dans Petro ne fu

Pas si foiaux come il quidoit.
Lors dist qu'il s'en retourneroit,
Car plusieurs disoient ensi
Auxi, que le Bastart Henri
Estoi entrez en Aquitaine,

Et moult fesoit soffrir de paine
Au comun peole du pais,
Dont li Princes fut moult maris.
Lors prist li Princes son retour
De Madregay sans nul sejoi.

Tant iour et noet a chevauchié
Que il vint eu val de Sorye
Ou il sojoumna bien un mois.
Et Chandos conseilla entroes

Line 3707 Car, c corrected out of q; t of disoient almost erased.
Coment Chaundos s' montrait Martin de la Carre venoit au Roy de Nauarre et purca-cherent le passage du Prince. Et le Prince se parti de la vale de Sorie et prist sa voie pmy Nauarre et le Roy de Nauarre ly conduist outre le paas et la prirent congie conge et le Prince vient a Bayone et la fuist p v · jours en grauntz reueaux et les Burgeois festoient mout grand et noblement.

Mais pur la matiere abregger
Chaundos se vint sans atargier
Per deuers le Roy de Nauarre
Il et daun Martin de la Carre

Purchacerent tant que le Roys
De Nauerre qui fut courteys
Lessa le Prince passer
Et li Prince sanz arestes
Septi de vale de soire

Pmy Nauarre ad quillie
Sa voie sans prendre soijour
Lui Roi qui mout fui plain donô
Ly Prince grant honour fesoit
Car toutz les jours li enuoioit

Vin et vitaille aëgt plente
Pmy Nauarre li ad amesnee
Si conduist tut outre le paas
Apres ne vous menteray pas
A seint Iohn du pee des portz

ffestierent p grantz desportz
Dilloeqs ensemble congie prirent
Doucemcnt se deptirent
Lor vient le Prince a Baione
Dont grant joie et mainte psone,
Nobement les nobles Burgeois

Mais pour le matiere abregier
Chandos s'en vint sans atargier
Par devers le Roy de Navarre.
Il et dans Martins de la Carre
Pourchacierent tant que li Roys
De Naverre, qui fut courteys,
Lessa le Prince repasser.
Et li Princes sanz arestes
Se parti du val de Sorie ;
Parmy Navarre a acoecillle
Sa voie sanz prendre soijour.
Li Roys, qui mout fu plains d'onour
Au Prince grant honour fesoit,
Car toutz les jours li envoiioit
Vin et vitaille a grant plente.
Parmy Navarre l'a mene,
Sil conduist tout outre le pas.
Apres, ne vous menteray pas,
A Scint Jehan du Pie des Porz
ffestierent par granz deporz.
Illoec ensemble congie prirent
Doucemcnt et se departirent.
Lor vint li Princes a Baione,
Dont grant joie et mainte persone.
Noblement li noble bourgeois

Line 3727 passer, re added in the margin.
Line 3736 omitted and inserted after line 3752.
The Black Prince

Coment le Prince sen est partiz de Bayon

De Baione s’est departiz
Lui Prince plus nest alentiz,
Tanqu’il est a Bourdiaux venuz.
Noblement y fu receuiz
A croys et a processions,
Et trestout li religious
A l’encontre de li venoient.
Moult noblement le festoioient
En loant et graciant Dieu.
Lors descendii a Seint Andrieu.
La Princesse vint contre ly,
Qui fist aporter avoec ly
Edouwart son filz, le premier.
Les dames et li chevalier
Pour li festoier y venoient,
Et moult grant joie demenoient.
Moult doucement s’entrecollerent,
Ensemble quant il s’encontrerent.
Ly Princes, qui ot coer gentil,
Baisa sa moullier et son fil.
Dusqu’a l’ostel a pie s’en vinrent
Ensemble par les mains se tenirent.

Coment le Prince dema a Burdeaux

en gent ioie deduit chescun sen
resioie de sa venue per tout le pais daqtaigne
chescune festoia moult noblement a son amy.

Line 3749 Burdeaux, a omitted and superscript.
THE BLACK PRINCE 117

A quoi faire vous mentiroye
A Burdeaux fesoit home tiel ioie
3775 Que chescun se resoiissoit
De Prince qi venuz estoit
Et cils qe furent ouesq ly
Chescon festoist son amy
Höme pooit sauoir qe cell nuit
3780 fisist home en maint lieu grant deduit
Par tout le pais daquitaine
De ce est bien chose cetaine
Pur venier a conclusion
Ore vous ai ie fet mention
3785 Du Prince | qi de son gra voiage
Et de son tresnoble baronage
Pdones moy si mai iai dit
Car de rien ne vous ay mentit

A quoi faire vous mentiroye ?
A Bourdiaux fesoit on tel joye
Que chescuns se resjoissoit
Du Prince, qui venuz estoit,
Et ciaux qui furen avoec ly.
Chescuns festioit son amy.
On poet savoir que celle nuit
fisist on en maint lieu grant deduit
Par tout le pais d’Aquitaine,
De ce est bien chose certaine.
Pur venir a conclusiön,
Or vous ai je fet mención,
Du Prince et de son grant voiage,
Et de son tresnoble barnage,
Pardones moy se mal j’ai dit
Car de rien ne vous ay mentit.

Coment le Prince après ce qil auoit
démée vn temps a Burdeaux fisit
assemble a seint Milion touz les
nobles de tout la principaltee mout
debonairement si bien ceux qui auoient
estee ouesq sa compaigne en sa absence
com ceux qi auoient estee ouesq ly en
Espaigne | les festoia mout noble-
ment | grauntz douzns leur dona | t
lors chescun se parti | vs soun hosteille.

A Burdeaux demfa vn temps
3790 Et bien se tenoit pur contemps
De ses gentz qi de son pais
Car moult li auoit ressoez
Puis fis en bien contre faisoñ
Assembler a seint Milion
3795 De tout sa principaltee
Les nobles | ce fut veritee
Countes | Barons | Euesqes platzt
La viendrent ils a grant solas
Et ly Prince debonairement
3800 Les mercia moult humblement
Ceux qui ouescs sa compaigne
furent il ouescs ly en Espaigne,
Et ceux qui demore estoient
Quils la pais gardes auoient

3805 Et lour dist beaux seigniors p foi
De tout mon coer aymer vous doi
Car vous mauez tres bien serui
De bon coer vous enmerci
Moult noblement les estoia

3810 Et moult beal doner lour dona
Or et argent et riches joiaux
Et cils en fesoient grantz reueaux
De noble Prince se partirent
Vers lours hostelx lour chemin prirent.

Ciaux qui ouescq sa compaigne
furent, avoc ly en Espaigne,
Et ciaux qui demore estoient,
Qui le pais garde avoient ;
Et lour dist : 'Biaux seigniors, par foi, 3805
De tout mon coeur aymer vous doi,
Car vous m'avez tres bien servi.
De bon coeur vous en remerci.'
Moult noblement les festoia
Et moult de biaux dons lour dona,
Or, argent, et riches joiaux,
Et cils en fesoient grantz reviaux.
Du noble Prince se partirent ;
Vers lours hostelx lour chemin prirent.

Comment le Prince se vint a
Anguyleme & la luy survint
sa maladie & adonques
comenceroient fauxetees & traisons
entre les seigniors du pais car ils sacorderent entre eux de commencer guerre cont le Pnce.

3815 Assetz tost apres ce avint
Qu'a Anguyleme logier vient
Lui noble Prince daquitaine
Et la c'est bien chose certaine

3820 Li comencea la maladie
Qui puis dura tout sa vie,
Dont fut damage & pitee
Adonques comencea fauxetee
Et traioen a gouverner
Ciaux qui le devoient aymer,

3825 Car cil qu'il tenoit pour amis
Adonques feurent ses enemis
Mais ce nest mie grant merveille
Car l'enemy qui touz lours veille
Plus tost greuera vn preudhome
Que un mauveis, ce est le some ;

3830 Que vn manneis cest la some
Et pur ce, si tost qu'il home sanoit
Que li noble Prince estoit

Line 3825 qil, 1 omitted and superscript.
Malades en pil de mort,  
Ses enemis furent dacort  
3835 De la guerre recomencier  
Si commencerent a traitier  
A ceux qils sauoiens de fit  
Qils estoient si enemit  

Malades, en peril de mort,  
Si enemi furent d'acort  
De le guerre recomencier ;  
Si commencerent a traitier  
A ciux qu'il savoient, de fi,  
Qu'il estoient si enemi.

Comment la guerre fut recomencée  
entre ffraunce & Engleterre & adonques  
villes & Citees & plusieurs seigniours  
du pais se tournerent encontre le Prince |  
& se trahierent vers le Roy de fhraunce  
come a lour seigniour soulaune pur  
appeler le Prince en sa Court endiszantz  
ql lour auoit fait gnt tort.

Adonques recomencea la guerre  
Entre ffrage & Engleterre  
Et lors villes & Citees  
Se tournerent c'est verites  
Et plusieurs Countees & Barons  
Dont ie ne doi celer les nouns  
Arminak | Lisle | & Pieregos  
Labret Corages de briefs motz  
Toutz relinquèrent a vn iour  
Le Prince lour liege seigniour  
Pur ce qe malades estoit  
Et qe aider plus se pooit  
Adonques feurent ils tut dacord  
Sicome ie oy em mon record  
Que du Prince sexpelleroiens  
Et qe guerre commenceroient

Ly Conte Darminak premiers  
Et plente autres chevaliers  
Se trahiens vers le Roy de ffrage  
Et ly dirent sanz deminance  
Qils volloient appeller  
En sa court | & eux retourner  
Endiszantq ce le Prince tort  
Lour fesoit | traualloint fort  

Adonc recomencea le guerre  
Entre ffrage et Engleterre,  
Et lores villes et cites  
Se tournerent, c'est verites,  
Et plusieurs contes et barons,  
Dont je ne doi celer les nons :  
Arminak, Lisle et Pieregos,  
Labret, Corages de bries moz,  
Tout reloquirenent a un jour  
Le Prince, lour lige seignour,  
Pur ce que malades estoit,  
Et qu'aider plus se pooit.  
Adonc feurent il tout d'acort,  
Si come j'oy em mon recort,  
Que du Prince s'apelleroiens  
Et que guerre commenceroient.  
Ly conte d'Arminak premiers  
Et plente d'autres chevaliers  
Se traiissent vers le Roy de ffrage,  
Et ly dirent sanz demorance  
Que il volloient appeller  
En sa court et yaux retourner,  
En disant que li Princes tort  
Lour fesoit et travaulloint fort.

Line 3843 plusours, r ommitted and superscript.
Coment le Roy de ffrance appella
son ã nd conseil | ã leur moustra
lentent du Counte Darmynak ã § ce
le Roy de ffrance enuoia ï le Prince
de venir ã respondre en son parlement
dount le noble Prince fuist corouciez.

Coment le Prince remanda au Roy de ffrance
ï aph ce comencea guerre en Aquitaigne.

Ly Rois de ffrance en appella
Son grant conseil et assambla,
Et leur moustra toute l'entente
Coment cil d'Arminak le temp te
De la guerre recomencier :
Dont se pristrent a conseiller,
Et li consiauz fut sur ce point,
De ce ne vous menteray point,
Qu'il firent le Prince mander
Que il venist, sanz arestier,
Respondre en son plein parlement
Encontre cel appellement.
Ly Princes, qui malades fu,
Quant il ot le fait entendu,
Moult durement fut corouciez.
Adonc s'est de son lit dreciez
Et a dit : 'Biau seigniour, par fo,
Avis m'est, a ce que je voi,
Que ffrancois me tienent pour mort ;
Mais, se Dieux me doint vrai confort,
Se de ce lit lever me puis
Encor lour ferai moult d'anuys,
Car Dieux scet bien que sanz bon droit
Se pleindent de moy ore en droit.'

Ly Rois de ffrance en appella
Son grant conseil et assambla,
Et leur moustra toute l'entente
Coment cil d'Arminak le temp te
De la guerre recomencier :
Dont se pristrent a conseiller,
Et li consiauz fut sur ce point,
De ce ne vous menteray point,
Qu'il firent le Prince mander
Que il venist, sanz arestier,
Respondre en son plein parlement
Encontre cel appellement.
Ly Princes, qui malades fu,
Quant il ot le fait entendu,
Moult durement fut corouciez.
Adonc s'est de son lit dreciez
Et a dit : 'Biau seigniour, par fo,
Avis m'est, a ce que je voi,
Que ffrancois me tienent pour mort ;
Mais, se Dieux me doint vrai confort,
Se de ce lit lever me puis
Encor lour ferai moult d'anuys,
Car Dieux scet bien que sanz bon droit
Se pleindent de moy ore en droit.'
Il irroit a son mandement
Si dieux li donast saunte & vie
Il tot sua compaignie

3895 Le bacinet armee au chief
Pur li defendre de meschief
Ensi ceste bien chose certaine
Comencea guerre en Acquitaine
Et lors fist tous les compagnous

3900 Mettre en tous les garisons
La veissez guerre mortele
Et en plusieurs lieux moul cruele
Les freres furent contre le frere
Et les fils contre le pere

3905 Chesuns d'eaux se ptie tenoit
A quel part qe meultz li plesoit
Mais en temps qe ie vous dié
Ly noble Prince moult pdi
Car trisiens & faustees

3910 Regnoient la de tous costeez
Homme ne saoient en qui faiance
Avoir si le verray dieux mauance
Mais ne pur quant se confortoit
Lui Prince au mulz quil pooit

En Engleterre fust mander
Socours pur li reconforter
Et li tresnoble Roy son pier
Li enuoia Esmond son frere
Conte de Cantebrigge de renon

3915 En Engleterre fust mander
Socours | pur li reconforter
Et li tresnoble Roy son pier
Li enuoia Esmond son frere
Conte de Cantebrigge de renon

3920 Qui eust le coer fier come lion
Cil de Pembrok auxi
Qui eust le coer preu & hardi
Et auoient en leur compagnie
Mault de noble chevalerie

3925 Cils deux viendraient en le fronten
Et mault fesoient eux chier
Bourdielle prirent p assaut,
Dont eurent le coer leez & baut
Et la fut Chualer le Conte

3930 De Pembrok dont hōme fist counte
Puis mistrent en court faire
Siege a la Roche Suriōn
Et Chaundos fut a Mont Auben
Qui illoeqs se meintenoit bien

3935 Que vous purroi ie recorder
Pur la matier destouber
De toutz parz fu la fortune
En Acquitaine horibble & frune
La Roche Suriōn fut pris

3940 De Cantebrigge & son empris
Mais ensi qil pleas a celly
Verrai dieux qui vnges ne menty
Monf James de Audelee
Qui mault fui de grant renomée

3945 Morust illoques de maladie
Dont dolanz fu nendoutez mye
Li tresnoble Prince de pris
Car mault li fui Jamys amys
Et puis gaires ne demora

3950 Et Chaundos auxi trespassa
Au pont de Lusak bien sauez
Dont fui damage et piteez
Car mault en estoit esmays
Ly Prince qui mault fui maris

3955 Mais hōme voit sovent auvenir
Qe quant il doit mys a venir
Li meschief apres lautre vient
Beau cop des loitz ensi auyent

Coment la Roche Suryōn fuist pris p le
Counte de Cantebrigge & Audel & Chaundos tspassent.
Toutz les meschiefs ensi sourdoient
Lun apres l’autre venoient
A noble Prince qui gisoit
En lit ou malades estoit
Mais de tout ce gracioit Dieu
Et disoit : ‘Tout avra son lieu ;
Se de ci lever me pooye,
Bien la vengeance en prenderoye.’

Coment les ffrancois se reioissent moul
de la malaie du Prince à de la mort de
Chaundos à Audele à adonqes le Roy de ffranceent manda nouvelles a monsieur Bartrem de
Claykyn en Espayne à qil deust
retourner à il se vint a Tholohouse.

Quant ffrancois sauoient que Chaundos
ffut mort qui avoit grant los,
Moult grant joie firent p tout
Et se reioissent moul
Et disoient tout serra ère
Auxi verray come le paternoster
Lors fist le Roy Charles de ffrance
Mander sanz point de demorance
A monsieur Bartrem de Claykyn,
Qui ot le coer hardi à fyn
En Espaigne leur il estoit,
La ou le Roy Bastard servoit,
Et manda que Chaundos fu mort
Volontiers oy le recort.
Barrem en ffrance retourna
Bien tost à gaires ne demora
A tholouse sen est venuz
La fu Danioo li riche ducz
Qui le festoia douclement
Et moult tresamiablement
Et dist Dan Bartrem bien trouvez
Soiez vous à bien ariuez
Nous avons grant mestier de vous
Car si vous estez ouesq vous

Quant ffrancois sauoient que Chandos
ffut morz, qui tant avoit grant los,
Moult grant joie firent par tout
Et se resjoissoient moul,
Et disoient : ‘Tout sera nostre,
Auxi vray com le paternostre.’
Lors fist li Roys Charles de ffrance
Mander sanz point de demorance
A monsiour Bartrem de Claykyn,
Qui ot le coer hardi et fyn,
En Espaigne, leur il estoit,
La ou le Roy Bastard servoit,
Et manda que Chandos fu mort.
Volentiers oý le recort.
Barrem en ffrance retourna
Bien tost, gaires ne demora.
A Tholouse s’en est venuz ;
La fu d’Anjou li riches ducs
Qui le festoia douclement
Et moult tresamiablement
Li dist : ‘Dan Bertrem, bien trovez
Soiez vous et bien ariuez.
Nous avons grant mestier de vous,
Car se vous estez avoez nous.

Line 3990 vous, marginal correction n.
Nous conquerons Aquitaine
Car ce est bien chose certaine
Audelee et Chaundos sont mortz
Qui nous ont fait tant de discordz
Et li Prince gist en son lit
Malades qui poy ad de delit
Si que vous le conseillez
Nous sumes touz appailez
De chevauchier pmy la terre

Nous conquerons Aquitaine;
Car ce est bien chose certaine,
Audelee et Chandos sont mort,
Qui nous ont fait tant de discord,
Et li Princes gist en son lit
Malades, qui poy a delit,
Si que, se vous le conseilliez,
Nous somes touz appareillez
De chevauchier parmy le terre.

Coment mons Bartrem sacorda de
faire la guerre encontre le Prince | 
adonques les fincois firent assembler 
grant poer. | le Duc Danioo entra pmy
Crescyn | le Duc de Barry | le Duc de
Burbon chevaucheron pmy lymosyn |
furent en purpose dassieger le Prince |
I lors le Prince se leua | fist son poair.

A ce faire bien sacorda
Daun Bartrem | qu le conseilla
Et la feurent ils tut d'accord
Sicome j'oy en mon recort,
Qu'a deux costes chevaucheron
Et que le Prince assegeroient
Lors fisent assembler leur genz
Assez par milliers et par centz.
Li Ducs d'Anjou par my Cressin
Chevaucha a moult grant trahrin ;
Cil de Barry, cil de Bourbon,
Avoecque des genz grant fusion,
Parmy Limosyn chevaucheron
Tant qu'a Lymoges se longierent
Et quidoient, au voir jugier,
Venir droict le Prince assegier
En Angouleme ou il estoit,
Si malades quil se gisoit
Et ly Prince fui en son lit

A ce faire bien s'acorda
Dans Bartrems, qui le conseilla ;
Et lor feurent il tout d'accort,
Sicome j'oy en mon recort,
Qu'a deux costes chevaucheron
Et que le Prince assegeroient
Lors fisent assembler leur genz
Assez par milliers et par centz.
Li Ducs d'Anjou par my Cressin
Chevaucha a moult grant trahrin ;
Cil de Barry, cil de Bourbon,
Avoecque des genz grant fusion,
Parmy Limosyn chevaucheron
Tant qu'a Lymoges se logierent,
Et quidoient, au voir jugier,
Venir droit le Prince assegier
En Angouleme, ou il estoit,
Si malades qu'il se gisoit.
Et ly Princes fui en son lit.

Line 4000 left blank in the MS.
Line 4016 omitted and inserted after line 4024.
Qui pas n’avoit trop grant delit.
Si tost qu’il en oy nouvelles,
Ly semblerent bones et beles;
De son lit tantost se leua,
Et tout son poair assembla.

Qui pas n’avoit trop grant delit.
Si tost qu’il en oy nouvelles,
Ly semblerent bones et beles;
De son lit tantost se leva,
Et tout son poair assembla.

Coment en cel temps le Duc de Lancastre
oue moult noble chialtrie fuist arriuez
en la pais il voilliot aler pur combatre les enemys
| qu quant ils ent sauoiient qu’le Prince auoit assembele son poair les enemys
se retournrent noisere noas attendre

| en cel temps Lymoges fuist rendu par fauxete
| que le Prince y mist assegée

| le regaigna per assaut que la furent

plusieurs gentz d’armes Burgeises pis mortz.

A ce temps fut ly riche ducz
De Lancastre en qui feurent vertuz
Armes dedeinz son pais
Et moultz des chiualers de pris
Et les voilloit aler combatre

A ce temps fu ly riches duc
De Lancastre, en qui fu vertuz,
Arives dedenz son pais,
Ou moult de chevaliers de prise,
Et les voiloit aler combatre

Pur son noble pais debatre
Mais si tost qu’il o’frent dire
Que li Prince sans contredire
Avoit assembele son poair
Ils sen retournent pur voir

Pour son noble pais debatre;
Mais si tost qu’il o’reant dire
Que li Princes, sans contredire,
Avoit assemblé son poair,
Il s’en retournerent, pour voir,
Et ne l’osèrent pas attendre.

Et ne l’osèrent pas attendre
Mais en ce temps a voir entendre
Limoges la bone Citee
ffut rendu p fauxtue
Et li Prince celle part vint

Limoges, le bone cite,
ffut rendeu par fauxete,
Et li Princes celle part vint,

Qui p devant lassiege tient
Tang il le gaigna p assaut
Dont moult ot le coer haut
Qar la fu Rogier de Beauford
Qui de tenir se fesoit fort

Qui par devant le siege tint,
Tant qu’il le gaigna par assaut:
Dont moult ot le coer lie et baut,
Car la fu Rogiers de Beaufort,
Qui de tenir se fesoit fort,

Et mons John de Vilemer
Qui dist qu’il garderoit le mure
Et des gentz d’armes bien iiij. Centz

Et mons John de Vilemer,
Qui dist qu’il garderoit le mure,
Et des genz d’armes bien iii. cenz,
THE BLACK PRINCE

Sanz les Burgeises dep dedeinz
Mais touz y furent mortz ou pris
Par le noble Prince de pris

Dont avoient grant joie entour ly
Toutz ceux qu li furent amy
Tout cil qu li furent amy ;
Et li enemi en avoient
Grant paür et se repentoient
Que le guerre recomencie
Avoient vers ly, je vous affie

Coment aprés ceo que Lymoges fuist pris le
Prince se revint a Anguileme | q troua Edward
son filtz trespassé | dount il fut moult dolentz
Aprés ceo se vint en Engletere | q ousesqe
luy sa femme | q son filtz Richard
et moult plusieurs autres de sez gentz.

£ 587’ Apres que Limoges fuist prise,
Ly Princes de hauteur emprise
En Angouleme se reuynt ;

Dont autre enseigne ly auient
Car adonques troua trespassée
Son filtz Edouwart, premier ne,
Dont bien fu dolantz en son coer :
Mais nuls ne poeit le mort fuyer

Tout ly couenoit prendre en gre
Ce que Dieux ly auoit done
Apres gaires ne demora
Que tout son arroi apresta
Et en Engletere se vient

4069 Pur la maledie que ly tiennent
Ouesq li sa femme | q son filtz
Et multit des Chiualers du pris
Avoec li sa femme et ses fiz
Et moult de chevaliers de pris.

Coment la nouvelle vint en Engletere
que la Rocheff fuist perdu | q le Count de
Penbrok pris | q sur ceo le Roy Dengletre
fist vn tresgraunt armée en quelle
fuist ly tresnoble Prince | q maint
vaillant seigniour | q chiualer de renoun
THE BLACK PRINCE

queux furet sur la meer entour ix semaignes ne proient auroir vent pur passer.

Que puis fut nouel venu
Que la Rocheli fust pdu
Et si fut pris lui noble Counte
De Penbrok dont home fist counte
Donc fist li Roy faire vne arriuee
Que moult fui de grant renome
Et la furent tout li baron
Et toutz les Chialers de noun
Ly noble Prince y estoit
Qui en grant paigne se mettoit
Qu’arriuer peust et prendre terre,
Pur aler socourir sa terre
Mais a ceo que j’oi comter
Noef semaignes estoient sur meer
Que vnqes ne purroient auroir vent,
Eins les failli tout vrayement
Retourner & venir ariere
Dont moult fesoient matechiere.

Lui Roi li le Prince auxi
Et tous les Chiualers hardi

Coment le Prince se compleindoit en sez
gntz maladies pria sez gentz prier p ly.

Ore vous ay tout countee
La vie du Prince rimee
Pdones moy si vn poy briefment
Je lay passe legierment
Mais il faut qe ie men deliure
Car hōme en purroit faire vn liuere
Bien auxi grant come Dartus

Dalisandre ou de Claruz
Mais pur doner en remembrance
De sont fait et reconissance
Et de sa treshaute pesse
Et de sa treshable largesse
Et auxi de la pdhōme

Depus fut novelle venue
Que la Rochelle fu perdue,
Et se fu pris li nobles conte
De Pennebrok, dont on fist conte.
Donc fist li Roys faire une armee,
Qui moult fui de grant renommée;
Et la furent tout li baron
Et tout li chevalier de non:
Ly nobles Princes y estoit
Qui en grant paigne se mettoit
Qu’arriver peust et prendre terre,
Pour aler socourir sa terre.
Mais a ce que j’oi comter
Noef semaignes estoient sur meer,
Qu’onques ne peuvent avoir vent,
Eins les failli tout vrayement
Retourner et venir ariere:
Dont moult fesoient mate chiere.
Li Rois et li Princes auxi
Et tout li chevalier hardi.

Ore vous ay toute countee
La vie du Prince et rimee
Pardon moy s’un poy briefment
Je l’ay passe legierement,
Mais il faut que je m’en delivre;
Car on en pourroit faire un livre
Bien auxi grant come d’Artus,
D’Alisandre ou de Clarus,
Neis pour doner la remambrance
Des siens faiz et reconissance,
Et de sa treshaute prouece
Et de sa treshable largece
Et auxi de sa preudhomye.

Line 4105 pdhōme, d omitted and superscript; e marginal correction ye.
Coment il fui tout sa vie
Pdôme | loialx & Catholı̂q̄s
Et en tout biens faire publiq̄s
Et si ot si tresnoble fin

4110 En reconissance de coer fyn
Son dieu & son verrai creature
Et disoit as senes beau seigniour
Regardez ci pur dieu merci
Nous ne sumes pas seigniour cy

4115 Tout couienda p ci passer
Nul home ne sen poet destouner
Pur ce treshumlement vous pri
Qe vous voillez prier pur my

Coment il fu toute sa vie,
Preudhom, loialx et catholiques
Et en tout bien faire publique ;
Et si ot si tresnoble fin
En reconissant de coer fin
Son Dieu et son vrai creatour ;
Et disoit as siens : 'Biau seigniour,
Regardez ci pour Dieu merci,
Nous ne somes pas seigniour cy.
Touz coevra par ci passar,
Nuls hom ne s'en poet destouner.
Pour ce treshumlement vous pri
Que vous veoilliez prier pour my.'

Coment le Prince fist ouerer sa chaumbre
\ trestoutz sez hōmes fist vener deuaut
luy | \ les regracioit moult noblement |
de lour servici a luy fait | \ eux reco-
menda son filtz qui estoit moult ioefne
\ ils plorerent moult tendrement.

Lors fist le Prince sa chambre ouër
\ Et trestouz ses hōmes venir
Qui en son temps serui lanoiènt
Et qui volontiers le sernoient
Seigniour fait il pdonez moy
Car p la foy qe ie vous doy

\ 597 Vous mauez loialment serui

4120 Si ne puisse de droit de my
Rendre a chescun son guerdon
Mais dieux p son seintisme noun
Et seintz cils | vous le rendera

4130 La chescun de coer larmoia
Et plorerent moult òndrement
Touz ceux q'ifurent en present
Conte | Baron & Bacheler
Et disoit au touz haut & cler

4135 Je moy recomande mon fitz

Line 4131 òndrement, marginal correction t.
Line 4133, Bacheler underlined in a later hand.
Line 4135 moy, marginal correction vos.
Qui moult est ioefne t petitz
Et vous pri si serui manez
Qe vous de bon coer ly seruez

Qui moult est joenes et petit,
Et vous pri, se servi m'avez,
Que vous de bon coer le servez.'

Coment le Prince appella le Roy son pier
Et le Duc de Lancastre son frere | t a eux
recomenda sa feme t son filz a eux
en suppliantz de les conforter |
maintener | trestouz ly promistrent de ce
fair | tresgnt dolour fuist entre eux.

Lors appella le Roy son pier
Et le duc de Lancastre son frere
Sa feme lour recomenda
Et son filz qui fortment ama
Et lour supplia la endroit
Et chescun les aider volloz

Chescun li iura sur li liere
Et ly pmistrent a deliure
Qe son enfant conforteroizt
Et en son droit le maintiendroizt
Tout li Prince t tout li baron

La jurent tout envion
Et li noble Prince de pris
Lour rendi Cent Mit mercys
Mais vnqes si dieux maniwe
Si tresdure dolour ne fut vieve

Come fui a le deptie
Ly tresnoble Prince iolie
Tiel dolour a son coer sentoiz
Qe a poi son coer partoiz
Ja de pleindre t de suspire

De haut crier t dolouserç

Avoit vn mois si grant
Qe mondo ne fuit home viuant
Qui eust le doel regarde
Qil nen eust en coer pite

Line 4145 liere, marginal correction liure.
De la noble déuoute repentance du Prince, coment, et en quelle lieu, a quel temps il trespassa, yci fine ceste liure, qui retrahist Chaundos le haraude.

4165 La auoit si noble repentance
  Que dieux p sa haute puissance
  Avera de sa me mercy;
  Car il pria dieu mercy
  Et pdoñ de touz ses mesfaiets
4170 Qen ycste monde mortel eust faitz
  Et lor li Prince trespassa
  De cest siecle, et si deuia
  L'an Mil CCC. sesze et sissante
  Et du regne le Roy son pier lan ciqnte
4175 A Londres la noble Citee
  Le haute iour de la Trinitee
  Dont il fesoit tout sa vie
  De bon coer, feste ou melodie
  Or prioms dieu le Roy des Roys
4180 Qui pur nous morist en la croys
  Qil eit de salme pdoiñ
  Et li otroie de son don
  Le glorie de son paradis
  Amen. Et ci fyne li ditz
4185 Du tresnoble Prince Edward
  Qui nauoit vnques coer de Coward
  Que retrahist li heraud Chaundos
  Qui volontiers recordoit motz

La auoit si noble repentance,
Que Dieux par sa haute puissance
Avera de s'ame mercy ;
Car il pria a Dieu mercy
Et pardon de touz ces mesfais
Qu'en ycste mont mortel eut faiz.
Et lor li Princes trespassa
De cest siecle et se devia
L'an mil ccc. sesze et sissante,
Et du regne le Roy cinquante,
A Londres, le noble cite,
Le haut jour de le Trinite,
Dont il fesoit toute sa vie,
De bon coer, feste ou melodie,
Or prioms Dieu le Roy des Roys,
Qui pour nous morut en le croys,
Que il eit de s'ame pardon,
Et li otroie de son don
Le glore de son paradis.
Amen. Et ci fyne li diz
Du tresnoble Prince Edouwart,
Qui n'avoit onc coer de couwart,
Que retraist li heraud Chandos,
Qui volontiers recordoit moz.

Line 4187, heraud Chaundos underlined in a later hand.
Cy ensement les nouns de ceux
qui feurent les hautez officers
du trenoble Prince p ly faitz
en son temps en Acquitaigne.

Seigniours vous airez oy de certaine
Du trenoble Prince daquitaine
Ore vous diray briefment
Sanz plus longe parlement
De ses hautes officers
Queuez li furent molt chiers
En Acquitaigne en son temps
Des queux il se tenoit bien contens
Primerment Ioh\n Chaundos fust conestable
Et apres sa mort le Captawe sanz fable
Mon\n Gwichard dangle fut Marescha\n Et Estephen de Cosint\n qui ot coer loialt
Et mon\n Thomas de f\n nelle\n auoir iugier
\fuiist Seneschal\n Dacquitaigne sauz mentir
Et mon\n Guilliam de f\n nelle\n \fuiist Seneschal\n de Paytoo p noun
Et apres sa mort come dist lestille
Mon\n Baudewyn ffreville
Et apres de mon\n Baudewyn departir
En Engleterre a voir contir
Mon\n Thomas de Percy li vaillant
Y fuist oue hon\n moit grant
Et de seint Onge fuist Seneschal\n Mon\n Ioh\n Harpeden oue coer loialt
Et mon\n Henri del hay
\fuiist Seneschal\n danguymois bien say
Mon\n Thomas de Roos oue coer fyn
\fuiist Senseschal\n de Lymosyn
Et apres son departir en Engleterre
Mon\n Richard Abberbury avoir retrere
Et mon\n Thomas Wetenale en verite
\fuiist Seneschal\n de Roarge le Counte
Et si ne vous ai nomee vnqore
Le Seneschal de Cressy % Peregore
Qui fuist monſ Thomas Walkfare
Bon chiualer vous declare
Et du Counte de Agenoys
fuist Seneschal a celle foîtz
Monſ Richard Baskerville
Et apres sa mort come dit lestille
Monſ Guilliam le Moigne
Car ce nest pas mencoigne
Et de monſ Guilliam apres le departir
En Engleterre a voir Jugir
Si fuist vn bon Chiualer
Monſ Richard Walkfare oue coer frer
Et de Bigore fut Seneschalt
Monſ Iohn Roche oue coer preu % loialt
Et le sire de Pyan fuist Seneschaux
Dez Laundes de Burdeaux
Et plusieurs autres tresuaillantz
Qui furent adonqes viuantz
ffurent oue loure Prince a voir Iuger
Les queux ie ne sai nomer
Mais ie pri a treshaute Trinitee
Qe del alme du Prince auant nomee
Et de touz les autres qi mortz sont
Et qen apres morir deueront
Et merci a son jugement
Et ie pri auxi verrayment
Qe as viuantz li plese doner
Longe vie % bon fin acheuer
Amen | Amen | p seint charite
De chescun en son degre. Amen.

Line 4233 Chiualer, i omitted and superscript.
Cy ensement l'escripture fait sur la
Tumbe du noble Prince deuant unome.

Tout qe passez de bouche close
Par la ou ce corps repose
Entendez ce qe te dirray
Si come ie dire le say
Tiel come tu es tiel ie fu
Tu verras tiel come ie su
De la mort ne pensa ie mye
Tant come iano la vie
En terre anoi ie guinde richesse
Dout ie yfis guinde noblesse
Terre maisons guinde tresor
Draps Chivalx argent or
Mais ie sui ore poeures cheitifs
Parfond en la terre gis
Ma graunde beautee est tout aleee
Ma char est tout gasteee
Moult est estroit ma maison
Oue moy nad si veruy noun
Et si ore me veissez
Ie ne quide pas qe vous deissez
Qe ie eusse vnques home estee
Si su ie tut chaungee
Pur dieu priez au celestien Roy
Qil merci eit de salme de moy
Tut cil qe pur moy prieront
Ou a dieu macorderont
Dieux les mette en son paris
Ou nult ne poet estre cheitifs.
THE LIFE OF THE BLACK PRINCE

(Translation)

In times of yore it was seen that they who fashioned fair poems were in sooth esteemed as authors or in some sort recorders to show knowledge of the good, in order to draw remembrance of good from their hearts and to receive honour (?). But it is said, and truly, that there is naught that does not dry up, and that there is no tree that does not wither, excepting one only, the tree of life: and this tree, moreover, buds and flowers in this life in all parts. On this I will dwell no longer, for although such writers are held of no account, and a chatterer, a liar, a juggler, or a buffoon who, to raise a laugh, would grimace and make antics, is more esteemed than one who had skill to indite—for, without gainsaying, such a one is ill received at court nowadays—but albeit they who set forth the good are held in no estimation, yet ought men not to refrain from making and remembering fair poems—all such as have skill thereto; rather they should enter them in a book, that after their death true records may be kept; for to relate the good is verily alms and charity, for good was never lost without return at some time. Wherefore, incited by my desire, I wish to set my intent on making and recording fair poems of present and past times.

Now it is high time to begin my matter and address myself to the purpose which I am minded to fulfil. Now, may God let me attain to it, for I wish to set my intent on writing and recording the life of the most valiant prince of this world, throughout its compass, that ever was since the days of Claris, Julius Caesar, or Arthur, as you shall hear, if so be that you listen with good will: it is of a noble Prince of Aquitaine, who was son of the noble and valorous King Edward and of Queen Philippa, who was the perfect root of all honour and nobleness, of wisdom, valour, and bounty.

This noble Prince of whom I speak, from the day of his birth cherished no thought but loyalty, nobleness, valour, and goodness, and was endued with prowess. Of such nobleness was the Prince that he wished all the days of his life to set his whole intent on maintaining justice and right, and therein was he nurtured from his childhood up; from his generous and noble disposition he drew the doctrine of bounty, for gaiety and nobleness were in his heart perfectly from the first beginnings of his life and youth. Now, is it full time that I address myself to carrying forward my matter, how he was so noble, bold, and valiant, so courteous and so sage, and how he loved so well the holy Church with his whole heart, and, above all, the most lofty Trinity; its festival and solemnity he began to celebrate from the first days of his youth and upheld it all his life zealously, without evil thought.

Now I have wished to record his youth, and now it is right that I should relate
to you that which all should hold in esteem—that is, chivalry: this was upheld in his person, in whom it held sway thirty years (?). Nobly he spent his life (?), for I would dare to say this, that since the time that God was born there was none more valiant than he, as you shall hear in my records if you will hearken and give ear to the matter to which I am coming.

You know well that the noble King his father, with very great array, of his high and noble puissance made war on the realm of France, saying that he ought to have the crown; wherefore, in maintaining the quarrel, he kept up right cruel war which lasted long. Now it befell that just at this time he crossed the sea to Normandy. With right noble following, barons, bannerets, and earls . . . he landed in the Cotentin. There was many a good and true knight, the noble Earl of Warwick, of high esteem, and the right noble Earl of Northampton, the Earl of Suffolk, and the Earl of Stafford, of the stout and bold heart, and the Earls of Salisbury and Oxford; and John de Beauchamp was there, the valiant Reginald de Cobham, Sir Bartholomew de Burghersh, bold in deed, the good Guy de Brian, the good Richard de la Vache, and the good Richard Talbot, of great prowess. And Chandos and Audeley were there, who smote mightily with the sword, and the good Thomas de Holland, of great prowess, and a great number of others, whose names I cannot tell.

The English army arrived, and when he was about to disembark the King knighted the Prince, the Earl of March also, and the Earl of Salisbury, John of Montagu, his brother, and others, more than I could tell you. And know well, the Marshal Bertrand, who was of great valour and hardihood, was there, and thought right easily to keep them from landing. But the English power landed by force. There were achieved so many feats of arms that one might have compared Roland, and Oliver, and the very courteous Ogier the Dane. There might one behold men of prowess, valour, and hardihood. There was the fair and noble Prince, who made a right goodly beginning. All the Cotentin he overrode and wholly burnt and laid waste, La Hogue, Barfleur, Carentan, Saint-Lô, Bayeux, and up to Caen, where they conquered the bridge; and there they fought mightily; by force they took the town, and the Count of Tancarville and the Count of Eu were taken there. There the noble Prince gained renown, for he was eager to acquit himself well, and was but eighteen years old. And the Marshal rode away, nor stopped before Paris; he told the King the news that was in no wise pleasing to him. Such marvel he had that scarcely could he believe it, for he thought not that such folk would have had such hardihood. Then he assembled his power; throughout France there remained neither duke nor earl of account, nor baron, banneret, nor squire, that he did not cause to assemble.

He sent to the King of Bohemia, whom he heartily loved, who brought in his company his son, who was King of Germany, and the good John de Beaumont of Hainault, of high renown. Well did he think to defend his land against the English king, and very little did he esteem him, and right sorely did he threaten him. But afterwards, meseems, the King and the Prince together rode through Normandy, and laid waste all the country. Many a great affray did they have, and many a good
and valiant man did they take, and they came to the bridge of Poissy; but the story says that the bridge there was broken, yet they did so much that with great logs they remade the bridge by force, whereat the French marvelled, and crossed one morning. They took their way through Caux, burning, laying waste, harrying; whereat the French were sore grieved and cried aloud: ‘Where is Philip our king?’

He was at Paris, to speak the truth, for at this time he made ready and collected his great power. And there he assembled his men and said that he would esteem himself but little if he did not take great vengeance, for he thought to have shut in the English, as I think, between the Seine and the Somme, and right there he thought lightly to give them battle. But the English to disport themselves put everything to fire and flame. There they made many a widowed lady and many a poor child orphan. They rode, day and night, until they came to the water of the Somme; on the other side was many a man, for there were the forces of the communes of Picardy and also Sir Godemar du Fay. Very wide was the river, swift and fierce with the tide, wherefore the English marvelled sore how they should cross over. But the Prince made choice of a hundred knights, of the best of his vanguard, and sent them to see how they might pass. And they who were worthy of praise rode abroad until they found a fellow who showed them the passage of the Somme, and all the hundred with one accord dashed into the water on their chargers, lance couched—very valiant knights were they—and the Prince came after, keeping ever close behind them. Sore strife was there at the passage of the Somme, and stoutly did the knights fight; and there on both sides they were at pains to shoot and cast; but the men of Picardy were speedily scattered and put to flight, together with Messire Godemar, and with the help of God all passed in due time.

When King Philip heard the tidings he was sore grieved and angry at heart, and said: ‘By St. Paul, the valiant, I mistrust me of treason;’ but nevertheless he hasted greatly. He passed through Abbeville. Very rich was his array, for he was there with three other kings: the Kings of Majorca and Bohemia and the King of Germany; there were many dukes and earls, so that it was a goodly number. They rode on until they pitched their camp right near Cressy, in Ponthieu. There King Edward was camped, and the Prince, who that day led the vanguard. There they had made but brief stay, when on either side they were told that both were so close that each one could see the array and the order of the other. Then they raised a loud cry and began to order and draw up their divisions.

That day was there battle so horrible that never was there man so bold that would not be abashed thereby. Whoso saw coming the puissance and power of the King of France, great marvel would he have to relate! Inflamed with ill-will and anger they set forth to encounter together, bearing themselves in such true knightly fashion that never since Christ’s coming did one behold fiercer battle. There was seen many a banner embroidered in fine gold and silk, and there the English were all afoot like men ready and eager to fight. There was the good Prince who led the vanguard; so valiantly he bore himself that it was a marvel to behold. Hardly
did he suffer any one to attack, however bold or strong he might be. They fought that day until the English had the advantage. And there was slain the noble and courteous King of Bohemia, and the good Duke of Lorraine, who was a very noble leader, and the noble and renowned Count of Flanders and the good Count of Alençon, brother to King Philip, the Counts of Joil and Harcourt. What should I say in brief word? One king, one duke, and seven counts, and, as the account says, more than sixty bannerets were there stark dead, and three kings who left the field, and divers others fled, of whom I know not the number, nor is it right that I should enumerate them. But well I know that that day the brave and noble Prince led the vanguard of the army, as one should take note, for by him and his courage was the field gained and won.

King Philip betook himself to Paris, sore grieved; he mourned in his heart for his men whom he had lost. And the noble King of England, who was worthy to hold land, lodged that night in the field, for he gained very great honour. He had the dead sought out to know and recognize them, and found the King of Bohemia, who lay dead on the field. He had him put into a coffin and placed on a litter covered with rich cloth of gold. He sent him back and then moved from the place and rode towards Calais. That I may not lie, this right noble expedition, of which I here speak, was in the year of our Lord one thousand three hundred forty and six, and, as the record says, 'twas on the eve of St. Bartholomew that by the grace of God the King fought this battle wherein he acquired such honour.

Afterwards they came before Calais; there was many a fair deed of arms achieved; to it the noble King, who was there with his whole army, laid siege eighteen months without intermission. Here they abode until the town was starved out, and King Philip came to raise the siege, as I heard tell. But the army was lodged in such wise and the town so beset that King Philip durst not raise the siege, but turned back, and the noble King of England held there the field. Many an encounter and many an assault was there made by men of low and high degree until the town yielded, beseeching the King, for God's sake, that he would take them to mercy. And thus was Calais conquered by force, by the power and enterprise of the noble King and of his son, the Prince.

Hereafter, with scant delay, they returned to England, the King and the Prince also, and all the bold knights. On account of a truce that was made they stayed in their country until it befell that by treaty, by treason and sin, Calais was about to be sold, given up by a Lord of Beaujeu (?) to Sir Geffroi de Charny, through a Lombard, who was called Aimery of Pavia; and there were all the barons of Picardy and France, at least the most part. But there was the noble King to save it; and the noble Prince his son, very bold and valiant, there fought so valiantly that in sooth he rescued the King, his father, by force. There the men of France and Picardy were brought to confusion that night, whereat divers English made great joy at their return, for there were all the best of the noble country of England, who to win great praise and renown acquitted themselves valiantly. There were taken, of a truth, the noblest lords of France, and deceived outright; nor ever was the King of England so hard bested in any hour as he was in that hour then, for many people.
have recorded that the King would have been taken had it not been for the Prince his son; but his puissance, his noblesse, and his very perfect prowess rescued there the King, his father. And this matter ought in no wise to be forgotten; so it is very right that I tell it you.

They returned to England and made very merry. Their friends and all the ladies also made great joy. The Queen, who loved her lord with her whole heart, welcomed them. Then said the King to his wife: 'Lady, now welcome your son, for I had been taken had it not been for his great valour, but by him was I succoured.' 'Sire,' says she, 'welcome be he and you also. Methinks I should say: "In a good hour was he born."' There were the knights and barons right well received; there was seen dancing and junketing, feasting and revelling; and right pleasantly was time passed among them, and there was love and noblesse, gaiety and prowess. Thus they abode a long space, until it befell, just at that time, that Spanish ships were assembled at Sluys that boasted they would pass in defiance of the King, despite him and his array, wherefore the King, of his great valour, assembled his great power and made an expedition by sea that was of great renown. There were the Prince his son and many good and famous knights, all the earls, and all the knights of repute. There was fierce and sore battle: there God gave him fortune, for by him and his power and right lofty valiance the Spaniards were all discomfited and slain. And there was knighted his very valiant brother John, who afterwards was Duke of Lancaster—very great was his courage. There likewise did the noble barons acquit themselves valiantly; there was many a ship conquered, many a one taken, many a one sunk, and there was many a good man slain, as I hear in my record; and know that this encounter was before Winchelsea.

After this noble battle, that of a surety was right fell, they returned to land. They brought the goodly store of goods that they had gained and conquered, whereat every one rejoiced. Soon after, the Queen of England brought forth a son, the last she bore, and this son was called Thomas. Great joy and great feast were made, and great joustings cried then through the country. And at that time there came from Gascony the doughty and valiant Captal, who was right brave and courageous and greatly beloved of everybody. He was welcomed right nobly. The Prince, who rejoiced greatly at his coming, took fresh courage. One day he said to the King his father and to the Queen his mother: 'Sire,' quoth he, 'for God's sake, you know well that thus it is, that in Gascony the noble and valiant knights cherish you so greatly that they suffer great pain for your war and to gain you honour, and yet they have no leader of your blood. Therefore if you were so advised as to send one of your sons they would be the bolder.' And every one said that he spoke truly. Then the King let summon his great parliament. All were of accord likewise to send the Prince into Gascony, because he was of such renown, and ordained forthwith that with him should go the noble Earl of Warwick, of high esteem, and the Earl of Salisbury, of great valiance, the gallant Earl of Suffolk, Ufford was his name, and the Earl of Oxford, the good Earl of Stafford, Sir Bartholomew de Burghersh, bold in deed, Sir John of Montagu, proud and impetuous, the Lord the Despenser, and Basset of high renown; and there was
also the Lord of Mohun, and likewise, meseems, the good Reginald Cobham, who
had been at many an assault; there were also Chandos and Audeley: these two
were of great renown and were appointed chief advisers.  

When the matter was settled and the ordinance wholly performed, they sent
to Plymouth to assemble all their ships, men-at-arms, and archers also, and their
provisions: very rich was their array. After the term of two months he took leave
of the King his father, of the Queen his mother and of all his brothers and sisters.
Right sore grieved were they at heart when it came to his departing, for there you
might see lady and damsel weep and make moan in complaints; the one wept for
her husband, the other lamented for her lover.  

Thus the Prince took leave, blithe and glad at heart. He took his way
to Plymouth. He rode night and morning until he reached Plymouth and
abode there until his great array was ready. And it befell right speedily
afterward that he had all his vessels loaded with victuals and jewels, hauberks,
helmets, lances, shields, bows, arrows, and yet more; he let ship all his horses
and anon embarked, and all the noble knights. There might one see the flower
of chivalry and of right noble bachelry, who were very eager and desirous to
acquit themselves well. Then they set sail. They sailed over the sea until they
arrived at Bordeaux, whereat the noble barons of the country made high revel.
There you might see great and small come straight to the Prince, who courteously
welcomed them. To him came incontinent the noble Prince d'Albret and the valiant
and doughty Lord of Montferrant, Mussidan, Roson, Curton and Amenieu de
Fossard, and the great Lord of Pommiers and many noble knights, and the rightful
Lord of Lesparre. Thither came all the barons of Gascony, and right well did the
Prince know how to entertain them. At Bordeaux he sojourned a short space
until he had made his preparations and well rested his horses. Right speedily
after, he was ready and took the field with more than six thousand fighting-men.
He rode towards Toulouse; not a town remained that he did not utterly lay waste;
he took Carcassonne and Béziers and Narbonne, and all the country was ravaged
and harried by him, and divers towns and castles, whereat the enemies in Gascony
made no great rejoicing. More than four and a half months he remained in the
field this time and did much damage then.  

Thereafter the Prince turned back towards Bordeaux and abode there until
the whole winter was passed. He and his noble knights were there in great joy
and solace. There was gaiety, noblesse, courtesy, goodness, and largesse; and
he quartered his men, as I think, in his castles round about, and there they
took up their abode. Warwick was at La Réole, Salisbury at Sainte-Foy, and
Suffolk, as I think, at Saint-Émilion; at Libourne and all round his men were
disposed. When all were thus lodged, the good Chandos and Audeley, with the
noble Captal, went to camp in the open. There they remained a long time.
Many a fair encounter they had, and many a time they fought to conquer them a
lodging. Up to Cahors and towards Agen they undertook their expedition and took
Port-Sainte-Marie. Thereafter they returned all up the river and went to take
Périgueux, a city of great fame. There they camped a great part of the winter.
Right noble was their sojourn, for many an assault and many an attack they made against the castle, for there was naught but a little meadow between the castle and the town. There were the Count de L’Isle and the Count de Périgord.

In such wise did the Prince make stay in Gascony, and abode there the space 703 of eight months or more. Very great was his valour. When it came towards summer then he assembled his forces, and rode again into Saintonge, Périgord and Quercy, and came as far as Romorantin. There he took the tower by assault, and the Lord Bouciquaut also, and the great Lord of Craon and a goodly number of others; more than two hundred were taken there, all men-at-arms of high renown, fifteen days before the battle of Poitiers. Thereafter he rode into Berry, and through Gascony also, and up to Tours in Tourayne. Then the tidings came to King John, whereat he made great lamentation, and said that he would lightly esteem himself if he did not take great vengeance.

Then he assembled his forces from all the realm of France. There remained 729 neither duke nor earl, nor baron of account, that he did not have summoned, and, as I have heard tell, the muster was held at Chartres. A noble host was there gathered together, and according to the number in the list there were more than ten thousand. From Chartres they departed and rode right so towards Tours. Very noble was their array. The Prince heard the tidings that seemed to him good and fair. He took his way towards Poitiers, bringing with him much booty, for they had wrought much damage in France by their great valour. And know that the Saturday the Prince took the noble Count of Joigny, together with the Count of Auxerre; and the French fought valiantly at their encampment, but they were all taken and slain, as the record says, whereat the English made great joy throughout their army. And King John rode until he outstripped the Prince, and till one army beheld the other; and, by what I heard, they camped one in front of the other, and were lodged so close that they watered their horses at the same river.

Right there, however, came the Cardinal of Périgord, who brought with him 797 many a clerk, and many a man of law also. Thereupon he spoke gently to the King of France, in all meekness: ‘Sire,’ quoth he, ‘for the love of God, a sound word is timely. May it please you to let me ride to the Prince to advise if you might be accorded, for, certes, this great battle will be without fail so horrible that it will be loss and pity and great pride and presumption that so many a fair creature needs must die a sure and grievous death, and yet there is no avoidance but die he must at the encountering, whereof for sure he who is in the wrong must needs render account before God at the day of doom, if the Scripture lie not.’ Then King John answered: ‘Cardinal, you are very wise. We are well pleased that you should go, but know and understand well, never in all our life will we make peace unless we get into our keeping the castles and all the land that he has wasted and ravaged, wrongfully and sinfully, since he came from England, and are also quit of the quarrel for which the war is renewed.’ ‘Sire,’ said the Cardinal, ‘I will do in such wise that you shall be safe and satisfied with regard to your right.’ Thereupon he departed thence.

He rode towards the Prince’s army; as soon as he came up to him he saluted 807 him full sweetly, weeping for pity. ‘Sire,’ quoth he, ‘for God’s mercy now have
pity to-day on so many a noble person who this day might here perish in this great conflict. Act so that you may not be in the wrong. If you could be brought to accord, God and the Holy Trinity would be gracious unto you.'

Sorrowfully the Prince said: 'Truly, fair sweet father in God, we know well that what you say is true, it is so in Holy Writ. But we would maintain that our quarrel, in truth, is just, true, and veritable. You know well that it is no idle tale that my father, King Edward, was assuredly the most rightful heir to hold and possess France, rightly beloved of every one, at the time that King Philip of Valois was crowned king there; but notwithstanding it is not my desire that it be said that so many a fair youth here perishes through my pride. Nor is it my intent to set myself against peace, if it could be made; rather will I further it with all my power: but know that, in very truth, I cannot bring this matter to conclusion without the King, my father, but respite I can grant to my men to treat more at length of peace. If they wish no accord this time, I am here, all ready, to abide the grace of God, for our quarrel is so just that I fear not to engage; but to avert the damage and sin of death I will agree to it, at your pleasure, if so be that my father assent.'

The Cardinal, in tears, departed from him straightway and rode without delay towards King John of France, and told him of his reception. The King, to prolong the matter and to put off the battle, assembled and brought together all the barons of both sides. Of speech there he made no stint. There came the Count of Tancarville, and, as the list says, the Archbishop of Sens was there, he of Taurus, of great discretion, Charny, Bouciquaut, and Clermont; all these went there for the council of the King of France. | On the other side there came gladly the Earl of Warwick, and, as the account says, the hoary-headed Earl of Suffolk was there, and Bartholomew de Burghersh, most privy to the Prince, and Audeley and Chandos, who at that time were of great repute. There they held their parliament, and each one spoke his mind. But their counsel I cannot relate (?), yet I know well, in very truth, as I hear in my record, that they could not be agreed, wherefore each one of them departed. Then said Geffroi de Charny: 'Lords,' quoth he, 'since so it is that this treaty pleases you no more, I make offer that we fight you, a hundred against a hundred, choosing each one from his own side; and know well, whichever hundred be discomfited, all the others, know for sure, shall quit this field and let the quarrel be. I think that it will be best so, and that God will be gracious to us if the battle be avoided in which so many valiant men will be slain.'

Then the Earl of Warwick made answer to him thus: 'Lords,' quoth he, 'what do you wish to gain by this against us? You know well that you have four times more of men-at-arms clad in armour than we, and that it is your land we are overriding. Behold the plain and the place, let each one who can do his best. No other option do I know, no other will I accord. May God support the right, where He sees it the stronger.' Then they part without more discourse and return to their camp. Each one said on his side: 'That Cardinal has betrayed us.' Alas! but 'fore God it was not so, for weeping he departed and rode towards Poitiers—that was very needful to him, for, truly, he had neither thanks nor favour from either side. Then incontinent, on either side they set their troops in array.
First the King of France marshalled his men, and said: ‘Fair sirs, by my troth, you will so keep me back, I ween, that the Prince will escape me. That Cardinal has certainly betrayed me, who has made me abide here so long.’ Thereupon he called the good Marshal de Clermont and the Marshal d’Audrehem, that was ever at all times right greatly to be esteemed, for he was a very goodly knight, and the Duke of Athens, a very noble leader. ‘Lords,’ quoth the puissant King, ‘make ready your array, for you shall be in our vanguard, and this is your right, so God help me. In your company you shall have three thousand men, and you shall have two thousand with spears and sharp darts, and good two thousand cross-bow-men, who will gladly aid you. See to it, if you find the English, that you engage in battle with them and spare not to put them all to death.’

Then he called this time his son, the Duke of Normandy, and said to him, ‘Fair son, by my troth, you will be King of France after me, and therefore you shall surely have our second division; and you shall have the noble Duke of Bourbon to accompany you, and the Lord of Saint Venant, valiant and doughty. The good Tristan of Magnelais, a right noble squire, shall bear your banner, that is of rich and precious silk. Spare not, for Jesus Christ, the English, however great or small, that you put them not all to death. For I would not that one single man of them should ever be so venturesome as to recross to this side of the sea to hurt or make war on me.’ ‘Thus will I deal with them,’ said the Dauphin, ‘Father, by my faith. We shall, methinks, do so much that we shall earn your gratitude.’ Then you might see banners and pennons unfurled to the wind, whereon fine gold and azure shone, purple, gules, and ermine. Trumpets, tabours, horns and clarions—you might hear sounding through the camp; the Dauphin’s great battle made the earth ring. There was many a true knight, and, as the list says, they were four thousand in number. On one of the sides it took its place and covered a great space. Thus has the King ordered and arranged this division.

Then he summoned the powerful Duke of Orleans, his brother. ‘Brother,’ quoth he, ‘so God help me, you shall lead our rearguard with three thousand fighting-men, men-at-arms, valiant and doughty; and take good heed, for God’s sake, that you have no mercy on the English, but put them all to death: for they have done us much wrong and burnt and destroyed our land since they left England. Take heed, if you take the Prince, that you bring him to me.’ ‘Sire,’ quoth the rich Duke, ‘Glady, and more also.’

Thus did the noble King John marshal his troops. He was in the fourth battle—right stout was his courage; with him there were three of his sons, that were of great renown: the Dukes of Anjou and Berry, and also Philip the bold, who was very young and small. There was Jacques de Bourbon, the Count of Eu, and the Count of Longueville; these two were sons of my Lord Robert d’Artois. And there was also with him at this time the noble Count of Sancerre, and the Count of Dammartin. Very goodly was his array, for he had three-and-twenty banners. Then he drew up on the other side full four hundred barded horses and four hundred knights upon them, picked men; Guichard d’Angle led them, who was a noble knight, and the good Lord of Aubigny, brave and bold, and Eustace de Ribemont
in whom the King set great trust; and he begged them, without slackening, to take heed to strike well and to spare no pains to break the battle, and each one would follow them close who should be ready to acquit himself well. And every one consented to carry out his will. There was such noble display that it was a great marvel. Never did one see the like nobleness and array as had they of France.

Elsewhere the English host was encamped, for this day likewise did the noble Prince set his men in order, and gladly, to my thinking, would he have avoided the battle if he could have escaped from there, but well he saw that he must engage. Then incontinent he called the noble Earl of Warwick, and very perfectly sets forth to him: 'Sir,' says he, 'needs must we fight, and since it so fortunes, I beg you, take command of the vanguard in this battle. The noble Lord of Pommiers, a right noble knight, shall be in your company, and you shall have, I pledge you, all his brothers with him, who are brave, valiant, and bold. You first shall make the passage, and shall guard our baggage. I will ride after you with all my knights; if so be that mischief befall you, you shall be succoured by us; and the Earl of Salisbury shall ride behind also, who shall lead our rearguard; and let every one be prepared, in case they attack you, to alight on foot at his speediest.'

And each one says he will do so. Thus they hold converse that night. There was none too great ease, for all lay in ambush; there was many an affray; and when it came to early morning the noble and true-hearted Prince called Sir Eustace d'Aubréchicourt with the lion-hearted Lord of Curton, and bade them ride to spy out the French army, and each one set out to ride, mounted on his noble steed. But, as the French book says, these two rode so forward that they were taken and held prisoners, whereat the Prince was sore grieved, and the French made great joy throughout their army, and said in these very words: 'All the others will come after.'

Thereupon the clamour began, and a right great shout was raised, and the Prince broke up camp; he began to ride, for that day he thought not to have battle, I assure you, but weened ever, most certainly, to continue to avoid the battle. But on the other side the French cried out loudly to the King that the English were fleeing and that they would speedily lose them. Then the French begin to ride without longer tarrying. Quoth the Marshal d'Audrehem: 'Certes, little do I esteem your trouble. Soon we shall have lost the English if we set not forth to attack them.' Quoth the Marshal de Clermont: 'Fair brother, you are in sore haste. Do not be so eager, for we shall surely come there betimes, for the English do not flee, but come at a round pace.' Quoth d'Audrehem: 'Your delay will make us lose them at this time.' Then said Clermont: 'By Saint Denis, Marshal, you are very bold.' And then he said to him angrily: 'Indeed you will not be so bold as to acquit yourself to-day in such wise that you come far enough forward for the point of your lance to reach the rump of my horse.' Thus inflamed with wrath they set out towards the English.

Then began the shouting, and noise and clamour is raised, and the armies began to draw near. Then on both sides they began to shoot and to cast; not one of them made stint therewith. Sirs, by what I heard, the noble Earl of Salisbury
led the Prince's rearguard, but that day he joined battle the very first, for full of ire and wrath the Marshals came upon him, on foot and on horseback, and attacked him by force. When the Earl saw this force he turned his division towards them, and cried out to it with a loud voice, 'Forward, sirs, for God's sake, since it pleases St. George thus that we were the hindmost and shall be the very first, let us so acquit ourselves that we gain honour thereby.' Then might you see the barons approve themselves well in battle; great pastime would it have been to behold for one that had naught there at stake, but certes it was sore pity and a marvellous and grievous thing. There was many a creature who that day was brought to his end. There they fought staunchly. The archers that were on the two sides over towards the barded horses shot rapidly, thicker than rain falls. Then behold there came spurring a valiant and doughty knight, by name Guichard d'Angle; he never lagged behind, but smote with lance and sword in the middle of the press. And the Marshal de Clermont and Eustace de Ribemont, and the rightful lord of Aubigny, each one acquitted himself well also.

The French book says, and the account likewise, that the Earl of Salisbury, he and his companions, who were fiercer than lions, discomfited the Marshals and all the barded horses, before the vanguard could be turned and brought across again, for it was over the river; but by the will of God and Saint Peter they joined all together and came, methinks, like people of noble bearing, right up a mountain until they brought their ranks up to the Dauphin's division, which was at the passage of a hedge, and there, with steadfast will, they came to encounter together, plying the business of arms in such right knightly fashion that it was great marvel to behold. There they gained the passage of the hedge by force by their assault, whereat many a Frenchman is dismayed at heart, and they began to turn their backs and mount their horses. In many a place men cried with loud voice 'Guyenne! St. George!' What would you that I should tell you? The division of Normandy was discomfited that morning, and the Dauphin departed thence. There was many a one taken and slain, and the noble Prince fought right valiantly, and comforting his people said: 'Lords, for God's sake, take heed to strike; behold me here.'

Then the King of France approached, bringing up a great power, for to him drew every man who would gain himself well.

When the Prince saw him come he was some deal abashed, and looking around him saw that divers had left who had set out in pursuit, for truly they weened that by this time they had accomplished everything; but now the battle waxed sore, for the French King came up, bringing so great a power that it was a marvel to behold. When the Prince saw him, he looked up to Heaven, cried mercy of Jesus Christ, and spake thus: 'Mighty Father, right so as I believe that Thou art King of Kings and didst willingly endure the death on the cross for all of us, to redeem us out of hell, Father, who art true God, true man, be pleased, by Thy most holy name, to guard me and my people from harm, even as Thou knowest, true God of heaven, that I have good right.' Then the Prince straightway, when he had made his prayer, said: 'Forward, forward, banner! Let each one take heed to his honour.' Two knights, full of valour, were stationed (?) at the two
sides; they were Chandos and Audeley. Then began the encounter, and Audeley right gently and humbly besought the Prince: ‘Sire,’ quoth he, ‘I have vowed to God and promised and sworn that wherever I should see the banner of the King of France in power there I would set on the first, so that I beseech you for God give me leave, for it is high time to join battle.’ Then the Prince said to him, ‘Truly, James, do your will.’ Then James departed from the Prince; he made no longer stay. He advanced before the others more than a spear’s length and hurled himself on his enemies like a valiant and bold man; but he could not long endure, for he had to come to the ground. There might you see in the encountering great lances couched and thrust on both sides; each one bore his part well. There you might behold Chandos smiting, who acquired great praise that day, Warwick and the Despenser, Montagu of esteem, him of Mohun and him of Basset, who fought right gallantly, Sir Reginald of Cobham, who caused the French sore loss, the good Bartholomew de Burghersh, very valiant in deed; elsewhere both Salisbury and Oxford fought mightily, and also, of a truth, the noble barons of Gascony, the Captal and the Lord of Pommiers, valiant and loyal, d’Albret, Lesparre and Langoiran(?), Fossard, and Couchon and Roson, Mussian and he of Caupene, Montferrant, who above all strives with all his might to acquit himself well: these squires of high degree you might see smiting lustily and dealing such mighty strokes that it was a great marvel. There was a right sore battle, there might you see many a man slain. A long space this struggle endured until there was none so bold but was abashed at heart; but the Prince cried out aloud many a time: ‘Forward, sirs,’ quoth he, ‘for God! Let us win this field and place if we set store by life and honour.’ So much did the valiant Prince, who was so sage and prudent, that the victory turned to him, and that his enemies fled and divers departed, wherefore King John made exclamation: he, himself, fought valiantly, and with him many good knights that thought assuredly to succour him. But his strength availed him little, for the Prince made such onslaught that he was taken by force, and Philip also, his son, my Lord Jaques de Bourbon, and a goodly number of others, the Count of Eu, the right courteous Count Charles of Artois, and Charles the good Count of Dammartin, loyal-hearted and true, and the good Count of Joigny; he of Tancarville also, the Count of Sarrebruck that never hid behind, and Venta- dour, the good Count of Sancerre. All these were taken that day, and many high and honourable bannerets, whose names I cannot give; but, by what I heard tell, there were fully sixty taken, counts and bold bannerets, and more than a thousand others, whose title I cannot give. And, by what I heard, there died there, I warrant you: the right noble Duke of Bourbon, the brave Duke of Athens, and the Marshal de Clermont, Matas, Landas, and Ribemont, with Sir Renaut de Pons and others, whose names I will not name to you; but by what I have heard tell, and by what I hear set forth in the matter, there were full three thousand dead. May God receive the souls! for the bodies abode on the field. Then did one see the English joyous, and they shouted aloud in many a place: ‘Guyenne! St. George!’ There might you see the French scattered! For booty you might see many an archer, many a knight, many a squire, running in every direction, to take prisoners
on all sides. Thus were the French taken and slain that day, as I hear in my record.

Sirs, that time of which I tell you was one thousand three hundred and fifty and six years after the birth of Christ, and also, as I think, it was nineteen days on in September, the month before October, that this great battle befell that was certainly right horrible. Pardon me if I relate it briefly, for I have passed over it lightly, because I would narrate to you of this noble Prince, right valiant and bold, gallant in words and deeds. Then was King John brought before him; the Prince gave him right hearty greeting, and rendered thanks to Almighty God, and to do more honour to the King would fain help him to disarm. But King John said to him: ‘Fair, sweet cousin, for God’s pity, let be, it beseems me not, for, by the faith I owe you, you have to-day more honour than ever had any Prince on one day.’ Then said the Prince: ‘Sweet sir, it is God’s doing and not ours: and we are bound to give thanks to Him therefor, and beseech Him earnestly that He would grant us His glory and pardon us the victory.’ Thus did they both hold converse and speak kindly together. The English made right merry. The Prince lodged that night in a little pavilion among the dead on the plain, and his men all around him. That night he slept but little. In the morning he broke camp, set out towards Bordeaux, and all the noble knights, and they took with them their prisoner. So long did they ride and journey that they came to Bordeaux. Nobly were they received and welcomed by all the people; with crosses and processions, singing their orisons, all the members of the collegial churches of Bordeaux came to meet them, and the ladies and the damsels, old and young, and serving-maids. At Bordeaux was such joy made that it was marvellous to behold. There the Prince abode the whole winter. Then he dispatched his messenger to the noble King, his father, and to the Queen his mother, with the tidings how he had sped, in what wise God had wrought for him, and asked that they should send him over vessels wherein he might bring the King of France to England to do the more honour to the land.

When the King heard the news, he rejoiced right heartily, praising God, clasping his hands, saying: ‘Fair, sovereign Father, be extolled for all these benefits.’ And the gentle Queen gave great praise to God and the pure virgin who had sent her such offspring as was her son the Prince, who was of so great valour. They dispatched the messenger speedily, and sent him vessels and barges, such that there was a goodly number. The vessels came to Bordeaux, whereat the Prince rejoiced greatly. No longer would he tarry. He had all his harness loaded; the barons took ship, and all the knights of repute; the King and all the prisoners and that which was needful they brought on board. They sailed until they came to England, and so soon as they landed they sent to the King tidings that were to him good and fair. To meet him he let summon all the barons to do him honour; he himself in person came there with more than a score of earls. Up to London they escorted the Prince, for they welcomed him (?). There were they gladly greeted by the ladies and so received that never was such rejoicing made as was at that time. There was the noble and puissant King, and the Queen his wife, and his mother, who held him dear; many a lady, many a damsel, right amorous,
sprightly, and fair. There was dancing, hunting, hawking, feasting, and jousting, as in the reign of Arthur, the space of four years or more.

Then the King made another expedition to France with his noble following, and the noble Prince also, and Duke Henry of Lancaster, and more than ten thousand others, whose titles I will not give, for it behoves me to dispatch quickly. But, as the book says, he rode through Artois and Picardy and Vermendois and Champagne, Burgundy and Brie, right to the Yonne (?), I assure you, and came as far as before Paris. There were the noble and renowned King and the noble and valiant Prince; there they were encamped in the open, drawn up in battle array — about that can there be no debate — but they did not engage. Then they turned their expedition towards Chartres. There the peace was agreed to, which was afterwards sworn; in this peace-making the Prince of right noble conditions was concerned, for by him and his admonition the two Kings came to terms, and King John was set free from prison; and there by the peace was all Guyenne delivered into the keeping of the noble King and of his son the very valiant Prince. And this peace whereof I speak was in the year of our Lord one thousand three hundred with sixty, at the time when the nightingale sings, eight days on in the gay month of May, when birds wax bold.

They returned to England bringing their great array. Very noble feast was made them, and right well were they welcomed. After the day of All Saints, just at this time, of that I am sure, the two Kings were together at Calais, methinks; and the Prince and all the barons and all the knights of repute of all the realm of England, and of all the realm of France also, were there of their free will. There each one swore on the book, and also without reserve on the holy and precious sacrament, that they would hold the peace surely (?) without ever breaking it and without renewing the war. Thus both the noble Kings agreed in making peace. The King of France went away, who made but short stay further; the noble King and the Prince of noble conditions returned with great joy to England, bringing with them the hostages.

The gentle Prince married no long while afterwards a lady of great renown, who enkindled love in him, in that she was beauteous, charming, and discreet. And after that marriage he delayed no longer, but betook himself without tarrying, in brief season, to Gascony, to take possession of his land and country. The very noble Prince took his wife with him, for that he loved her greatly. He had of his wife two children. He reigned seven years in Gascony, in joy, in peace, and in pleasantness, for all the princes and barons of all the country round about came to him to do homage; for a good lord, loyal and sage, they held him with one accord, and rightly, if I dare say, for since the birth of God such fair state was never kept as his, nor more honourable, for ever he had at his table more than fourscore knights and full four times as many squires. There were held jousts and feasts in Angoulême and Bordeaux; there abode all nobleness, all joy and jollity, largesse, gentleness, and honour, and all his subjects and all his men loved him right dearly, for he dealt liberally with them. Those who dwelt about him esteemed and loved him greatly, for largesse sustained him and nobleness governed him, and discretion,
temperance and uprightness, reason, justice and moderation: one might rightly say that such a Prince would not be found, were the whole world to be searched throughout its whole extent. Neighbours and enemies had great dread of him, for so lofty was his courage that he held potent sway everywhere, so that his deeds should not be forgotten, neither in words nor actions.

Now it is not right that I should be backward in telling of a noble Spanish expedition, but very right that he should be esteemed therefor; for it was the noblest enterprise that ever Christian undertook, for by force he put back in his place a king whom his younger bastard brother had disinherited, as you will be able to hear if you give ear a little.

Now it is full time to begin my matter and address myself to the purpose to which I am minded to come, to what I saw befall after the battle in Brittany, in which the Duke and his company conquered and gained his land by the power of England. And there was slain Charles of Blois and many a noble and courteous baron, of high and puissant lineage, both of France and of Picardy. There were Sir Bertrand du Guesclin, of great renown, and many high lords of degree, of noble and puissant lineage, whose names I will not mention, because I might delay too much to come to my purpose, and to shorten my words the more.

You know that Sir Bertrand, right bold and valiant, with the approval of the Pope of Rome, led out of the realm of France the whole of the Great Company and a great part of the mounted men, and drew to himself many a man—barons, bachelors and earls, knights, squires, and viscounts. At the time of which I relate there was between Spain and Aragon a right marvellous war that had lasted, in very cruel fashion, the space of fourteen years and more. On this account Sir Bertrand du Guesclin, bold-hearted and true, was chosen, and the good Jean de Bourbon, styled Count of la Marche, and the gallant and loyal Marshal d'Audrehem and Eustace d'Aubréchicourt, of noble disposition (?), Sir Hugh of Calverley, who gladly smites with his sword, and Sir Matthew de Gournay, and many other true knights, to go (?) into that country and by their great valour bring about peace between the Kings, and open the passes and defiles of Granada, that these many valiant men and good lords might set out to conquer. Thus were they all accorded. For this agreement Sir Bertrand and his men received great monies.

When they had set forth on their way, he and all his company, they passed the defiles of Aragon, and then in right brief season they sent tidings to the King of Castile by a messenger, how he should accord and swear peace to Aragon, and that he should open the passage for them to go on a holy expedition in which all good feats of arms might fortune against the enemies of God. He, who was proud and disdainful, and feared little the power either of them or others, conceived sore displeasure thereat in his heart, and said that he would esteem himself but little if he obeyed such people. Then he let assemble his forces and prepared himself right stoutly to defend his country. Then he summoned great and small, gentlemen, freemen, and serfs, and thought to be well assured of defending his land against them. Fair, sweet sirs, may it please you, hearken! English, French and Bretons, Normans, Picards and Gascons, all entered into Spain, and so did the Great
Company; the good Hugh of Calverley, and Gournay his comrade, and many good and bold knights, crossed there without delay, and gained by their emprise all the land that King Pedro had formerly conquered. Right sore grieved at heart was Don Pedro of Spain, the king; he says he will esteem himself no whit if he take not vengeance for all this. But little did his power avail, for not a month had passed when, by the great disloyalty of those who were bound to serve him, it behoved him to quit Spain and abandon his royal state (?), for all those who should have loved him were disloyal to him, so that one should verily say he ought not to be called lord that is not beloved of his people. This is manifest by this king, who was of so proud a disposition that he had fear of no man, but weened well that none could do him any hurt, howsoever great his power might be; but in no great while he had no friend nor relative, cousin-german, uncle, nor brother that did not part from him. They crowned his bastard brother, bestowed on him all the land, and all in Castile held him for lord, both great and small.

Don Pedro durst wait no longer, but betook himself then incontinent to Seville, where his treasure had remained. He had galleys and ships loaded, and his treasure placed in them. Hastily he embarked, as the story says; day and night he sailed until he came to the port of Corunna, the which is in Galicia. And the Bastard was no fool; he rode through Castile; not a city remained of which he did not get possession; there were neither earls nor barons that did not do him homage, saving only one reputed sage,—Fernandez de Castro, they that knew him called him—and right valiant and noble was he, and he vowed, so God aided him, that never for a day would he forsake him who was king by right, and if they all would do it—those who had the power—yet could not he suffer a bastard to hold a kingdom. But all the others of the country were altogether agreed that Henry should remain king of Castile and of Toledo and Seville, and Cordova, and of Leon. By the accord of all the barons was Castile thus conquered, and by the power and emprise of Sir Bertrand du Guesclin. Now you will be able to hear the held him, how it fortuned after this day, not a score of years ago.

Now begins a noble tale, of noble and puissant import (?), for pity, love, and justice dwelled together in his upbringing, as you will hear. You have well heard me recount the foregoing matter. Right wretched was King Pedro at Corunna on the sea, and full of cruel, bitter grief (?), for they had failed him that should have been his friends. Exceeding sad was he and could devise no means whereby he might obtain succour, neither for pure gold nor for treasure. One day the King called to mind that he had long had alliances and amity—wherewith he held himself full content—with the King of England, of such noble disposition, for God had given him such virtue that since the time of King Arthur there was no king of such power; and if for that alliance, and for love and lineage, and for God, and for knightliness, he would send him succour, he might yet be saved.

Thereupon he called his council, and showed them the matter, and every one said he spoke well. Then a noble lord, Fernandez de Castro, the gentle, who was of right good counsel, spoke and said, 'Sire, hearken to me. By the faith I owe you, first of all, if you believe me, you will send straight to the Prince of Aquitaine,
who is his son; right valiant is he and bold, and so strong in men-of-arms that I ween there is no man living, save God, that would do him wrong; and, if you find him well minded to succour you, be certain that you will have Spain again in your hands before this year is over. To all this they readily agreed.

Don Pedro, the king of Castile, writes and seals incontinent, begging the Prince humbly that for God's sake first of all, and for love and pity, for alliance and amity, and by reason of lineage also, and for the right he has, without any doubt, that it please him, the right noble Prince, puissant, honourable, valiant and doughty, to succour justice and him, who petitions him in the name of patience; and that he would of his valiancy send ships to set him across, and bring him safely, for he would fain speak with him. The messenger came without delay.

At Bordeaux he found the Prince, who marvelled right greatly when he had read the letter. So soon as he had looked it through he called his knights and all his best councillors. He showed them all the letter, even as it was indited, and said to them, 'Fair lords, by my troth, I marvel at what I behold. Foolish is he who puts his trust in his might. You have well seen that France was, as I think, the most puissant Christian country, and now have God and right granted us strength to conquer our right; and also I have heard tell that the leopards and their company would spread abroad in Spain, and if it could be in our time we should be held the more valiant. Good counsel in this matter, my lords, you see to be right convenient. Now speak your minds thereon.' Then answered Chandos and next Thomas of Felton,—these two were comrades, of his most privy council,—and said to him, of a truth, that he could not accomplish this unless he had some alliance with the King of Navarre, who at that time kept the passage of the defiles. By the advice they tendered they summoned the King of Navarre, the Count of Armagnac also, and all the barons of the noble land of Aquitaine. And then all the great council assembled. Each one said what seemed to him good to do in the emprise; and know that it was arranged, by such council and such agreement, as I hear in my record, that vessels should be made ready at Bayonne without delay, men-at-arms and archers also, to go forthwith to seek King Peter in Spain. Sir Thomas Felton, the great seneschal of Aquitaine, was to be their captain. But whilst they were lading their vessels and making preparation the King Don Pedro in proper person arrived at Bayonne, bringing his sons and daughters, and that remnant of his treasure that God had left him, precious stones, pearls, silver and gold. When the Prince had knowledge of the tidings, they seemed to him good and pleasing. He went to Bayonne to meet him, and nobly welcomed him in great joy and pastance, and there they gave many a banquet. Why should I lengthen out and delay my story? Incontinent all were of accord, the King of Navarre also, to aid the King Don Pedro, and bring him again into Spain; since that for justice and amity he besought him so humbly, he ought assuredly to be succoured. All were agreed on this point, and henceforward the valiant Prince made no further tarrying.

He returned to Bordeaux and bade his men prepare. Many a noble and doughty knight he summoned throughout his land; nor did any delay, great nor small; Chandos was not behind, for he went to the Great Company in quest of
companions, up to fourteen pennons, apart from the others who returned from Spain when they heard that the Prince wished to aid the King Don Pedro to his right. They took leave of King Henry, who gave it them at once, and paid them right gladly, for they were no longer needful to him. He was King of Castile at that time, and held himself well satisfied that none could wrest it from him, howsoever great his power. To be brief, there then returned Sir Eustace d'Aubréchicourt, Devereux, Cresswell, Briquet, whose name is often on people's lips, and thereafter the Lord of Aubeterre that ever gladly followed after war, and the good Bernard de la Salle. All the merry companions returned to Aquitaine, but first they endured great sufferings, for when the Bastard knew verily that the Prince wished without delay to succour the King Don Pedro he wrought them sore hindrance; he cut all the roads, and night and morning he made to spring out many an ambush on them, and caused them to be attacked in divers fashion by genetours and villains. But God, who is sovereign Lord, brought them back in safety, right straight to the principality, whereat the Prince was right joyous, for he was right eager to accomplish his desire. And then without slackening he had gold and silver prepared and money to pay his men.

Sirs, the time I speak of was after the birth of God one thousand three hundred sixty and six years, when the gentle bird ceases to sing, three weeks before the day when Jesus Christ of His sweetness was born of the Virgin Mary. Have no doubt of the time.

Very nobly did the gentle Prince order his payment. Then might you see swords and daggers forged at Bordeaux, coats of mail, and bassinets, lances, axes and gauntlets. Exceeding noble would the equipment have been, had there been thirty kings.

The muster of the noble Prince's army was held at Dax. There assembled the barons and the knights from round about. All the companions camped in the fields at that time. In the Basque country, among the mountains, the great companies camped; they abode there more than two months, and endured great privations, all to await the passage, that they could go on their way. There they stayed all winter up to the month of February, until all were assembled, the distant and the near. But, according to what I heard, the Prince set out from Bordeaux fifteen days after Christmas. And then the Princess had right bitter grief at heart, and then she reproached the goddess of love who had brought her to such great majesty, for she had the most puissant Prince in this world. Often she said: 'Alas! what should I do, God and Love, if I were to lose the very flower of nobleness, the flower of loftiest grandeur, him who has no peer in the world in valour? Death! thou wouldst be at hand. Now have I neither heart nor blood nor vein, but every member fails me, when I call to mind his departure; for all the world says this, that never did any man adventure himself on so perilous an expedition. O very sweet and glorious Father, comfort me of your pity.' Then did the Prince hearken to his gentle lady's words; he gave her right noble comfort and said to her: 'Lady, let be your weeping, be not dismayed, for God has power to do all.' The noble Prince gently comforts the lady, and then sweetly takes leave of her, saying
Lady, we shall meet again in such wise that we shall have joy, we and all our friends, for my heart tells me so.' Very sweetly did they embrace and take farewell with kisses. Then might you see ladies weep and damsels lament; one bewailing her lover and another her husband. The Princess sorrowed so much that, being then big with child, she through grief delivered and brought forth a very fair son, the which was called Richard. Great rejoicings did all make, and the Prince also was right glad at heart, and all say with one accord: 'Behold a right fair beginning.'

Then the Prince set forth, he waited no more; no longer did he tarry there. Very rich was his array. He came to Dax and abode there, for news was brought him that the Duke of Lancaster was on his way, commanding and maintaining a great company. Then he was minded to stay and await his brother. And know that the noble Duke, when he heard it said that the Prince had set forth from Bordeaux, was sore grieved, for he thought not to come in time. He had landed in the Cotentin, and hastened much to ride, he and all the knights; he passed through the Cotentin into Brittany. To meet him there was a fair company, for Duke John of Brittany came; with him the greatest barons of his land, those he held most dear, Clisson, Knolles, and many who did him great honour. He feasted him in his land, but he made there but short stay, for it behoved him to make speed on account of the Prince, who would fain cross. He took leave without delay of Duke John and his wife.

Night and morning the noble Duke of Lancaster rode until he came right to Bordeaux, and found there the Princess, mistress of all honour, who welcomed him sweetly and very graciously asked news of her country, how they fared in England. And the Duke recounted all. Then the Duke tarried no more, for he left Bordeaux; he rode through the Landes, hastening right speedily till he came to the city of Dax. He found his brother, the Prince, who came to meet him with more than twenty knights, and know, moreover, that at this time the Count of Foix was there. Great joy of each other did they make as soon as they met together. Then they kissed and embraced, and the Prince said, smiling: 'Duke of Lancaster, sweet brother, welcome in our land. Tell me, how fares the King our father, and the Queen our mother, all our brothers, and all our friends?' 'Sire,' said he, 'by God's mercy they fare no other than well. Our father tells you to send word to him if there lack aught that he can do. Our mother gives you greeting. All our brothers commend themselves to you, and send word by me that gladly would they have come if they had had leave.'

Conversing thus they came to Dax, holding each other by the hand, and that night they made very merry. Of their talk I know no more, nor will I recount anything further. The Count of Foix returned into the land where he dwelt, and the Prince stayed at Dax awaiting the time and hour when he could pass the defiles. As yet he knew not whether they would cross by the pass of Roncevaux, for it was said that the King of Navarre was allied to Henry the Bastard, whereat many were dismayed. But at this time and juncture Hugh of Calverley took Miranda-de-Arga and Puente la Reina, whereat Navarre was affrighted. The King sent his...
messenger to the Prince forthwith, without delay, and announced the deed to him, what Hugh had done to them. Afterwards the loyal-hearted Sir Martin came from Navarre; by his sage counsel he helped to secure for them the passage.

Right soon after this day it befell that the King of Navarre came to St. Jean Pied du Port, and the Duke of Lancaster and Chandos went then to meet him. They escorted him towards the Prince to a place where they found him. Peyre-horade was the name of the town and the house. There came King Pedro, and there their oath was renewed on the body of Jesus, and each one was agreed as to what he was to have. The next day the King, the Duke, and Chandos left, for it was settled that the vanguard should pass, first of all, the next Monday; and they without long delay reached St. Jean. There they were lodged, and the next day proclamation was made that every one should make ready to pass the next Monday, those in sooth who were chosen to cross in the vanguard. Now it is right that I should take heed to enumerate the vanguard. Fair sirs, first I should name the Duke of Lancaster, who was valiant, bold, and courageous, and had in his company many noble knights. There was the good Thomas d'Ufford, bold and strong, the good Hugh of Hastings, and his noble comrade William Beauchamp, son of the Earl of Warwick, the Lord of Neville also, and many a good bold knight, whom now I will not name, as I wish to speak of them elsewhere. Next I must name Chandos, Constable of the army, leader of all the Companions, whose names I will tell you. First of all the Lord de Rays, good and valiant in deeds, next the Lord d'Aubeterre, eager in pursuit of war, Messire Garsis de Castel, valiant and loyal-hearted, and Gaillard (?) de la Motte also, and Aimery de Rochechouart, and Messire Robert Camyn, Cresswell, and the true-hearted Briquet and Messire Richard Taunton and William Felton and Willecock le Boteller and Peverell of the proud heart, John Sandes, a man of renown, and John Alein, his companion, next afterwards Shakell and Hawley. All these pennons were companions to Chandos, and placed under his pennon. Next were the Marshals, loyal men of valour, one Stephen of Cosinton, a very noble knight, the other the good Guichard d'Angle, who ought not to be set aside, rather is it very right that he should be remembered; with them they had the banner of St. George, and many other knights in their company.

Now, my lords, I have enumerated and completely named the vanguard, which lingered not, but made the passage wholly, on Monday, the 14th of February. But since the just God suffered death for us on the cross there was no such painful passage, for one saw men and horses, that suffered many ills, stumble on the mountain; there was no fellowship; the father made no tarrying for the son; there was cold so great, snow and frost also, that each one was dismayed, but by the grace of God all passed in due time, ten thousand horses and more, and the men upon them, and camped in Navarre. And the next day all those who were with the Prince in his division made ready.

Now it is very right that I should recount to you the names of these noble barons: first of all the Prince and the King Don Pedro, whom I should rightly name, and the King of Navarre also—these three passed without delay; Messire Louis de
Harcourt and Eustace d'Aubréchicourt, Messire Thomas Felton and the Baron de Parthenay, and all the brothers De Pommiers, that were noble knights, and then the Lord de Clisson and the good Lord de Curton. The right courageous Lord de la Warre was there, and Messire Robert Knolles, of short speech. The Viscount de Rochechouart was also there, and the rightful Lord of Bourchier and many other honourable knights, and the Seneschal of Aquitaine, a noble captain, and the Seneschals of Poitou, the Angoumois, of Saintonge, Périgord, and Quercy, he that was bold and loyal; moreover, I will also name to you the High Seneschal of Bigorre. These I mention were assuredly in the Prince's division, and good four thousand others, whose names I will not give, but they were good twenty thousand horse that all passed on the Tuesday. And the King of Navarre also crossed with the Prince, and escorted and guided him beyond the passes. And God, who was merciful, permitted them all to cross, but great hardships did the noble Prince of Aquitaine suffer in the passage.

On the Wednesday the rearguard also crossed: the noble King of Majorca, and the valiant, courteous, and right gentle Count of Armagnac, the bold Berard d'Albret, the Lord of Mussidan, and other honourable knights of noble fame. And there were also other pennon-bearers: [to wit] Sir Bertucat d'Albret; and also know assuredly that the Bour de Breteuil was there, and the Bour Camus, whose deeds I am not forgetting; Naudon de Bageran was there also, and Bernard de la Salle and Lami: all these, without doubt, were placed in the rearguard and passed on the Wednesday out of the defile. Now I will tell you truly. Each one of these divisions camped in the concha of Pampeluna. There they found bread and wine, so that they were filled.

Afterwards, without long delay, the noble Lord d'Albret crossed with the noble, valiant and loyal-hearted Captal, each one with two hundred fighting-men, valiant and bold men-at-arms. Now the army was all collected together again. The tidings were brought to Henry the Bastard of Spain, who was lodged, he and his company, at Santo Domingo. Now he was not greatly dismayed, but on the advice he received was minded to send the Prince a letter. This he did, writing these words in the letter, as you shall hear:—

'Most puissant, honoured, and noble Prince of Aquitaine! Dear Sire, it is a certain thing, as we have heard, that you and your men are come and have crossed to this side of the passes, and that you have made agreements and alliance with our enemy, whereat we have great wonder. I know not who counsels you, for I have never done you wrong or harm, wherefore you should hate us or take from us that little land that God has lent us of His will: but forasmuch as we know well that there is no lord holding land in this world nor any creature to whom God has given such fortune in arms as He has to you, and since we know well that you and your men seek only to have battle, we beg you in all courtesy that you will inform us merely in what place you will enter our seignory, and we pledge our word to you that we will be over against you to give battle.'

Then he had his letter sealed, and sent it by his herald, who journeyed without fail until he found the Prince: forthwith he delivered to him the letter.
And the Prince rejoiced greatly at the letter and showed it to his barons and set forth to them the tenour. Then King Pedro was summoned and all the council convened to advise about the answer, how he should send back and reply to him. But meanwhile Sir Thomas Felton craved a gift of the Prince, that it would please him to grant him only this one thing, that he might ride out ahead to go and spy out their army; and the Prince granted it him. And then Thomas called the companions, as many as he wished to have. Thomas d’Ufford and the lion-hearted William Felton, Hugh of Stafford and Knolles of short speech, were there; and there came also to the muster Messire Simon Burleigh. There were certainly, as I heard say, eight score lances, and there were three hundred archers. Then they began to ride through Navarre, day and night; they had guides and conductors. At Logroño they crossed the river, whose waters were swift and fierce, and camped at Navaretta to hear and know about their doings, how their army was being directed. Whilst this was being done the King of Navarre was taken by treason; whereat the Prince and his council were amazed. Now was Messire Martin de La Carra ruler and governor of all the country of Navarre. By the advice of the Queen, who is worthy to have every blessing, he came to the Prince and related to him the capture, in what wise it befell, and begged him to keep and govern the country. The Prince marvelled greatly when he heard it word for word, and answered graciously: ‘I am sore grieved at the capture. Now I cannot recover him, but you know well, in good sooth, the very best that I can do is to quit his land. If good befalls me, it shall be for him, so please God, as much as for myself. I have no other counsel.’ Thereupon he bade the army make ready to set out in the early morning. Then he prayed Messire Martin to procure him guides; and know verily that so he did. Then he crossed the pass of Arruiz, which was very strait and narrow—much hardship did the army suffer there—and afterwards, of a surety, he journeyed through Guipuzcoa. But scant provisions did he find for his army right through the land until he came to Salvatierra.

Now was the army come to Spain and it spread itself abroad over the country. The noble company of knights lodged near Salvatierra, in the villages; they thought to attack the town, but know well that without delay it surrendered to the King Don Pedro as soon as it beheld him. There the Prince abode six days in the country round about, and meanwhile his men were at Navaretta, who often rode out and spied on the Bastard’s army until it happened that one night they made their attack on their watch. All on horseback they charged upon them and took the knight that had command of the watch, and two or three others. Then the alarm was raised. Tq Messire Simon Burleigh fell prisoner the knight aforesaid. Then incontinent they came back to Navaretta, where they were lodged, and from the prisoners they had taken they learnt the truth about the army. Speedily they sent word to the Prince.

And the Bastard, on the other side, knew the tidings of the other army, and said that he would break up his camp and come to meet them. And when Thomas Felton knew it, and all his companions, they departed from Navaretta. They rode always in front of the army to report more exactly the tidings. They stayed on the other side until the Spaniards had crossed and they were minded to come this side
of the mountains before Vittoria. In front of Vittoria, on the plain, Sir Thomas Felton and his companions camped. They sent word of this to the Prince, just what they had done. When the Prince heard the matter, even so as it stood, how the Bastard was coming straight to him, eager for battle, then he said: 'So help me Jesus Christ, the Bastard is right bold. In God's name let us go, my lords, and take up our position before Vittoria. The next day he came in front of Vittoria. There the Bastard was not yet in sight, but was on the plain on the other side of the mountain. When the Prince was in the fields, there he found his knights. Very gladly did he see them, and said to them, 'Fair, sweet Sirs, be welcome more than a hundred times.'

As they thus talked together the currous were scouring the field. They brought word to the Prince... that they had seen, they thought, the enemy's currous. Then there was a stir in the camp, and all the army gathered together. The cry 'To arms!' might be heard. The Prince drew up his men and set his divisions in order. There might a man regale himself at the sight, one to whom naught was at stake, for one could see gleaming pure gold and azure and silver, gules and sable, also sinople and crimson and ermine; there was many a precious banner of silk and sendal also, for since the time of which I now tell you so noble a sight has not been seen. There was the vanguard drawn up very nobly that day. There might one see knighted squires of high degree. The King Don Pedro did the Prince first make knight, and afterwards Thomas of Holland, ever ready for deeds of arms, and then Hugh de Courteney, Philip and Peter, as I know well; John Trivet, Nicholas Bond; and the Duke, in whom all virtue abounds, knighted Raoul Camois, fair and courteous in deeds, and Walter Ursewick also, and then Thomas d'Auvirmaetri and Messire John Grendon. There the noble and redoubtable Duke, of enduring fame, made twelve knights or thereabout. And know well that there incontinent was many a good knight made whose name I cannot tell; but, by what I heard related, the Prince, with his men, made that day more than two hundred.

All day were they there in battle-order and ready to abide the onset. But it pleased not Mary's Son that the enemies should come that day, for, by Saint Peter, the rearguard was behind more than seven of the country's leagues, whereat the Prince was sore grieved. At vespers they went to their quarters. Then the Prince let cry that each one should return the next day right to that plain, and that no one should go beyond the vanguard, and that each one should be on his guard and should camp under his banner. But, by the faith I owe St. Peter, Sir Thomas Felton and William his companion went off to encamp, more than two leagues of the country away, methinks.

Now it is full time that I should tell you of Don Tello, the noble earl, who addressed his brother the Bastard Henry in these words: 'Sire,' said he, 'now listen to me. It is very true, as you know in sooth, that our enemies are lodged very near here, and therefore, if you so will and give me leave, I will ride out in the morning and report you the truth about the enemies, what they are doing.' The Bastard replies to him forthwith that he fully approved of this proposal, and that Sancho, his brother, should accompany him, and D'Audrehem, the good Marshal, should also go;
the expedition should be made with six thousand mounted men; thus was the matter settled. Sir Bertrand du Guesclin would have gone on it, but he had arrived that day, it was said, for he came straight from Aragon. Thus were their dispositions taken. Fiercely do they threaten the English, saying that for their great insolence they would make them die in shame.

Now may God aid the right! The Prince was encamped in front of Vittoria; and round about there was no hovel nor house not wholly full of his men. But the Prince the next day was not aware of the expedition that Don Tello was preparing; for know that without sleeping he rose at midnight, rode the broadest road straight up the mountain, until he brought his company right down a valley. First he met Hugh of Calverley, who was breaking up, and coming towards the Prince. The currours wrought great damage to his sumpter beasts and waggons, whereat noise and shouting arose, and the currours ran up and down through the camp: many were killed in their beds. There the vanguard would have been sorely surprised had it not been for the noble Duke of Lancaster, full of valour; for as soon as he heard the shouting he sallied forth from his lodging and took his station on the mountain. There his company rallied, and all the others as best they could, and it is said that the Spaniards thought to take this mountain; but round the Duke and his banner all the banners of the army gladly gathered. Thither the Prince and Chandos came, and there the army was drawn up; there you might see the currours repulsed with force. Each one strove to acquit himself well.

Then the main body of the Spaniards rode up and met Felton and Sir Richard Taunton, Degori Says (?), Ralph de Hastings, who cared not two cherries for death, and Sir Gaillard Beguer, and many a good and valiant knight: they were a good one hundred fighting-men together, great and small. Their company rallied on a little mountain, but Sir William, the valiant, very boldly and bravely charged among the enemy like a man devoid of sense and discretion, on horseback, lance couched. Striking a Spaniard upon his flower-emblazoned shield, he made him feel through the heart his sharp blade of steel. Down to the ground he hurled him in the sight of all the people. Like a man full of great hardihood he rushed upon them, with drawn sword, and the Castilians by their might followed him on all sides, and threw spears and darts at him. They slew his horse under him, but Sir William Felton defended himself stoutly on foot, like a lion-hearted man; albeit his defence availed him little, for he was slain. God have mercy on him.

And the others joined together on a mountain which they took; there the Spaniards made many an onslaught on them, fiercely attacking them without cessation, and hurling at them spears and darts and strong, sharp archeagays. And they, who were very courageous, gave proof of their prowess like men of valour, for more than a hundred times that day they descended without ceasing, their sharp lances in their hands, and by force made them give way. Nor would the Castilians have been able to harm them, by casting lance or dart, had it not been for the French and Bretons, the Normans, Picards, and Burgundians, who came up a valley with Marshal d'Audrehem and Sir Jehan de Neufville. Those were together a thousand. As soon as they saw them, they all immediately dismounted.
The English and Gascons saw well that they could not long withstand there, for they had no support, and the French on foot ran at full speed to attack them; and the others without slackening defended themselves fiercely, but they were not one hundred against more than six thousand. And these knights approved themselves well, and there did such feats of arms that never were Oliver nor Roland able to do more, as I have heard related. But their defence availed but little, for by force they had to yield themselves prisoners. There were taken: Hastings and Degori Says (?), Gaillard Beguer, a perfect knight, the three brothers Felton, and with them Richard Taunton, Mitton, and many others, whose names I have not mentioned: whereat the Prince was sore grieved, but he thought certainly that the whole army had come down through the pass and on that account he would not break up his army; for he would have gone to succour his men, had it not been for this, for that he was bound to do: but it was not so done. And they who had carried out their emprise, as soon as it was told them that the Prince was near there, departed at their speediest and turned back. They take the prisoners with them, treating them very harshly.

Greatly did King Henry rejoice at their return, and he said to them: 'Wel-2827
come, fair sirs, greatly am I beholden to you,' and then added, in these express
words: 'All the others will follow. It is to his undoing that the Prince thinks
to take my land and attack me: I will therefore cause him to know that great greed
of possession has made him undertake this expedition. Whoso could take him
prisoner, to him I would give so much silver and gold that he might make a
treasure thereof.' When the Marshal heard him, very softly he said to him:
'Sire,' quoth he, 'what are you saying? As yet you have not disincomfited all the
good knights. But be sure and certain that you will find them proper men-at-arms
when you fight against them. But if you will believe good counsel you will be able,
in sooth, to disincomfit them without striking a blow; if you will keep the defiles
whereby they must pass and have your army well guarded. If you do not give them
battle, through great lack of victuals you will see them quit Spain, or you will see
them die of hunger.' Thus was the Bastard King advised by French counsel. And
the Prince was still encamped in battle-order before Vittoria, for he still waited
there to see if the Bastard would come down, his troops drawn up, and his banners
unfurled. That night he camped in the open. There was there none too good
cheer, for many there were, by St. Martin, who had neither bread nor wine. None
too pleasant was the stay there, for there were often conflicts and skirmishes with
geneteurs; and of the English there were many slain, of them and of the others.
Very ugly and foul was the weather, with rain and wind also. Sirs, the time I am
telling you of | was in March, when it often rains, blows, and snows—never was2879
worse weather—and the Prince was in the open, where there were many hardships
to endure, both for men-at-arms and horses. And the Monday the Prince raised his
camp and moved. He turned back through Navarre; he crossed a pass which is
called by name the Pas de La Guardia. He journeyed until he came to camp at
Viana, and speedily after this it befell that he passed the bridge of Logroño. The
Prince, who is very anxious and eager for battle, camped that day in front of
Logroño, in the orchards and under the olive-trees. And the Bastard King learnt by spies that the Prince’s army was encamped before Logroño in the gardens. Then he stopped neither night nor morning; he turned back from St. Vincent and encamped on the river, in a vineyard, beneath Najares. A fair army he had, puissant and noble. Thereupon the Prince sent him a letter which ran thus:—

‘Right puissant and honourable Henry, who art called Duke of Trastamare, who else styles himself for the present time in his letters King of Castile. We have well heard the tidings of your noble letters present, that are fair and gracious, of which the tenour is in sooth that you would gladly know wherefore we have plighted our troth and are allied with your enemy, whom we hold as our friend. Know that we are bound to do it to fulfil the alliances made in the past, and for love and pity and to maintain the right; for you should assuredly feel in your heart that it is not right that a bastard should be king to disinherit the lawful heir. No man born of lawful wedlock should agree to that. Of another point we apprise you, that, whereas you have such renown, and are held so valiant, we would very gladly be at pains to accord you both, and would ourselves see to it that you should have a large share in Castile. But reason and right ordain that you must give up the crown, and thus in truth fair peace might be nourished between you. And as to the entrance into Spain, know that I and my company with the help of God will enter there by whatsoever place it shall please us to enter, without asking leave of any man.’

Thus was the letter indited and thereafter sealed. They delivered it to a herald, who was glad and merry at heart and made great rejoicings, for they bestowed on him fine jewels, ermine robes, furred mantles. Then he tarried no longer. He took leave and departed; he came to his master, King Henry, and gave him the letter. The Bastard, when he looked at it and perceived the intent the Prince had made known to him, knew well that he was of high worth, and without making more delay he called his council together and asked: ‘What seems good to you to do in all this matter?’ Each one spoke his mind. Messire Bertrand du Guesclin, bold and true-hearted, said to him: ‘Sire, doubt not, for you will speedily have battle. Ill do you know, in sooth, the great power that the Prince leads. There is the flower of knighthood, there is the flower of bachelry, there are the best fighting-men living in the world, so that you have great need to make ready and marshal your men.’ ‘Sir Bertrand, have no fear,’ answered the Bastard Henry, ‘for I shall have, I am sure of it, good four thousand barded horses who will be on the two sides of the two wings of my army, and moreover you will see, know assuredly, good four thousand geneteurs; and of men-at-arms, of the best that can be found in all Spain, I shall have two thousand in my company, and, moreover, I can have, know well, fifty thousand men on foot and six thousand crossbow-men. Between here and Seville there dwell neither free men nor villeins but all are sure to help me, and have pledged their word to me that they will ever look on me as king, so that I have no fear that I shall not have the victory.’ Thus did they hold converse that night in great joy and pastance.

And the Prince made no tarrying. The next morning, at break of dawn, he
moved from before Logroño, for he delayed not at all. In right battle-array they rode that morning, so fairly ordered that never had any man seen so noble a host since the birth of Jesus. That day was Friday. Two leagues the Prince rode that day without making halt, and well he thought that day to have the battle. He sent out his currous in all directions, who were at great pains to report the truth; and, to speak sooth, they saw the disposition of the other army, and perceived that it was camped on the river, near Najara, on the moor, in the orchards and the fields—very mighty was their army—and that in no wise did they look as if they would move that day. They speedily reported to the Prince, who was camped at Navaretta, how they found the army. Then they heard at once the disposition of the battle. Now were the two armies camped together, about two leagues apart, methinks. That night each was on his guard and took heed to himself, and they slept under arms. And before it was day King Henry sent out spies on the English in divers directions to know about their movements; but these, if the chronicle does not lie, set forth earlier and began to ride. But the true-hearted Prince did not go the most direct road, but took the road to the right hand. They descended a mountain and a big valley, all on horseback, so nobly arrayed and in such fair close order that it was marvellous to behold. And the Bastard without slackening had at midnight set in order and instructed his army. On foot were Sir Bertrand and the good and valiant Marshal d'Audrehem, of great nobility, and the renowned Count Sancho, the Count of Denia likewise, who was truly from Aragon. Le Bègue de Villaines was there also, a very good leader, Messire Jean de Neufville, and more than four thousand others, whose names I cannot give, from Spain, from Aragon, from France, Picardy, Brittany, and Normandy, and many another distant country. Next on the left hand was the Count Don Tello, on horseback, with more than twelve thousand genetours, mounted men. On the right was the royal wing of the bastard king, called Henry, the which had with him good fifteen thousand armed men and many men of the country—crossbow-men, villeins, varlets, with lances and sharp darts, and slings to throw stones—to guard the front ranks. Never was such a marvel nor such abundance of men seen as there were that day. There was many an embroidered banner, both of sendal and of silk. A little towards the side were the barded horses, to the number of four thousand five (?) hundred. A right sage knight commanded them—very wise was he, by name Gomez Carillo—with the Prior of St. Jean, who said that he would make the English suffer tribulation that day. And there was also the Master of St. Jacques and a good and bold knight called the Master of Calatrava; he said aloud that that day he would do so much that he would ride through the battle.

Now the matter was settled and all their host marshalled, and the Prince without delay came down from the mountain. When one army perceived the other, each knew well that naught remained but to fight, of this they are certain. No one would wait for the morrow. Sir John Chandos came forthwith to the Prince and brought him his banner, which was of silk, rich and brave. Very courteously he spake to him thus: 'Sire,' says he, 'mercy for God, I have served you in the past, and everything, whatsoever God has given me, comes from you, and you know well that I am wholly yours and will be always; and, if it seems to you time and place for me...
to raise my banner, I have enough fortune of my own (?), that God has given me to hold, wherewith to maintain it. Now do your pleasure in the matter. Behold it, I present it to you.' Then, incontinently, the Prince, the King Don Pedro, and the Duke of Lancaster also, unfurled his banner and handed it to him by the shaft and said to him forthwith: 'God grant you gain honour thereby'. And Chandos took his banner; he set it among the companions and said to them with joyous mien, 'Fair sirs, behold my banner. Guard it well as your own, for indeed it is yours as much as ours'. The companions rejoiced greatly. They set out forthwith (?) and wait no more; they are intent upon battle. This banner that I speak of, William Alby carried.

The English have dismounted, aflame with desire to win and achieve honour, and the Prince said to them that day: 'Sirs, there is no other end. You know well that we are nigh overtaken by famine, for lack of victual(?), and you see there our enemies who have plenty of provisions, bread and wine, salt and fresh fish, both from fresh water and the sea, but we must overtake them with blow of lance and sword. Now let us so act this day that we may depart in honour.' Then the valiant Prince clasped his hands to heaven and said: 'True, sovereign Father, who hast made and created us, as truly as Thou dost know that I am not come here save for the maintenance of right, and for prowess and nobility which urge and incite me to gain a life of honour, I beseech Thee that Thou wilt this day guard me and my men.' And when the Prince, fair to look upon, had made his prayer to God, then he said: 'Forward banner! God help us to our right!' And then the Prince forthwith took the King Don Pedro by the hand and said to him: 'Sire King, to-day will you know if ever you will have Castle again. Have firm faith in God.' Thus spake the valiant-hearted Prince. In the vanguard went forward | the noble and valorous Duke of Lancaster; and the good knight Chandos knighted there without delay Curson, Prior and Eliton, and William de Ferinton and Aimery de Rochechouart, Gaillard de la Motte and Messire Robert Briquet. There was many a knight made, who was full of valour and of noble and puissant lineage. On the field the Duke of Lancaster said to William Beauchamp: 'See there,' said he, 'our enemies; but so help me Jesus Christ, to-day you shall see me a good knight, if death causes me no hindrance.' Then he said: 'Forward, forward banner! Let us take the Lord God for our Protector and let each one acquit himself honourably.' And then the noble and valiant Duke placed himself before his men; more than a hundred he made bolder-hearted than they were before, methinks. In that hour the Duke knighted Jean d'Ypres of the proud heart.

Now began fierce battle, and the dust commenced to rise. Archers shoot swiftly, thicker than rain falls. Like a valiant man the Duke of Lancaster leads the way; after him goes Thomas d'Ufford and the stalwart Hugh de Hastings, each one with his banner unfurled, each one holding lance couched. On the right hand was Chandos, who acquired great renown that day, and Stephen Cosinton, John Devereux, a noble knight; and there was the good Guichard d'Angle that ever was in the forefront. With him he had his two sons and other knights of renown, who did their duty stoutly; and there was the right noble lord of Rays. There might one see the companions coming, all close together, banners and pennons. Each
one held lance in hand, and they made fierce onslaught to attack their enemies; and the archers kept on shooting, and the crossbow-men on the other side, who were with the Bastard; but all advanced so far on foot that they met together with Bertrand’s division, which caused them much mischief. There might you see thrust of lance as they came together; each one strove to acquit himself well. Then, of a surety, was no heart in the world so bold as not to be amazed at the mighty blows they dealt with the great axes they bore, and the swords and daggers. It was no great pastance, for you might see many a good knight fall to the ground.

Great was the din and reek (?). There was neither banner nor pennon that was not cast down. At one time that day Chandos was thrown to the ground; upon him fell a Castilian, great in stature—by name Martin Fernandez—the which was at great pains that he might slay him, and wounded him through the visor. Chandos, of bold mien, took a dagger from his side, and struck therewith the Castilian so that he thrust the sharp blade into his body. The Castilian stretched himself out dead, and Chandos leapt to his feet. He grasped his sword with both hands and plunged into the fray, which was fierce and terrible and marvellous to behold. He who was struck by him might be certain of death.

And elsewhere the noble Duke of Lancaster, full of valour, fought so nobly that every one marvelled, looking at his great prowess, how he put himself in jeopardy by his noble valiance; for I think that no creature, rich or poor, adventured himself so far forward as he did. And the Prince made no tarrying; know of a certainty he hasted fast to the battle. From the right side of his division | the King of Navarre’s banner and Sire Martin de la Carra set out with the Captal, of noble and loyal heart, and the rightful Lord d’Albret who strove to acquit himself well—together they were two thousand—to join battle with the Count Don Tello, who was on the left hand of the stout-hearted Sir Bertrand. But I can well record it, before they could come together Don Tello left and the Captal incontinently wheeled round upon the footmen. Sorely did they harry them that day. As men of hardihood they defended themselves valiantly. On the left, on the other side of the Prince, Percy, the Lord de Clisson, Sir Thomas Felton, and Sir Walter Hewet, who time and again is named, these came to visit and support the vanguard.

Then the clash increases, and mighty was the slaughter, for the noble Prince of Aquitaine brought up all his main division; there was none who was backward in the fight. On the left was a very little mountain; there, on the side, the rearguard had been commanded to stand, over against the barded horses. There was the King of Majorca, whom I should not forget, and the valiant Count d’Armagnac, the Lord of Sèvérac, Sir Berard d’Albret, and Bertucat, who was anxious and eager to fight, and moreover I have not named to you Sir Hugh of Calverley. Fiercer waxed the battle, which began on all sides. The Spaniards hurled with might archegays, lances, and darts. Each one strove to acquit himself well, for archers shot thicker than rain falls in winter time. They wounded their horses and men, and the Spaniards perceived well that they could no longer endure; they began to turn their horses and took to flight. When the Bastard Henry saw them he was filled with wrath. Three times he made them rally, saying, ‘Sirs, help me, for God’s sake, for you have made
me king and have also made oath to help me loyally.' But his speech is of no avail, for the attack waxed ever stronger.

What would you have me tell you? There was not in the Prince's following any man, however small, who was not as bold and as fierce as a lion: one cannot make comparison with Oliver and Roland. The Spaniards turned in flight, each one gave rein. Sore grieved and wrathful thereat was the Bastard when he saw them, but it behoved them to flee, or they would have been all taken and slain. Then the stress began, and then might you see the footmen slain with point and blade. The Bastard flees down a valley. But French, Bretons, and Normans still stand their ground, but their pride lasted only a short while, for they were speedily routed; and know that the cry was raised loudly in many a place, 'Guyenne! St. George!' There was Messire Bertrand taken and the noble Marshal d'Audrehem, of such great hardihood, and a count of great renown, Count of Denia by name. Count Sancho, doubt not, was taken there, who was a leader, together with Le Bègue de Villaines, Messire Jean de Neufville, and more than two thousand others; and, to make true report, Le Bègue de Villiers was slain, and divers others, whose names I cannot mention; but according to the report five hundred men-at-arms or more died on the strip of land where the battle was hand to hand. Also on the side of the English died a perfect knight: that was the Lord of Ferrers. The glorious God and St. Peter receive the souls of the dead! Sirs, for God, now listen.

The battlefield was on a fair and beauteous plain, whereon was neither bush nor tree for a full league round, along a fine river, very rapid and fierce, the which caused the Castilians much damage that day, for the pursuit lasted up to the river. More than two thousand were drowned there. In front of Najara, on the bridge, I assure you that the pursuit was very fell and fierce. There might you see knights leap into the water for fear, and die one on the other; and it was said that the river was red with the blood that flowed from the bodies of dead men and horses. So great was the discomfiture that methinks never could any creature have seen the like, so God help me: so great was the mortality that the number was reported as about seven thousand and seven hundred, and moreover I assure you that the Prince's followers entered the town. There were more than a thousand slain; and there the Grand Master of Calatrava was taken in a cellar; and the Prior of St. John who caused them much mischief, and the master of St. Jacques also. These two had withdrawn incontinent beside a high wall; there they were not safe, for men-at-arms climbed up, who were minded to attack them, but they yielded humbly, for they dared not await them. Thus were they slain and taken prisoner, whereat the noble and valiant Prince rejoiced greatly. He remained in the open and raised his banner, round which his men gathered.

My lords, the time I am telling you of was right on a Saturday, three days on in the month of April, when sweet and gentle birds begin to renew their songs in meadows, woods, and fields. It was at that time that, of a surety, befell the great battle before Najara, even as you have heard.

That night the Prince was lodged in the very lodging in which King Henry himself had been the night before. There they held high revel and thanked God
the Father, the Son, and his blessed Mother, for the grace he had done them, for know well that they found there forthwith wine and bread—all the camp was well furnished therewith—coffers, vessels, gold and silver, whereat many folks were right well pleased.

The King Don Pedro came to the Prince, who was right well affectioned to him, and said to him, 'Our dear cousin, well ought I to give you thanks, for this day you have done so much for me that never any day of my life shall I be able to repay it. 'Sire,' said he, 'if it please you, render thanks to God and not to me, for, by the faith I owe you, God has done it and not we, so that we should all be minded to pray Him mercy and yield Him thanks.' Don Pedro said that he spoke truly, and of this he was right slain, but that he wished to take vengeance on the traitors who by force had done him so much mischief. Thereupon the Prince said, of a truth, | 'Sire 3495 King, I pray you, grant me a gift, if it please you.' Quoth King Pedro: 'Alas! wherefore, Sire, do you ask me? All that I have is yours.' Then the Prince said incontinent: 'Sire, I wish for naught of yours. But I counsel you for good, if you wish to be king of Castile, that you send tidings everywhere that you have granted this gift: to bestow pardon on all who have been against you; and that, if through ill will or by evil counsel they have been with King Henry, you pardon them henceforward, provided that of their own accord they come to pray you mercy.' The King Don Pedro grants this, but sore against his will; then he said: 'Fair cousin, I grant it you, except for one; but I would not have all the gold of Seville to spare Gomez Carillo, for, certes, he is the traitor that most has done me dishonour.' And the Prince spake thus: 'Take your pleasure of him, and pardon all the others.' His bastard brother was brought, and divers other prisoners, whom he gladly pardoned, for the Prince's sake, and at his request. And then he turned him back, straight to his lodging, and there Gomez Carillo was made ready, and there he was drawn and his throat cut under his chin before all the people.

The Prince, the next Monday, | set forth from before Najara, and the King Don Pedro also. They took their way towards Burgos, and then the news went through Spain to all parts that the Bastard was discomfited. At Burgos was his wife, who had no time to delay. As soon as she heard the tidings she departed at her hastiest, with all that she could carry of goods that she could pack up. She rode day and night with her escort until she came to Aragon. Right sorely was she troubled. Sorrowing and weeping, she said: 'Alas, wherefore was I born? Queen of Castile was I, with rich and fair crown, but little space has fortune endured. Ah! death, who art common to all, for what waitest thou? Now fain would I die, for never could I have pastime or solace, what time, woe is me, they should say, "Behold the Queen of Spain whom the Great Company crowned." Ah, Prince, thy fell power has brought me low. Right honourable is the lady who is yoked to you, for she can say she has the flower of the whole world, and the best, and that she holds sway over all the world.' Thus spake the lovely lady who made such lament. And the noble and renowned Prince betook himself to Briviesca to lodge, and King Pedro rode straight before Burgos. To meet him there, came the rich burgesses, saying, 'Welcome, King.' Then he was received at Burgos, and the Prince came there after the
term of six days; and at Burgos he made sojourn for the term of a full month. Word was sent throughout Spain to every city and town, to Toledo and Seville, Cordova and Leon, throughout the whole realm, that each one should come without delay to cry mercy of King Pedro. Thither came from all sides the known and the unknown, and the King pardoned them all. Lords, I will not lie to you: the Prince gave judgement before Burgos and held gage of battle, wherefore it might truly be said that in Spain he had such power that all was under his sway. There came Don Fernandez de Castro, who was right noble and valiant. The Prince welcomed him greatly and showed him very great honour. At Burgos, the rich city, the Prince and his noble followers sojourned seven months or more, and there was their council held, and there were the oaths renewed that they had sworn, and that the King Don Pedro should go straight towards Seville to procure gold and silver to pay the Prince and his men; and the Prince was to await the King Don Pedro at Valladolid and round about, and fixed a certain day for him to return to him. But, to tell the truth, the Prince awaited him six months, wherefore his army endured sore distress of thirst and of hunger, for lack of bread and wine. A proverb I have heard said, that one should dispute for one's wife and fight for one's victuals. Lords, there is no pastance for him who has but scantly eaten and drunk. At that time there were a many who ate not bread whenever they were hungry, and yet they dared not, of a truth, attack towns nor castles, for the Prince had forbidden it; but should they have been hung for it they had to do it perforce, for great famine constrained them. And the Prince also took Amusco first, and was at Medina del Campo, and abode in the fields until he had provisions from the town, or he would have given them battle. Likewise the Great Company took several towns in Spain, but nevertheless, of a truth, they suffered great hardships while awaiting King Pedro. When they had stayed thus long and the day was passed that he was to be back, he sent a letter to the Prince the tenour of which set forth that he gave him great thanks for the service they had rendered him, for he was King of all Castile and every one called him lord; but that his people have answered him, to wit both great and small, that he could not have money if he did not withdraw his men, and accordingly he begged the Prince, as courteously as he could, that it would please him to return, for he had no more need of him, and that he would appoint men to receive his payment. The Prince marvelled greatly so soon as he heard the letter. He sent two knights to him and informed him by letter that he had not kept his promises and pledges.

Wherefore should I relate and draw out the matter? So much might I recount that well I might weary you. The Prince perceived clearly that the King Don Pedro was not as loyal as he thought. Then he said he would return, for many said also that the Bastard Henry had entered Aquitaine and was harrying sorely the common people of the country, whereat the Prince was sore grieved. Whereupon incontinent the Prince took his return from Madrigal. He rode day and night until he came to the valley of Soria, where he abode fully a month. And Chandos held counsel in the meantime with the Council of Aragon. Of the council I know but little.

But, to abridge the tale, Chandos went without delay to the King of Navarre.
He and Don Martin de la Carra obtained so much that the King of Navarre, who was courteous, let the Prince repass, and the Prince without delay departed from the valley of Soria; he took his way through Navarre without stay. The King, who was right noble, showed the Prince great honour, for every day he sent him wine and provisions in great plenty. He brought him through Navarre and guided him right beyond the pass. Afterwards, of a truth, they held high revel at St. Pied du Port. There they took courteous leave, the one from the other, and parted. Then the Prince came to Bayonne, whereat many a one made great joy. Honourably did the noble burgesses welcome him, and that was right. And there he dismissed his men and told them to come and seek their monies at Bordeaux: There he abode five days in high revel.

The Prince set forth from Bayonne and made no stay till he came to Bordeaux. Nobly was he received with crosses and processions, and all the monks came to meet him. Right nobly they welcomed him, praising and thanking God. Then he dismounted at St. Andrews. The Princess came to meet him, bringing with her her firstborn son, Edward. The ladies and knights came there to welcome him and made great joy. Very sweetly they embraced when they met together. The gentle Prince kissed his wife and son. They went to their lodging on foot, holding each other by the hand.

At Bordeaux such joy was made that every one rejoiced over the Prince who was come, and those who were with him. Every one welcomed his friend. In very sooth that night high revel was held in many a place throughout the land of Aquitaine.

To come to a conclusion, now I have told you of the Prince and his great expedition, and of his very noble following, pardon me if I have spoken amiss, for in nothing have I lied.

He sojourned a space at Bordeaux and held himself full well content with his men and his country, for greatly had he gladdened them(?). Thereafter in brief season he called together at St. Emilion the nobles of his whole principality, earls, barons, bishops, prelates. Thither they came right gladly. The Prince graciously and humbly thanked them all, both those who had been in his company with him in Spain and those who had remained behind, who had guarded the country, and said to them: 'Fair Sirs, by my troth, I should indeed love you with all my heart, for you have served me right well. With all my heart do I give you thanks.' Very nobly did he welcome them and bestowed on them many fair gifts, gold, silver, and rich jewels, and they made thereof great joy. They departed from the noble Prince and took their way to their homes.

Very soon after this it befell that the noble Prince of Aquitaine came to lodge at Angoulême, and there, of a surety, the malady began that thereafter lasted all his life, whereof it was pity and hurt. Then began falsehood and treason to govern those who ought to have loved him, for those whom he held for friends then became his enemies; but this is no great marvel, for the enemy that is ever on the watch quicklier harms a valiant man than a wicked; and on this account, as soon as it was known that the noble Prince was ill, in peril of death, his enemies were agreed to begin the war anew, and began to treat with those whom they knew of a certainty to be his enemies.
Thereupon the war between France and England began again, and then towns and cities turned from their allegiance, and divers earls and barons, whose names I should not hide—Armagnac, Lisle and Périgord, Albet, Comminges (?), of short speech—all on one day forsook the Prince their liege lord, because he was ill and could no more help himself. Then they were all agreed, as I hear in my record, that they should appeal from the Prince and begin war. The Count of Armagnac first and many other knights betook themselves to the King of France and told him straightway that they wished to turn and appeal to his court, saying that the Prince was wronging and oppressing them sorely; on this account assuredly they came to him as to their sovereign lord.

The King of France convened and assembled his great Council and showed them the proposal, how he of Armagnac was tempting him to begin anew the war: thereupon they began to hold counsel. And the counsel in this matter was that they sent word to the Prince that he should come without delay to answer in his full parliament against this appeal. The Prince, who was ill, when he heard the matter was mighty wroth. Then he raised himself from his bed and said: 'Fair sirs, by my troth, methinks, by what I see, that the French deem me as dead; but, so God comfort me, if I can rise from this bed I will yet do them much hurt, for God knows well that wrongfully they make complaint of me.'

Then did he send back word to the King of France boldly and staunchly, that in sooth gladly would he go at his summons, so God grant him health and life, he and all his company, with bassinet on head to defend him from mischief. Thus began war in Aquitaine, and then he had all the companions set in all the fortified places. There might you see mortal war, right cruel in many parts. The brother was against the brother, and the son against the father; every one took sides whichever way he list. But, at the time I speak of, the noble Prince lost greatly, for treason and falsehood held sway on all sides; none knew in whom to trust. But, nevertheless, the Prince strengthened himself as best he could.

To England he sent for help to succour him, and the very noble King his father sent him his lion-hearted brother Edmund, by name Earl of Cambridge, and the brave and valiant Earl of Pembroke also, and they had in their company much noble chivalry. These two went to the border marches (?) and made themselves right dear. They took Bourdeilles by assault, whereat they were blithe and glad, and there was the Earl of Pembroke knighted. Then in short season they laid siege to La Roche-sur-Yon, and Chandos was at Montauban, who bore himself well there.

What could I set down for you to delay the story? On all sides was fortune in Aquitaine cruel and surly. La Roche-sur-Yon was taken by Cambridge and his emprise, but, as it pleased the true God who never lied, Sir James Audeley, of great fame, died there of sickness: whereat the very noble and renowned Prince was sore grieved, for greatly beloved was James by him. And then it was not long before Chandos also died at the bridge of Lussac, the which was loss and pity, for the Prince, who was right sorrowful, was sore dismayed. But oft-times one sees it so come about that, when misfortune is to befall, one mischance follows on another.
Many a time it so happens. Thus all kinds of mischance arose; one after another they befell the noble Prince, who lay ill abed. But for all this he gave thanks to God and said: 'Everything will have its season; if I could rise from here I would assuredly take vengeance.'

When the French knew that the famous Chandos was dead they made great joy everywhere and rejoiced greatly, saying: 'All will be ours, as true as is the paternoster.' Then King Charles of France had word sent incontinent to Sir Bertrand du Guesclin, the bold and true, in Spain, where he was, where he served the Bastard King, and announced that Chandos was dead. Gladly did he hear the tidings. Bertrand returned right speedily into France without delay. He came to Toulouse; there was the powerful Duke of Anjou, who welcomed him sweetly and right graciously said to him: 'Sir Bertrand, fair greeting and welcome. We have great need of you, for if you are with us we shall conquer Aquitaine; for this is a very certain matter, Audeley and Chandos are dead, who have wrought so much mischief, and the Prince lies abed ill, with but scant cheer, so that if you counsel it we are all ready prepared to override the land.'

Well did Sir Bertrand agree to this, and advise it; and then they were all accorded, as I hear in my record, to ride in two directions and besiege the Prince. Then they assembled their men by hundreds and thousands; the Duke of Anjou rode through Quercy with great following; he of Berry and he of Bourbon with great force of men rode through the Limousin until they lodged at Limoges, and thought to come straight to besiege the Prince in Angouleme, where he abode, so ill that he kept his bed. And the Prince lay abed, where he had but scant cheer. So soon as he heard the tidings, they seemed to him good and fair; forthwith he rose from his bed and assembled all his host.

At that time the great and valorous Duke of Lancaster had arrived in his country with many knights of renown, and was desirous to give them battle, to defend his noble country. But as soon as they heard tell that the Prince, of a certainty, had assembled his power, they turned back, in sooth, and dared not await him. But at this time Limoges, the good city, was given up by treachery, and thither came the Prince, who laid siege to it until he took it by assault. Thereat he was blithe and glad, for there were Roger de Beaufort, who made boast of holding it, Sir Jean de Villelur, who said he would keep the wall, and good 300 men-at-arms, without the burgesses therein. But all were slain or taken by the noble and renowned Prince, whereat all his friends rejoiced greatly around him, and his enemies, I warrant you, had great fear and repented they had begun again war with him.

After Limoges was taken, the Prince of high emprise returned to Angouleme. Then another sign befell him, for at that time he found his first-born son Edward passed from life, whereat he was sore grieved at heart. But none may scape death. All that God had given him it behoved him to accept. Afterwards it was not long before he made ready his array and betook himself to England, by reason of the malady that oppressed him, with his wife and his sons and many knights of renown.

Thereafter came tidings that La Rochelle was lost, and that the noble Earl of Pembroke was taken. Then the King levied an army, that was of great renown, and
there were all the barons and knights of repute. The noble Prince was there, who was at great pains to reach the land and disembark, to go and succour his land. But by what I heard tell they were nine weeks at sea, nor ever could have any wind, rather they had to turn and come back; whereat the King and the Prince and all the bold knights were sorely cast down.

Now I have set forth in rhyme to you the whole life of the Prince; pardon me if I have passed over it a little briefly, but I must make dispatch to bring it to an end. For one could make a book of it as big as of Arthur, Alexander, or Claris, merely to bring to remembrance and knowledge his deeds and his right lofty prowess, and his very noble largesse, and also his valour, how he was all his life a valiant man, loyal and catholic, and zealous for the common weal, and how he made a very noble end, confessing with loyal heart his God and his true creator, and said to his household: 'Fair lords, behold, for God, we are not lords here on earth; all will have to pass this way. No man may scape; therefore I beseech you right humbly that you will pray for me.'

Then he had his room opened and made all his men come who had served him in his life and still gladly served him. 'Sirs,' says he, 'pardon me, for, by the faith that I owe you, you have loyally served me; nor can I of myself give to each his guerdon, but God, by His most holy name, will render it you in the holy heaven.' Then each one sobbed heartily and wept very tenderly, all those who were present, earls, barons, and bachelors. And he said to all, loud and clear: 'I commend to you my son, who is very young and little, and pray you, as you have served me, to serve him loyally.'

Then he called the King, his father, and the Duke of Lancaster, his brother; he commended to them his wife and his son, whom he greatly loved, and besought them right then that each one should help him. Each one swore it on the book and promised him without reserve to support his child and maintain him in his right; all the princes and all the barons standing round swore it; and the noble and renowned Prince gave them a hundred thousand thanks. But never, so God help me, was such sore grief beheld as there was at his departing. The lovely and noble Princess felt such grief at heart that her heart was nigh breaking. Of lamentation and sighing, of crying aloud and sorrowing, there was so great a noise that there was no man living in the world, if he had beheld the grief, but would have had pity at heart.

There was so noble a repentance that God of His mighty power will have mercy on his soul; for he prayed to God for mercy and pardon for all those misdeeds that he had committed in this mortal world. And then the Prince passed from this world and departed, in the year one thousand three hundred and seventy-six, in the fiftieth of his father's reign, in London, the noble city, on the festival of the Trinity, of which he kept the feast all his life, gladly, with melody. Now let us pray God, the King of kings, who died for us on the cross, that He will have pardon on his soul and grant him of His gift the glory of His paradise. Amen. And here finishes the poem of the most noble Prince Edward, who never turned craven. This hath the Herald of Chandos related, who gladly made record.
CRITICAL NOTES

1–42. In the opening passage and wherever the Herald has forsaken his simple narrative style the text is very difficult to establish. Cf. 95–100, 4101–4.

13. ff should perhaps have been replaced by F here and throughout the poem. Cf. Introduction, p. xxxvii.

24. saunz, sount; the graphy au, ou, should perhaps have been retained here and elsewhere. Cf. Introduction, p. xxxvii.

27. The confusion of de and ge which has led to that between coment and couient occurs elsewhere. Cf. 1298 (where both are used), 1683, 2022, 4073. It is probably due to the use of both after a comparative.

34. Some emendation is necessary. The use of the plural recort is found in 330; a similar confusion between Ei and En in 262.

38. Retain feust.

45. Voloi is evidently faulty; the use of the future is rendered probable by line 2256, and the somewhat similar mistake in 4144.

49–51. For the construction compare Jean de la Mote, 1640: Mors est li plus loiaux del monde Ne qui ains fust a la ronde. The confusion between tamps and champs, i.e. camps, is found also in 2035. M. Meyer prefers Si com tornie a le ronde.

64. nasquy. Cf. Introduction, p. xlvii.

85. Esglise might have been retained. Cf. Introduction, p. xxxviii.

97–9. A difficult passage. Morie stands here for norie as moriture for noriture in 72. In 1820 the same mistake was made, but corrected by the scribe himself. The use of il as a feminine sg. occurs here only—it receives some support from the use of ils for eles in 1892, but it is possibly an addition of the scribes. M. Meyer would refer the il of 99 to fait and construe the il of 100 as y.

107–8. Perhaps li noble Roi... a tres grant arroi should have been retained, as arroi in this sense is ordinarily used in the singular.

120. As repetition of identical lines is frequent in the poem the missing line may be supplied from 1678–9, Barons et bachelers et contes, Chevaliers, escuier, viscontes.

145. Some emendation is necessary to secure syllabic correctness. Perhaps better Arive furent d'Engleterre, as the break in the narrative caused by the introduction of the headlines may have led to the introduction of the words le pair. For somewhat similar cases of confusion in the opening lines of sections cf. 1409–11, 1669, 3481, 4119.

157. For a similar confusion between lors and lor cf. 2749; in support of the insertion of bien cf. 235.

180. The Prince's age is wrongly given here, but to judge from the other passages where the graphy oet occurs the scribe meant eight. Cf. Introduction, p. xxxvii.


197. Amesna should perhaps have been retained. Cf. Introduction, p. xxxviii.

212. Perhaps better Et maint bon, vaillant home frivent. Cf. 2732, Et maint bon, vaillant chevalier.


251. *O,* better *ou* here and wherever *o* stands for *apud.*

256. *Firent* has been adopted in the text here, as the location is ordinarily formed with *faire.* The singular *fist* should have been substituted for *fust* in l. 148, 552, 568, although the MS. has consistently forms of the verb *to be.*

277, 292. For the omission of the article cf. Introduction, p. xxxix.

284–6. The construction is not clear here. The comma after *fu* should be suppressed, as the Herald probably means to say that Philip was accompanied by three other kings, but this leaves line 285 hanging in mid-air.


313. Uncertain. The correction is based on 1223–4, *Se vont ensemble renconter En fesant d'armes le mestier.* M. Meyer suggests *en'recoindier,* which secures a correct rhyme. *Renconter* in 1223 may stand for *a l'encontrer* used in l. 1303.

325. Better *condoisoit,* as the doubling of *ss* intervocal belongs probably to the original MS. Cf. Introduction, p. xxxvii.

330. Retain *je* here, the slurring of *o* being evidently practised when *-oie* precedes *je.* Cf. Introduction, p. xi.

353. The use of the enclitic feminine article is very doubtful; it might be avoided by the substitution of *ot* for *avoit.* Cf. Introduction, p. xlii.

420–2. A difficult passage; cf. historical note to this line. Perhaps Michel's correction *Au* for *D'un* should be adopted.

456. Perhaps *l' enclitic should have been admitted and *je* retained. Cf. Introduction, p. xxvii.

465. Retain *feusse.*

480. *ieses* is evidently faulty. The phrase *droit a ce lampes* occurs in 116 and 1560, but *tres a ce lampes,* supported by *tres a le myenuyt* in 3601, would account more satisfactorily for the mistake in the text.

523–5. The repetition of *feste* and the omission of the auxiliary are evidently faulty. *Feste* in 523 might be replaced by *deduit,* which is used coupled with *joie* in 661. The phrase *feste de joustes* is used by Jean le Bel and Froissart and secures metrical and grammatical correctness here.


593–4. For the correction cf. 2901–2, *L'une plorot pour son amy Et li autre pour son mari.*


648. *Vesier,* correct *Besier.* The confusion between *b* and *v* is found elsewhere.


770. *legat,* correct *legal.*


777. *pourparler.* M. Meyer would retain the *porler,* used in *Guillaume le Maréchal* and elsewhere in the sense of 'to arrange, settle.'

785–6. ' *and yet one cannot prevent their dying if battle is joined.*' Juxtaposition is frequent with verbs of preventing. Cf. Introduction, p. xxiv, (1) (b).

787. The correction leaves the metre faulty. M. Meyer suggests: *Dont certes conter en fondra.*

795. (?) We take it that the *la,* misplaced by the A.N. scribe, stands for some such word.
as acort or paix, understood from the general tenor of the preceding speech. M. Meyer suggests: La pais ne ferons en no vie.

800. apecies, better a peces (sinfully).
805. a souffit, correct asouffit, i.e. p. pt. of asouffire.
885. (?) Mais de leur conseill rien ne say. (M. Meyer.)
904. The emendation is doubtful. Tante persone with a singular verb is found in other poems, but this gives a syllable too much.
922. Substitute a full stop for the dash at the end of the line.
996. Grant espace de terre emprist. (M. Meyer.)
1002. The scribe, not realizing that the dukes of Anjou and Berri are the King’s sons just mentioned, has added auxi.
1058–60. (?) A form appareille with the meaning of manner (?) occurs in the ‘Geste de Liege’ (cf. Scheler’s Glossary) and should perhaps have been kept here; but the construction tele appareille . . . d’ordonnance Come feurent is wholly unsatisfactory. The adjectival use of tel pareil is found in Froissart, i. 166, 2663 (cf. Scheler’s Glossary), a substantival use in the ‘Roman de Troie’ (see Godefroi).
1068. The scribe seems to have been influenced by the meaning esoufdier took in Middle English. Se voldier d’un lieu is frequent in Froissart and other fourteenth-century writers. The confusion of s and l is found in lines 1728, 1846, 2516. The Indicative foolit might perhaps have been retained, but in the other hypothetical clauses of this type found in the poem the Subjunctive is always used. Cf. Introduction, p. x.
1080. The intermediate stage between averes and a veritez is seen in the averetes of 951.
1124. chemina, correct comenca (comenca (?)), cf. Introduction, p. xlix. The same mistake occurs in l. 3050.
1131. For the omission of the article cf. Introduction, p. xxxix.
1177. Estiemes. A termination -iemes is frequent in Northern writers (Froissart and others) and may have occasioned the MS. form.
1190. Plume, the form used wherever the locution appears, is evidently faulty. Cf. 3362.
1214. Cf. 3422, Li glorius dieux et seint piers.
1246. Replace the full stop at the end of the line by a comma.
1279. La, correct Se (?).
1283. Audele might perhaps have been retained. Cf. Introduction, pp. xi and xiii.
1325. Campayne, correct Caupayne.
1341. (?) Emendation is necessary, and acomter à is frequent in Northern texts (e.g. Gilles le Muisit, Jean de Condé) with the meaning of en tenir compte, en faire cas. It is, however, usually construed with an adverb of quantity.
1370. For oy here and in l. 1384 cf. Introduction, p. xiii.
1373. A numeral has evidently been omitted before mille. Jean le Bel gives 2000 here. A somewhat similar omission occurs in 3099.
1385, 1400. For oy cf. Introduction, p. xiii.
1409–11. A difficult passage: 1409–10 are metrically faulty, mais in 1411 is pleonastic. It is probably the introduction of the rubric that has brought confusion, and the passage should run: Pardones se le dis brièvement Car l’ay passe legièrement . . . Pour ce que je vous veoil retraire, &c., with a full stop at the end of 1414.
In 1409 may might be kept if enclisis were adopted: sel for se le. Cf. Introduction, p. xxvii.

1443 and 1444 should perhaps be transposed.


1448. bien veigne. Correct bienveigne here and elsewhere.

1463. Et for ou as in 2156, 2780, 2877.

1507. faite. Retain fait.

1511–16. baler. Retain voler. Vit on (cf. l. 474) would perhaps be better than fist on, but M. Meyer is inclined to think the whole passage is corrupt.

1528. Bayane (?). See historical note to this line.

1565. royon (?). Royalme is trisyllabic on every other occasion on which it occurs in the poem; royon is not used by the Herald, but is frequent in contemporary writers. M. Meyer prefers regne.

1593. en courte saison or saison is muddled by the scribe on nearly every occasion on which it occurs. Cf. ll. 3793, 3931. The phrase, or its counterpart, en longe saison, &c., is frequent in Northern poems, such as ‘Baudouin de Sebourg’ (e.g. ii. 413), Jehan de la Mote (e.g. l. 3891).

1614. escuiers, correct d’escuiers, tanz being necessarily substantival in this locution.

1632. torne, better torné (a la ronde) as in 50.

1647. Cf. the almost identical couplet 53-4 with the words placed in the order given in the text.

1667. Perhaps a full stop should be placed at the end of 1667, and 1668–9 taken thus: Et pour plus abregier mes mos ... savez que messires Bertrans, &c.

1684...1697. A couplet has perhaps dropped out here, for the construction fu esleüs ...

Qu’il iroient is hardly possible.

1692. de noble court, correct de noble atour (i).

1702. conquerer, correct conquérir.

1716. The scribe has evidently confused pais and pails.

1755. (?)

1775. celerie is evidently faulty; conteroie stands in the identical couplets 1203–4, 3699–700.

1784. dist, correct dit.


1815. A colon should have been placed at the end of the line.

1819–20. (?) For pity, love, and justice dwelt together in his (i.e. the Prince’s) upbringing (?), or should the MS. reading be kept and taken to mean For his upbringing joined together pity, love, and justice?

1822. regestriv (?). The usual form is registre.

1826. (?) M. Meyer would keep the reading, taking amer as a substantive.

1912. A comma is required at the end of the line.


1939. Here, and wherever the adverb entrues or the conjunctive entrues que is used, it has been misunderstood by the scribe and his modern editors. Cf. ll. 2478 and 3718.


2035–8. Michel emends and punctuates differently; the text adopted here is supported by the confusion between camps and tamps in 49, and Froissart’s Chronicle, ‘Et les envoia logier en ung pays con appelle Boscle, entre les montaignes’ (Amiens MS., ed. Luce, vol. vi, p. 379, § 558).

2050. The substitution of la for lor occurs also in 2072, 2445.

2194. Substitute for the correction adopted in the text: *Dont feuert maint home esbahy* (M. Meyer.)

2195. Retain *Point,* which probably represents the Spanish *Puente.*
2236. For the omission of *se* cf. Introduction, p. xlii.
2281. *Devereux* is evidently a scribe’s addition.

2370, 2371. As *peignons* is best taken in this passage as *pennon-bearer,* place a colon at the end of line 2370, correct *si* of 2370 to *si,* and restore *Bertrukat* in line 2371.
2404. Cf. 2909.
2415–19. Cf. Froissart: *Car onques nous ne vous fourfesimes cose nulle, ne faire vorions, pour quoy ensi a main arme vous doeties venir sur nous pour nous tollir tant peu d’iretaige que Dieux nous a douns.* (Amiens MS., ed. Luce, vol. vii, p. 265, § 566.)

2454. For the omission of *de* cf. Introduction, p. xxi.
2460. Or perhaps Autant *come il en volt avoir.*
2462. William Felton’s Christian name is trisyllabic in ll. 2272 and 2648. Here, perhaps, and in ll. 2737 and 2756 a dissyllabic form *Guillaume* should have been admitted.
2475. *logoient.* Cf. Introduction, p. xlii; but *se* might be omitted.
2478. *Entreus.* Cf. 1939; *ce le* is used in 226 and 1534.
2482–4. Froissart has these lines practically word for word. *Or fu gouvrureses et bahx de tout le royaume de Navarre messires Martins de le Kara.* Ed. Luce, vol. vii, p. 266, § 567.

2525. (?) M. Meyer suggests: *Et en ces jours et en ce temps (?)*. 
2542. (?) *Or Errant l’ont au Prince mande (?)*. 
2553. (?) ‘So long did they remain on the other side (of the Ebro)’ (?) The *de lors of the MS.* is evidently faulty.

2581. *Ensemble come s. d.,* better ‘*Ensi com il se devisoient.*’ Froissart has ‘*Entreus qu’il se devisoient leur coureur reporterent qu’il avoient veu les coueurs des enemis*’, ed. Luce, vol. vii, p. 268, § 568, and *ensii com* is used not infrequently as ‘*whilst*’.
2593. The construction is rather involved, but its parts find analogies in other lines in the poem. Cf. 1132–3, *Grans deduix fuist au regarder Cely qui rien n’y conteroit,* and 29–31, where *cil* is used, as here, referring to *on* used indefinitely.

2631. *tout,* correct *toute.*

2641–2. The repetition of *droit* is certainly faulty; substitute *tres* in 2642. Cf. *tres a le myenyxt* in 3061.

2643–4. The change of order adopted makes the passage run more smoothly and is supported by Froissart: ‘*Li marescal ordouerent et coumanderent que chacuns retournerent l’endemain sus le dite flache et que nuls ne passast l’arere garde et que chescuns fuist sus se gardes se logast desous se banierre.’ vol. vii, § 170, p. 270.

2679. *Par (=2),* correct *pour.*
2713. *que,* correct *qui (?)*. 

2749–50. A scribe seems to have changed the order to secure a good A.N. rhyme. Cf. 3133–4.
2794–5. The repetition of *feoient* is certainly faulty; for the emendation cf. line 593.

2806. *ly* is evidently faulty; *lor,* found in contemporary writers for the stressed accusative plural, has been adopted as supplying some explanation for the mistake.
2808. (?) The emendation *Dont je ne say les nons nosmer*, preferable from the point of view of construction, brings the rhyme -er to es, not found elsewhere in the poem.


2833. (?) A similar unintelligible *mais* occurs in 2975.

2839. *Tant li dourroie argent et or (i)*. Cf. Introduction, p. xi, Note (2).

2877. *ou?*

2909-19. Some emendation is necessary; the text adopted secures syllabic correctness, but leaves untouched the awkward change of person. This could be obviated by correcting 2910 to *Henris qui contes est clames*, a change which finds some support in Froissart, who gives the beginning of this letter in the following terms: *‘A tres renomme et honnoure Henri, conte de Trastemare et qui pour le temps present s'appelle roys de Castell...’* § 574, Amiens MS., vol. vii, p. 276.

2941. *si s'adonne, correct si orologne.*


2987. *Correct iii mille (?)*. *iii mille* is doubtful on two accounts. (1) Froissart has here *iii mille*. (2) In every other passage in the poem in which *mille* occurs in the plural it is dissyllabic.

3027. The singular *flu logie* should have been retained.

3031. The subjunctive *fississent* is probably a misreading of the unfamiliar form *fissent*.


3077. (?)

3082. Michel keeps the MS. reading and translates ‘*On the right was the royal banner*’; but there is no evidence for such use of *royal*. *Esl* is not an infrequent graphy for *ele* (cf. the Amiens MS. of Froissart).

3099. The number 4100 is unusual, and the use of *cens* in the singular unlikely. Froissart gives 3500, and this should probably be adopted here. For somewhat similar mistakes cf. 1373 (omission of a numeral) and 2927 (probable use of *iiij* for *iii*).

3119. (?)

3133-5. A difficult passage. For 3134 M. Meyer suggests the distinctly preferable emendation: *J'ai b. d. g. a mon oes metre*. Froissart, who in the version of the Amiens ms. here follows the Herald very closely, gives Chandos' speech in these terms: *‘Monsigneur je vous ay servü long temps a mon loyal pooir, et tout ce que Dieux m'a donne de bien, il me vient de vous: si saves ossi que je sui tout vostre & seray tant que je vivray. Si vous pry que je puisse estre a baniere; car, Dieu mercy, j'ay bien de qvo, terre et mise, pour l'estre & ve le ci je le vous present: si en faictes vostre plaisir.’* Vol. vii, § 578, p. 282. The confusion in the MS. may be in part due to the scribe's desire to avoid the unfamiliar rhymes estre: mettre. Cf. 2749-50.

3152. *soulement: soudement* (?).

3156. The line is a syllable short. Correct *Aleby* (?) ; Froissart gives *Aleri*.

3163. (?) *Vitaille* may have been introduced from 3165; *sons* is a form used by Froissart. M. Meyer questions the use of *faonte* without *par* and suggests: *Par disette somes prestris*. The passage runs in Froissart: *‘Biau signeur, voyes nos ennemis qui ont grant largece de ce dont nous avons grant disette; il ont de tous vivres a fuisson, et nous advons grant faminne.’* Ed. Luce, vol. vii, p. 283, § 579.

3196-3200. Michel keeps *Et* and translates: *‘And the vanguard moved forward... The noble Duke of Lancaster... and the good knight Chandos made knights...’* This runs counter to the head-lines and to Froissart, who attributes the accolade of the following knights to Chandos alone.
3232. (?)
3237 and 3238 should perhaps be transposed.
3249. en poigniez, correct enpoignie (i.e. past participle feminine of enpoignier).
3305–9. The punctuation adopted alters somewhat the account of the battle given by Michel and followed by others. Michel, putting a full stop at the end of 3308, translates: ‘Nor was the Prince behindhand in the fray, but with all speed came up, you must know without fail, with the right wing of his division’ (sic!). Lines 3335–9 confirm the punctuation adopted here, as it is clear from them that the action of the Prince’s main body was distinct from that of the division commanded by the Capital.
3461. The MS. is evidently faulty. Froissart has: ‘qui s’estoient repus dalles uns mur’ (vol. vii, p. 290, § 584). Par d’encoste with the meaning of beside occurs in ‘Baudouin de Sebourg’.
3481. The insertion of the rubric has again broken the sequence of the narrative here and led to the introduction of sui.
3519. A full stop is required at the end of the line.
3546. (?) Emendation is necessary, but that suggested is by no means certain. It is supported by some extent by the fact that elsewhere the name of the youngest brother is given as Sanses, not Senches, and by Froissart’s account of the scene in the Amiens MS.: ‘Dont furent mandé tout li chevalier d’Espaigne qui prissounnier estoient en l’est et là, present le Prince et mout de gras signeurs, leurs pardonna li rois dans Pierres tous maualens et baisa son frere le bastart, le comte Sansse.’ Ed. Luce, vol. vii, p. 293, § 586. Another possibility is: ‘Senches ses frere fut menes.’
3553–4. Another corrupt passage. Froissart is of no assistance, as he omits these details. Perhaps Garils should have been kept and Gomes discarded as the scribe’s addition.
3634–5. (?) A couplet has perhaps been omitted.
3713–27. The scribe’s graphy has again misled the previous editors, though the headlines give a correct summary. There is no discrepancy between the Herald and Froissart. The Amiens version of the Chronicles runs as follows: ‘Si se mist au retour par deviers Madrigay et chevaucha tant qu'il vint ou vol de Sorre, et là sejourna, et toutes ses hou, bien un mois. Endementroes eut gras consaux entre monsigneur Jehan Camdos et le conseill dou roy d'Arragon . . . Après ce, s'en revinrent messires Jehans Camdos et messiree Martins de le Kare deviers le roy de Navarre et poursachierent tant que il rois de Navarre accorda a rapasser le prinche et toutes ses gens parmy son royaumme.’ vii, p. 299, § 591. For the rhyme cf. Introduction, p. viii, § 8.
3736. mene. Cf. Introduction, p. xxv.
3741. Perhaps the D' of D’illoges should have been retained.
3792. (?) M. Meyer suggests: Car mout les avoit resjois.
3925. (?) A difficult line. (1) If frontier stands for frontiere it would be the only instance in the poem of the reduction of iere to ier; and (2) Venien la frontier(e) is not very intelligible. Perhaps frontier stands for the verb frontier used by Froissart in the sense of oppose face to face, e.g. Si commencen a frontier, a coustier et a poursuivre les Anglais (quoted from Godefre), and we should read: Cil doi s'en vinrent frontier. M. Meyer suggests: Cil doi conte vindrent frontier.
3955. esmays, correct esbays.

BLACK PRINCE
4042. For the addition of *lie* cf. l. 3928, for the scribe’s confusion of *haut* and *baut* cf. l. 596.
4058. (?)
4073. *Depuis.* Cf. note to l. 27.
4101-2. (?) *Mais* is unintelligible. *Néan,* though not found elsewhere in the poem, is still used by the Herald’s contemporaries, e.g. Deschamps and Jean des Preis. M. Meyer, however, prefers *soul.*
4119. *Lors,* correct *Lores.* It is again the interruption caused by the insertion of the title that has occasioned the addition of the words ‘*le Prince*’. Cf. l. 145.
4126. Retain *de my (= of myself).*
HISTORICAL NOTES

116-44. King Edward left the Isle of Wight on July 11,1 and landed at Saint-Vaast de la Hougue in Cotentin July 12,2 with the intention of wasting Normandy and marching on Paris.3

The list of nobles who accompanied the King seems to be correctly drawn up on the whole. Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, and William de Bohun, Earl of Northampton, are mentioned in the list given by Froissart,4 and are amongst those to whom wages are paid for services with the King from April 1346 to Nov. 1349.5

Ralph, Earl of Stafford, is not given by Froissart, and as he was Seneschal of Aquitaine, and took part in the siege of Aiguillon, Dec. 1345,6 it looks as though he may not have been with Edward when he sailed: but he is enumerated in Wetewang's Accounts, as are the two former nobles, and he certainly joined the King in time to take part in the battle of Crécy.7

Robert Ufford, Earl of Suffolk, was certainly in the campaign of 1346, his name not only being found in Froissart,8 but also in the letters of Northburgh, who himself accompanied the army.9 William de Montagu, Earl of Salisbury, who was only sixteen at the time, is mentioned by an eyewitness as being knighted at Saint-Vaast;10 John Beauchamp, a brother of the Earl of Warwick, and John De Vere, Earl of Oxford, are named in most of the authorities;11 the former is said to have had the honour of carrying the King's standard at the battle of Crécy;12 Raouls de Cobham is probably a mistake for Reginald, though there was also a Ralph who fought in the French wars;13 he does not seem, however, to have been a very important personage, whereas we find Reginald in almost every list,14 and constantly mentioned later on in the Poem itself. Sir Bartholomew de Burghersh presents a little difficulty because there were two of the same name—father and son. Dugdale speaks of them both as taking part in the French campaign of 1346, but according to documents printed by Rymer15 it hardly seems as though the father were present; for the King before setting sail gives him instructions as to the conduct of affairs in England, and writes to him again on home matters as late as Sept. 8th. Only one of the name being mentioned not only here, but also in Froissart, and in Wetewang's Accounts,

---

2 This was a Wednesday. Cf. Northburgh's Letter in Robert of Avesbury, De gestis mirabilibus regis Edwardi Tertii, edited E. Mannde Thompson (Rolls Series); letter of Edward III in Delpit, Collection des documents français en Angleterre, Paris, 1847; Le Héraut Chados, edited Francisque Michel, 307, note.
3 Jean le Bel, Les Vrayes Chroniques, Bruxelles, 1863, 8vo, ii. 64.
4 Froissart, edited Luce (Société de l'Histoire de France), vol. iii, 130.
5 Wetewang's Accounts, published in Wrottesley, Crécy and Calais.
6 Froissart, vol. iii, p. xx, note 3.
8 Froissart, iii. 130.
9 Robert of Avesbury and Froissart, i. 242, note.
11 Froissart, iii. 130; Wetewang's Accounts; French Rolls.
12 Dugdale, i. 226; Wrottesley, Crécy and Calais.
13 Dugdale, i. 69.
14 Froissart, iii. 130; Wetewang's Accounts, published in Wrottesley; French Rolls, 20 Ed. III, 21 Ed. III, &c.
it is doubtless Sir Bartholomew, junior: indeed, in a mention made of him in the fragment of the Chronicle in the library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, this explanation is expressly added.1

Guy de Brian, although not named by the other chroniclers, occurs in Wetewang's Accounts,2 and constantly in the French Rolls, as receiving payments or letters of protection,3 while in 1350 a grant of money was made to him for gallant deeds done at Calais.4

Sir Richard de la Vache is not mentioned by other chroniclers as present so early as 1346, unless the Richard de la Vere given by the Corpus Christi Chronicle5 can be the same person; but it looks as though he most probably joined the King later, since in 1347 a writ was directed to him requiring that he should supervise the armings in Bedfordshire and Buckinghamshire; and in Wetewang's Accounts he is only stated as receiving pay, Mich. 1347;7 Thomas de Holland also received pay at this time, but he was certainly with the army from the first, as he distinguished himself by capturing the Comte d'Eu at Caen.8

Sir Richard Talbot's name occurs in Wetewang's Accounts, and in the French Rolls of 1347;9 he is also spoken of in the Corpus Christi MS. as taking part in the campaign of 1346;10 while Chandos and Audeley are repeatedly mentioned by all the authorities.

Thus the list given here, if apparently accurate so far as it goes, is not complete, and the choice of names is a little curious, such important persons as Godefroi de Harcourt and the Earl of Arundel being omitted.

The King sent to England for the aid due on the occasion of knight ing Prince Edward.11 Sir Bart. de Burghersh, in his letter from Saint-Vaast, speaks of the honour being conferred on Mortimer (Earl of March) and Montagu (Earl of Salisbury).12 John de Montagu is not mentioned by him, but he was certainly present, and the Queen's Remembrancer Rolls speak of Sir John de Montagu being in his brother's retinue from Saint-Vaast de la Hougue to Calais.13

154-64. In this account of Edward's arrival in France Chandos gives a piece of information which is peculiar to his record, namely, that 'Mareschaux Bertrans' was there to prevent the landing of the English.

Robert Bertrand, Baron de Briquèbec was Marshal of France,14 and in 1345 had been made captain of the sea-coast in Normandy;15 but, though there is some evidence that he was raising men at the time,16 the story of his opposition at Saint-Vaast appears rather improbable. We are fortunate in possessing really valuable authority upon these events in the shape of three letters from actual eyewitnesses—the King himself,17 Michael de Northburgh, his secretary,18 and Sir Bartholomew de Burghersh.19

None of these mention any difficulty in landing, but merely state that the army arrived at Saint-Vaast de la Hougue on the 12th, and stayed there to rest until the 18th of July.

Walsingham says there was resistance and gives a detailed account of the prowess of the Earl of Warwick, who with seven men defeated 100 men at arms and killed 60 of them, before the rest of the English landed.20 But apart from the general improbability of the story,
and the fact that Walsingham is not an original authority for this period, it would be curious if so striking an incident had remained unnoticed, not only in the letters mentioned above, but also in the Chronicle of Froissart, the narrator \textit{par excellence} of such deeds. Jean le Bel, the original of Froissart's narrative at this date, gives no hint of any hindrance being offered to the English landing,\textsuperscript{1} and Froissart's additions as to Edward's fall and the speeches on the subject certainly give little idea of any general fighting at the time.\textsuperscript{2}

Probably Walsingham's story can be explained by some later achievement of Warwick; for Burghersh writes that after the taking of Barfleur (July 14th) the Earl had skirmished successfully with the enemy.\textsuperscript{3} At all events, any resistance that may have been made can have been merely local and insignificant, not worthy of a marshal of France. Bertrand, who before this had been occupied at Aiguillon, appears first in most chronicles at the siege of Caen,\textsuperscript{4} and Chandos' account is, to say the least of it, so doubtful, that it supports the view that this part of the poem must not be accepted with too much confidence.

169-174. The advance of the English army is here treated too briefly to be of much use, and the order of the march has been altered to suit the exigencies of the verse. The real order should be: 12th July, landing at Saint-Vaast; a halt of five days there, during which time Barfleur was burnt (14th July); 20th July, occupation of Carentan; 22nd, crossing of the river Vire and taking of St. Lo. After this Edward marched directly towards Caen, which was taken on the 26th, Bayeux not submitting until the following day.\textsuperscript{5}

175-84. For the taking of Caen the accounts are all more or less agreed,\textsuperscript{6} both as to the hard fighting by the bridge and the capture of d'Eu (Raoul de Brienne, Comte d'Eu et de Guines, Constable) and Tancarville (Jean, Sire de Tancarville, Vicomte de Melun—not Comte until 4th February, 1352—Chamberlain).\textsuperscript{7}

Northburgh adds that the Castle was held by the Bishop of Bayeux;\textsuperscript{8} and by the Continuator of Nangis we are told that it was only the town that was taken; 'they did not take the Castle, because they could not.'\textsuperscript{9}

The allusion made to the Black Prince—'la avoit luy noble Prince pris'—is probably only part of the author's general desire to enhance his hero's glory, since no particular mention is made of his prowess by the other writers. In one sense he certainly had success, since Tancarville, being captured by one of his knights, was considered as his prisoner.\textsuperscript{10}

\begin{itemize}
  \item[1] Jean le Bel, ii. 69.
  \item[2] Froissart, iii. 133.
  \item[3] Murimuth, 201; cf. also Chronographia regum Francorum, edited Morvanville, Paris, 1897 (Soc. de l'Hist. de France), 223.
  \item[6] Edward's Letter, Northburgh's Letter, Bartholomew de Burghersh's Letter; Jean le Bel, ii. 71 sq.; Chronographia, 224.; Grandes Chroniques de France, ed. P. Paris, Paris, 1827, v. 453.; Froissart, iii. 141 sq.; Froissart, copying from Jean le Bel, speaks of the cowardice of the burghers, and their flight at the approach of the English. There is nothing, however, in the record of those present to justify this statement, which may have been a mere bit of nobles' jealousy.
  \item[9] Guillaume Bertrand, brother of the Marshal. Also added in Chronographia, 224.; Grandes Chroniques, v. 453., and Continuation of Lescot, 72.
  \item[10] Chroniques de Guillaume de Nangis et de ses continuateurs, ed. Géraud (Soc. de l'Hist. de France), ii. 197. The Grandes Chroniques also say that the English left the Citadel because they did not want to lose more men.
  \item[11] Letter of Bartholomew de Burghersh (Murimuth,
fact of the Marshal riding off to take news of the disaster to the King, though not found elsewhere, is likely enough, Bertrand having been specially sent to the relief of Caen, as we saw earlier.

195-200. John, King of Bohemia, his son Charles, King of the Romans (Emperor 5th April, 1355), and John of Hainault, lord of Beaumont. It is well known that these three came to the aid of the French, together with others, such as the Duke of Lorraine, the Count of Flanders, &c. Froissart places Philip's message a little earlier, after the fall of Carentan, but in all probability there is no special desire here to indicate any exact chronological sequence.

209-24. This account taken alone is bald if not actually misleading. We learn nothing of the meeting with the Papal envoys at Lisieux (23rd Aug.) 1; of the long march up the Seine, every bridge being broken or guarded, while the French army, some say under Philip himself, advanced simultaneously on the opposite bank of the river 2; of the three days' halt at Poissy (13th-15th Aug.) 3, during which time the Marshals burnt the surrounding villages and consternation reigned in Paris; 4 of the attempt made by the French to prevent the rebuilding of the bridge and of the skirmish which took place with a detachment from Amiens. 5

Both Edward and Wynkeley, writing at the time, agree in their accounts of the events at Poissy, and of the discomfiture of the French force. The chief difficulty arises as to the movements of King Philip. Chandos seems to take for granted that he was at Paris all the time. Marshal Bertrand, he says, rode there to report the fall of Caen, and now he speaks of the King collecting his army in the capital (line 225). There is no doubt that Philip was in or near Paris at the time when Edward was crossing the Seine, all authorities agree on this point, 6 and we have a letter from him challenging Edward to battle, which was dated at St. Denis on Aug. 14; 7 but he may have retreated thither while the enemy was advancing, which is implied by most of the French chroniclers. 8 An army of some sort had certainly been facing the English on the opposite side of the river (cf. note 9), and the Continuator of Nangis, who has the reputation of being an eyewitness, distinctly speaks of Philip himself as being present. 9 There is certainly some discrepancy on this point. The French allies were summoned to meet in Paris; Froissart writes as though the King sent instructions to his army in Normandy, 10 and there is little evidence of his actual presence; but at the same time the authority of the Continuator is not one to be lightly put aside: and when Edward speaks in his letter of 'notre adveraire' having come to Rouen it rather implies the presence of his chief enemy.

240-76. The passage of the Somme took place on Aug. 24. The account given here by Chandos differs somewhat from the usual descriptions of this event, which has been narrated by most modern historians according to the graphic story told by Froissart; a story which, following in essentials that of Jean le Bel, contains some details not given by the earlier writer 11

---

1 Wynkeley's Letter, Murimuth, 215; Froissart, iii. p. xxxix, note 3.
2 Froissart, Panthéon Littéraire, i. 226; Wynkeley's Letter; Chronographia, 227; Corpus Christi MS., Moisant, Appendix.
3 Baker of Swynborne, 255, notes.
4 Edward's Letter, Delpit; Jean le Bel.
6 Jean le Bel, iii. 76, 79; Villani, Storie Fioren-
and differs somewhat from that of the Herald. From Froissart we learn that Edward lodged on the way at Grandvilliers, Poix and Airaines, from which latter place he sent Harcourt and Warwick with a force of 3,000 men to search for a passage, which they failed to discover. Godemar de Fay is also named, as having been deputed by Philip for the same purpose; he was accompanied not only by a large body of countrymen, but also by an armed force of 6,000 men.1

The name of the ford, Blanche-Tache, is added,2 the place having been shown to Edward by a prisoner, Gobin Agace.3 No word is said of the Prince, nor of his 100 picked men, but the Marshals are mentioned as leading the way. An important fact left unnoticed by Chandos is the close pursuit of Philip, who was quartered at Airaines on the day that the English crossed the river.4 Both Jean le Bel and Froissart speak of the hard fighting before the English could get over, the latter, in his Amiens manuscript, adding that Godemar was wounded while defending the passage.

It is difficult to gauge the exact truth, owing to the brevity of the records left by eye-witnesses. Edward himself gives no names, but affirms that a large number of armed men and commons opposed the English army, which crossed in spite of them without losing a single man. Wynkeley gives a very similar account, but he adds a statement which it is interesting to compare with the Chandos record, namely that Northampton and Cobham with 100 armed men and some archers went first and broke the force of the resistance. These may be the picked warriors of whom Chandos speaks, but it scarcely seems probable that the Black Prince should have taken so commanding a position thus early, before having proved his merit at the Battle of Crécy. We are left in ignorance also of the manner in which the English discovered the ford; Froissart alone being responsible for the name of Gobin Agace. The words of our poem are so little explicit that they might mean anything, but at the same time it is interesting to compare them with a curious and unique statement made in the Annals of Melsa,5 namely,6 that the ford was betrayed by an English resident, who had lived near the place for sixteen years; if then 'compaignoun' may be taken to imply compatriot, we have one record which seems to prove the existence of, at least, a rumour to that effect.

It is, however, more frequently used simply in the sense of a 'fellow' or a 'rustic'.

285, 286. James II, King of Majorca; John, King of Bohemia; Charles, his son. For John's share in the battle and the bravery of his son see 'Poème Tchèque sur la bataille de Crécy' in Journal des Savants 1902.

290. Philip, having crossed at Abbeville, advanced some way towards Noyelles, along what is still called 'chemin de Valois', but changed his route towards Crécy on hearing that Edward was lodged in the forest.6

297. Edward in his letter speaks of the French army as approaching, quite near. Northburgh says that spies discovered the advance of the French in four great 'battles'. Jean le Bel, who claims to have his information on the battle direct from John of Hainault and other knights who were present, states that Philip wished to halt half a league from his adversary's army.7

310–12. The confusion in the French army is described by Jean le Bel, who says that,

---

1 All this follows Jean de Bel, ii. 83, and agrees with account of Northburgh, Avesbury, 369; cf. also Chronographia, 228, 9. Godemar de Fay evidently made quite a fair defence. He was still in the royal favour in 1347, being captain of frontiers of Flanders and Hainault. Arch. Nat., JJ 76, No. 378.

2 For exact position of this ford cf. Louandre, Bataille de Crécy, in Revue Anglo-Française, tome iii.

3 Jean le Bel, ii. 82, only calls him a 'varlet'.

4 Philip could not cross at the same place, as it would be impossible for two armies to make the passage before the tide was high again. The French king must have returned to Abbeville and crossed by the bridge of Talance; otherwise Edward would have been obliged to guard the passage; cf. Seymour de Constant, Bataille de Crécy, Abbeville, 1846.

5 Chronica Monasterii de Melsa, 1154–1406, ed. Bond (Rolls Series), 3 vols., 1866–8, ii. 57.


7 Jean le Bel, ii. 87.
when Philip wished to halt, the nobles in advance refused to return, while those behind tried to press forward, so that the whole force marched upon the English in the greatest confusion.\footnote{Jean le Bel, ii. 87, 88.} Froissart explains that this was caused by a quarrel between the forces of the two Marshals; all were so eager to be first and to surpass the others, that they obeyed no commands, but advanced on the enemy 'sans array et sans ordonnance'.\footnote{Froissart, iii. 174.}

This confusion was augmented by the mismanagement of the Genoese bowmen. They were sent on in so close an array that they shot one another, while the mounted nobles behind trampled them down, partly by accident, partly suspecting treachery, because their strings were wet and their bows of little use in consequence.

321. The infantry was the main strength of the English army; but there is also a special statement to this effect in Holinshed, and Villani says that the horses were put together in a place fortified by the carts and baggage.\footnote{Holinshed, English Chronicle, London, 1587, fol., 372. He does not give his authority for the statement. Villani, Istoria Fiorentine, 38. Quoted also by Barnes, History of Edward III, together with that of the Black Prince, Cambridge, 1688, fol., 354.}

325. Jean le Bel, and Baker of Swaynebrooke, also a very good authority, since he evidently got his information from an eyewitness, place the Prince in the vanguard. There were three battles, commanded respectively by Prince Edward, the Earl of Northampton and the King.\footnote{Jean le Bel, ii. 90; Baker of Swaynebrooke, 83.}

326. For the prowess of the Black Prince on this occasion our chief authority is Froissart,\footnote{Froissart, iii. 174-87. (The Amiens version is more exclusively based on Jean le Bel, and not nearly so favourable to the English. Cf. p. ii, note 3.)} since Jean le Bel, who gives strictly the French version of the battle, scarcely mentions him.

332. The death of the King of Bohemia is given in all accounts.

335. Raoul, Duke of Lorraine.

337. Louis, Count of Flanders.

339. Charles, Count of Perche and Alençon.

341. John IV, Count of Harcourt; brother of Godfrey, the ally of the English.

These names are given in all the lists of those slain at Crécy; but no one mentions a name in the least resembling 'Joii', presumably Joigny or Jouy. Coxe, in his notes on The Chandos Poem, suggests that Blois should be the reading for this. Louis de Châtillon, Count of Blois was slain at Crécy, and both Edward and Northburgh place the name in juxtaposition with that of Harcourt, but the difference in spelling is too great to allow us to adopt this explanation.

343. The one King was of course John of Bohemia. Edward and Wynkeley both add the King of Majorca, but Chandos is right, for James II reigned 1324-49.\footnote{Jean le Bel, Edward, Wynkeley, Northburgh, Froissart.}

345. There is no certainty as to the number of bannerets; Froissart admits this.

For fuller accounts of the battle of Crécy, besides the ordinary chronicles, see Babinet, in Antiquaires de l'Ouest, 1896, who supports the statement made by Villani and the Grandes Chroniques as to the use of cannon at Crécy; Oman's Art of War on same question; Louandre, Bataille de Crécy, in Revue Anglo-Française, tome iii; Seymour de Constant and Caron, already mentioned, p. 183, note 6.

357. Philip, according to Edward's letter, retreated to Amiens; and Jean le Bel, who ought to know, says he fled that night with John of Hainault to La Broye, and so on to Amiens.\footnote{Jean le Bel, ii. 89.} Here apparently he stopped to hear news of his army, and returned to Paris after that.\footnote{Jean le Bel, ii. 92.}
Edward says they stayed all night on the field without eating or drinking, and that next day pursuit was made and many were slain.\(^1\)

Reginald Cobham was sent with a herald and other lords to search out the slain.\(^2\)

According to Froissart the King of Bohemia was buried at Montenay;\(^3\) but Villani says that Edward caused the body to be given to Charles of Bohemia, and that he conveyed it to Luxemburg.\(^4\) The latter appears to be true, the heart, however, being placed in the church of the Dominicans at Montargis.\(^5\)

This date is quite wrong. The vigil of St. Bartholomew would make it the 23rd August, the day before Edward crossed the Somme; whereas there is no doubt that the battle of Crécy was fought on Saturday, August 26th. Chandos is probably quoting from his memory: there is no explanation of this wrong date in any of the Chronicles which he might have seen.

Another chronological error; there is absolutely no foundation for the statement that the siege lasted 18 months. The generally accepted dates for this siege are from Sept. 3, 1346, to Aug. 3, 1347; but it is a point on which much varying evidence exists. Jean le Bel speaks of the siege beginning "à l’issue d’aoust";\(^6\) and Froissart in one version dates Edward’s arrival before the town as early as Aug. 31st,\(^7\) while Knighton puts it as late as Sept. 7th.\(^8\) Thompson, in the careful itinerary which he has drawn up from Baker of Swynebrooke, the Kitchen Registers and Cotton MSS., gives Sept. 4th as the date of the arrival before Calais, the 2nd and 3rd being spent at Wissant;\(^9\) which is borne out by a letter from Northburgh dated from Calais, Sept. 4th, where he writes: "from what I have heard his purpose is to besiege the town of Calais."\(^10\) Edward’s letter, however, is dated Sept. 3rd before Calais,\(^11\) though nothing is said in it on the subject of the siege. Probably the whole army was not assembled there before the 4th, and certainly the actual siege did not commence before that date and may possibly have been later. Brequigny, who has considered the subject with great care, inclines to Knighton’s date of the 7th as the commencement of the actual siege: in 1346 this fell on a Thursday, and he suggests this as an explanation for Froissart’s mistake of the 31st, which would also be a Thursday.\(^12\) In any case eleven months was the extreme limit, and Chandos’ statement is either a slip or has been incorrectly transcribed.

From Edward’s own letter\(^13\) we learn that Philip pitched his tent on a hill near Calais on July 27th;\(^14\) that some time was spent in vain negotiations, the Cardinals doing their best to effect a settlement; that on the 31st the French King sent a proposal that Calais should be the prize of a combat between four knights chosen from either side, which Edward accepted next day; but that Philip never really intended to carry out this proposal, and retreated, leaving Calais to its fate during the night of Aug. 1st–2nd.\(^15\) Jean le Bel, and Froissart copying him\(^16\), say that Edward sent a refusal to this offer, declaring that he had been there quite long enough to be fought with before that date. Apart, however, from the fact that the King himself should know best, an acceptance was more in accord with the spirit of the age.

\(^1\) Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 311, notes.
\(^2\) Jean le Bel, ii. 94.
\(^3\) Froissart, iii. 191.
\(^4\) Quoted by Barnes, 356.
\(^5\) Froissart, iii. p. 1x1, note 3.
\(^6\) Jean le Bel, iii. 139.
\(^7\) Froissart (Pantheon Littéraire), i. 244.
\(^8\) Henrici Knighton Chronicon (Rolls Series), i. 52.
\(^9\) Baker of Swynebrooke, 225.
\(^10\) Avesbury, 371.
\(^11\) Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 311, notes.
\(^12\) Brequigny, Siège de Calais. Académie des Inscriptions et Belles-Lettres, 1808.
\(^13\) Robert of Avesbury, 394.
\(^14\) Cf. also Record Office, Ancient Corr., box 10, Letter from Edward dated July 30, stating that King Philip was only three French leagues distant.
\(^15\) Philip had reached Fauquembergue by Aug. 6, as he writes from there on that date on the subject of an aid (Arch. Nat., K 44, No. 12).
\(^16\) Jean le Bel, ii. 131; Froissart, i. 264.
400. Edward constructed a regular town before Calais; 'Villeneuve-la-Hardie,' Froissart calls it.

401-5. Calais surrendered Aug. 3, 1347. Froissart's account of this and the devotions of the six burgheis,¹ which he borrowed from Jean le Bel,² and which appears with slight variations in most other writers³ (probably copied), has been sometimes questioned. On this, and the general decision in its favour, see Luce's notes to his edition of Froissart.⁴

415. Truce made Sept. 28, 1347; 12th Oct., Edward landed at Sandwich; 14th Oct., he reached London.⁵

417-33. The plot for the recovery of Calais is so confusingly told that it needs helping out with other records. The actual facts appear to have been as follows:—Geffroi de Charny, at that time Governor of St. Omer, made a secret arrangement with Aimery of Pavia to purchase the town of Calais, or more probably an entrance into the castle. News of this plot reached the ears of Edward, who arrived secretly with a small but picked force, lay in ambush in the castle until a certain number of the French were admitted, and then, rushing out, surprised and cut to pieces the first detachment within the town; afterwards falling upon Charny and the rest of his men outside, he totally defeated them, almost the whole force being either killed or taken prisoners (Dec. 31, 1349—Jan. 1, 1350).

420. This curious mention of the Seigneur de Beaujeu is peculiar to Chandos and seems inexplicable. The only other of the many accounts of this plot which mentions a third person at all is the Chronicle of the First Four Valois, which says that Aimery betrayed Calais to Marshal d'Andremont, who in his turn told Geffroi de Charny.⁶ No importance can, however, be attached to this narrative, as the whole thing is inaccurate, Aimery being called a Frenchman, and the date of the event being given as 1355.⁷ As for Edouard, Sire de Beaujeu at this time, we have no reason to connect him in any way with Geffroi de Charny and his plot. He took part in Philip's expedition to relieve Calais in 1347, and was made Captain of St. Omer in 1352;⁸ but in 1350 he went on an expedition to the Holy Land, which, without rendering the other affair an absolute impossibility, considerably increases the unlikelihood of his share in an enterprise which, we learn, cost the lives or liberties of almost all who took part in it. He had a brother Guichard, who 'was distinguished in all the wars against the English,' and who afterwards fought at Poitiers;⁹ but there is equally little reason for coupling his name with that of Charny in this attempt on Calais.

421. Geffroi de Charny, Seigneur de Pierre-Perthuis. Jean le Bel calls Aimery de Pavia Governor of Calais.¹⁰

422. Froissart and Avesbury both give him the title of Captain,¹¹ Froissart adding that Edward had brought him up from his infancy; while Lefèvre, in his history of Calais, actually states, though without reference, that Aimery had been the King's governor in his early days.¹² This latter statement is very improbable; but that Aimery was a person of some importance

---

¹ Froissart, iv. 57—63.
² Jean le Bel, ii. 134, 5.
³ Baker of Swynecroft, 90; Annals of Melsa, 67; Henrici Knighton Chronicon, 52; Continuation of Lescot, 245.
⁴ Froissart, iv. p. xxx, note i. For the opposite view see Brequigny, 'Siège de Calais,' in Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions, 1808.
⁵ Rymer, iii. 21.
⁶ Chronique des quatre premiers Valois, ed. Luce (Soc. de l'Histoire de France), Paris, 1882, 49. This goes on to say that Aimery was afterwards taken by Andremont, and put to death; a deed which Froissart and others impute to Charny. Froissart, iv. p. xxxviii, and note 2. Continuation of Lescot, 91.
⁷ For life of Andremont, see Molinier, in Mémoires des Savants étrangers, 1883.
⁸ Anselme, vi. 734, and Ferdinand de la Roche la Carelle, Hist. du Beaujolais, Lyon, 1853, i. 154.
⁹ Hist. de Beaujolais, i. 148.
¹⁰ Jean le Bel, ii. 147.
¹¹ Robert of Avesbury, 408; Froissart (Panthéon Littéraire), i. 274, 277 (i.e. MS. d'Amiens). But in another version of Froissart he is only called Captain in Calais, and spoken of especially in reference to the castle only. Froissart, iv. 71, 304.
is shown by the fact that in 1348 he was made Captain of the King's Galleys, with full judicial power. As for his position in Calais it is most improbable that he should have been Captain. In Rymer we have documents enumerating the different appointments to this post, which was always held by an Englishman: Oct. 1347, John de Montgomery; Dec. 1, 1347, John Chiverston; Jan. 1, 1349, John Beauchamp. Lefebvre is probably right when he describes Aimerie as Commander of the castle, for we learn later in Rymer that there was a Constable of the castle separate from the Captain of the town, inferior to and removable by the latter. Thompson, in his notes to Baker of Swaynebroke, suggests an even less important position for the 'Lombard mercenary', namely that of Captain of one of the towers forming part of the walls of the town, but, as we know that the other office existed, the former is quite a plausible explanation.

427-8. Chandos is quite vague as to the manner in which the news reached the ears of Edward. Was it early made known to him by Aimerie, as Avesbury, Jean le Bel and one of the MSS. of Froissart state, or was it betrayed by his secretary, as we find in Baker of Swaynebroke? In any case, the Lombard must have been in collusion with the King in the end, as he had to carry on negotiations while the English lay in ambush in the tower. As we find that Aimerie was still left in Calais after this event, it is most probable that he had been more of a traitor to the French than to the English in this very discreditable transaction.

429-33. Chandos is the only Chronicler who lays great stress on the special prowess of the Black Prince. Baker, however, must be referring to the same event when he describes how Edward with only 16 men-at-arms and 16 archers held 80 of the enemy at bay, until they were put to flight by the arrival of the Black Prince. According to Avesbury, the King, being left with only 30 armed men and fewer archers, was set upon by Charny with superior numbers, but he waved his sword and so astonished the French that they lost heart and, on more of the English coming up, were defeated.

Edward's best-known adventure on this night was his fight with Eustace de Ribemont, when he was twice beaten to the knees, but raised by Cobham and Manny, and finally victorious. Guy de Brian also did some deed of valour this day, in which he bore the royal banner, for shortly afterwards he received a pension in reward for the distinguished services then rendered. The Black Prince no doubt fought well on the occasion, and Chandos calls particular attention to it, as in duty bound.

481-98. The battle of L'Espagnols-sur-Mer, fought off Winchelsea, Aug. 29, 1350. The cause appears to have been that the Spaniards had destroyed and robbed some English ships at Guérande earlier in the year. The Spanish Commander was Don Carlos de la Cerda. The few facts given by Chandos agree with the other accounts of this battle.

499-500. Froissart also speaks of Prince John being present, but says nothing of his being knighted on this occasion. He is generally supposed to have received this honour from the hands of Henry of Lancaster in 1355.

518-21. The birth of Thomas of Woodstock did not take place shortly after L'Espagnols-sur-Mer, as Chandos implies, but on Jan. 7, 1355.

1 Gascon Rolls, 22 Ed. III, m. 17.  
2 Rymer, iii, pt. i, pp. 19, 25, 46. On this subject see also Brequigny, 'Calais sous les Anglais.' Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions, vol. 50.  
3 Rymer, iii, pt. 1, p. 67. Captain of the town was then Robert Herle, 1350.  
4 Baker of Swaynebroke, 275.  
5 Robert of Avesbury, 408; Jean le Bel, ii. 147; Froissart, iv. 304, MS. de Rome.  
6 Baker of Swaynebroke, 106.  
7 Froissart, iv. 98.  
8 Baker of Swaynebroke, 104.  
9 Avesbury, 499.  
10 Jean le Bel, ii. 149; Froissart, iv. 80.  
11 French Rolls, 23 Ed. III; Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 52; see Brequigny, 'Calais sous les Anglais.'  
12 Avesbury, 412; Villani, 95; Froissart, 93-5; Walsingham, Historia Anglicana, 274; Baker of Swaynebroke, 110; see Baurel de la Roncière, Histoire de la Marine Française, Paris, 1899, i. 496.  
13 Dictionary of National Biography.
525-6. Whether Jean de Grailly, Capitul de Buch, really visited England at this time is uncertain; Froissart states that a Gascon embassy consisting of Pommiers, Rosem, Lesparre and Mussidan came in 1352 with a request that Prince Edward should be sent out to their assistance; but he mentions the Capital as amongst the nobles whom the Prince summoned to his side after his arrival. 3

549. According to Avesbury a Council was held at Westminster, Easter 1355, which ordered the Prince to go to Gascony. 8 King Edward as early as 28th May of this year gave orders for the assembling of a fleet for this purpose. 4

555. Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick.

557. William de Montagu, Earl of Salisbury.

559. Robert Ufford, Earl of Suffolk.


These are all mentioned in Edward III's Household Book (July 10, 1355) as about to accompany the Black Prince into Gascony. 6

562. The Earl of Stafford is not so certain; according to Froissart he was accompanying King Edward in his expedition to Normandy this year, 5 while Avesbury speaks of him as a member of Lancaster's army in Brittany. 7 Possibly Chandos has given the title of Earl to Ralph's younger brother, Richard Stafford, who certainly took part in the Gascon wars, 8 and to whom the Black Prince alludes in a letter dated from Bordeaux, Christmas, 1355. 9

563. Bartholomew de Burghersh is in Froissart's list of those who are starting with the Prince, 10 and he is mentioned repeatedly during the expedition. His father, Bartholomew the elder, being now dead, there is no question as to which is intended.

565. John de Montagu, brother of the Earl of Salisbury, is also given by Froissart as taking part in the Norman Expedition. Dugdale only notices his presence in the French Wars of 1346 and 1347, though he speaks of his return to Gascony in 1363. 11 As Edward's Norman expedition was only of very short duration (July to November 1355), it is always probable that some of his followers joined the Black Prince in Gascony later on, and that Chandos has perhaps named those of them who fought at Poitiers, although they did not form part of the original following.

567. Edward le Despenser is mentioned by Froissart, and is found in the Black Prince's Household Book. 12

568. Ralph, Lord Basset of Drayton; mentioned both in the Household Book and Gascon Rolls. 13

569. This is almost certainly John of Dunster, Lord Mohun, elsewhere called Mawne (1311). He was with the Prince in Gascony, 14 and fought at Poitiers. 15


573. There is no doubt about Sir John Chandos and Sir James Audeley (cf. Household Book), as to whose doings the Herald is naturally well informed.

600. Avesbury says the Prince was detained by contrary winds in Plymouth until Sept. 8th. 16 Thompson calculates Sept. 9th as the day on which he set sail from Plymouth. 17

---

1 Froissart, iv. 134.
2 Froissart, iv. 160.
3 Avesbury, 424.
4 Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 108.
6 Froissart, iv. 135.
7 Avesbury, 425.
8 Dugdale, i. 259.
9 Avesbury, 439.
10 Froissart, iv. 136.
11 Dugdale, l. 649.
12 Belz, 140.
13 Belz, 159.
14 Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 3.
15 Dictionary of National Biography.
16 Avesbury, 424; also Walsingham, Historia Anglicana, 279.
17 Baker of Swaynebrooke, 293, note.
617. Thompson dates the arrival at Bordeaux as Sept. 20th. Froissart only vaguely says 'about St. Michael's day'.

644. Bernard-Ezy, Sire d'Albret, Vicomte de Tartas, now on the side of the English, though in his early days he had taken an oath of allegiance to the French King.

625. Amaury de Biron, Sire de Montferrat.


628. Amanieu de Fossard.

629. Guillaume Sans, Sire de Pommiers.

631. Cénébrun IV, Sire de Lesparre.

All these are well-known supporters of the English cause in Gascony, and very probably came to meet the Prince on his arrival; almost all concur in saying that he was welcomed by the Gascons, and Froissart names, as summoned by him, 'Labreth, Pumiers, Mucident, Courton, Rosem et tous les aultres.'

642. The Black Prince left Bordeaux, Oct. 5th.

645-9. As usual, a very short account of numerous marches and sieges, and not absolutely correct. On 28th Oct. the English army was near Toulouse. The Black Prince says in a letter which he wrote at Christmas, that he was only a league distant and that he stayed in the neighbourhood two days. Toulouse was guarded at this time by Clément d'Armagnac, and was probably too strong to attack; Carcassonne was reached on Nov. 3rd, and the bourg burnt on the 6th; the cité apparently remained untouched.

Narbonne was reached Nov. 8th, and the bourg burnt Nov. 10th: the citadel certainly remained uncaptured; the Black Prince describes how the garrison withdrew into it, and never mentions its destruction. Béziers was not taken. It is not mentioned by the Black Prince or Wingfield, who state that the army returned from Narbonne. Froissart expressly says that the English retreat left Béziers, Montpellier, Lunel, and Nîmes untouched, to the great joy of the inhabitants, so that an attack had certainly been expected. Denifle thinks, however, that the scouts went as far as Béziers on Nov. 10, and this is implied by an old Chronicle of Jacques Mascaro, which says they saw that the town was too well defended to be attacked.

654. Quite impossible before going into winter quarters. Wingfield says the campaign lasted eight months. The Prince was at La Réole by Dec. 2, and was writing from Bordeaux on Christmas Day.

657-9. The Prince seems to have stayed in Bordeaux or its neighbourhood until August, 1356.

669-82. The Herald seems to be the only writer who gives the exact disposition of these garrisons, on which he was very likely to have good information.

1 Froissart, iv. 160.
2 Froissart, iv. 160.
3 Histoire de Languedoc, ix. 444.
4 Anselme, vii. 352.
5 Anselme, vii. 352.
6 Bertrand, Études sur les Chroniques de Froissart, Bordeaux, 1870, 65.
7 Froissart, v. 5.
8 Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 15 (at siege of Romorantin).
9 Bertrand, 231.
10 Jean le Bel, ii. 157.
11 Froissart, iv. 160.
12 Thompson (Baker of Swynebroke, 293) and Denifle (La désolation des églises, Paris, 1897-9, ii, 86 sq.) have given full details and dates of this campaign, and are in almost exact accordance with each other.
13 Avesbury, 437.
14 Wingfield's Letter in Avesbury, 443.
15 Thompson and Denifle.
16 Prince's Letter, Hist. of Languedoc, ix. 650; Jean le Bel vaguely says 'taken', ii. 188.
17 Avesbury, 438.
18 Bulletin de la Société Archéologique de Béziers, i. 81; Jean le Bel, ii. 188, speaks of the army reaching Béziers and advancing as far as Saint-Thibéry on the way to Montpellier. This may not have been the whole force. In any case there is no question of an attack.
19 Denifle and Thompson.
20 Avesbury, 437.
On the subject of proceedings during the winter there is a letter from Wingfield written from Libourne Jan. 22, 1356, by means of which some of the above-mentioned facts can be verified, though the accounts do not tally too exactly.

Port Sainte-Marie is mentioned first in a list of captured towns, and an expedition is described to Agen, where mills and bridges were burnt and a castle outside the town taken and occupied. Chandos and Audeley, together with certain Gascons, are reported to have taken Chastelsagrat, where the bastard of Lisle was killed, and where they stayed until the Feast of St. John (Dec. 27). The Capitale de Buch, meanwhile, together with Montferrand and Crotoy, was upon an expedition to Anjou and Poitou; while, at the time the letter was written, Suffolk, Salisbury and Warwick seem to have been no longer in garrison, but afield on different expeditions; the latter, having taken Tonneins and Clairac, was on the way to Marmande, and the two former were marching against Notre-Dame de Rochemade. Fuller information is needed to harmonize these accounts, but without it there is no reason to doubt the general accuracy of Chandos' statement. The order of events is doubtless affected by exigencies of verse: Port Sainte-Marie should, from its position, have been taken before Agen and Cahors if the return was to be made along the river Lot: but the English may have started from Cahors, as he says, and returned to Bordeaux or Libourne along the Garonne, and thence to Périgueux. Tonneins, Clairac, and Marmande are all in the immediate neighbourhood of La Rèole, and could have been taken by Warwick while he was still keeping guard over the former town.

Wingfield's letter may have been written too early to give any account of the events at Périgueux, for which we have no exact date. Walsingham mentions this incident, but says the town was taken by the Capitale after the Prince had refused the Comte de Périgord's offer of a money payment in return for safety. The whole of this affair is omitted in Froissart's narrative.

Jean, Comte de l'Isle-en-Jourdain, was in these Gascon Wars and may be the person referred to here.

Roger Bernard, Comte de Périgord. He was given a sum for the guard of his castle in 1356.

From Dec. 1355 to Aug. 1356. The Black Prince says that he left Bordeaux on the vigil of the Translation of St. Thomas of Canterbury, i.e. July 6; but the crossing of the Dordogne at Bergerac and actual commencement of campaign was on Aug. 4.

This march as indicated by Chandos is an impossibility, but his ideas of geography are always very rudimentary. Possibly, however, expeditions were made into these provinces during July, before the Prince had finally decided to march north in order to join the rest of the English in Normandy.

We have a brief account of this campaign in a letter of Bartholomew de Burgersh, generally giving the direction, but by far the fullest appears in the Annals of the Monastery of Malmesbury. From the various records Denifle has constructed a day-by-day itinerary for this as well as for the previous year.

Romorantin was reached Aug. 30, and the town taken next day, but the citadel held out for five days. All authorities agree as to the presence of Craon (Amaury, Sire de

1 Avesbury, 448.
2 Walsingham, Historia Anglicana, 456.
3 Sceaux de Clairambault, ii. 4806, 4808. Anselme, vi. 73.
4 Sceaux de Clairambault, ii. 7095. Anselme, ii. 73.
5 Letter of the Black Prince written at Bordeaux, Oct. 20; Archaeologia (Soc. of Antiquaries of London, 1770), i. 213.
6 Froissart, v. 1–3.
7 Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 336, notes.
8 Eulogium Historiarum a monacho quodam Malmesburiensi exaratum, ed. Haydon (Rolls Series), iii. 215.
9 Denifle, ii. 113 sq.
10 Eulogium, 215.
HISTORICAL NOTES

Craon), Lieutenant of the King in Poitou, Limousin, Saintonge, and Périgoux, and Bouciquaut (Jean le Maingre, dit Bouciquaut), \(^2\) and of their final capture.\(^3\)

716. The numbers as usual are vague. Burghersh says forty men were taken with the two captains when the citadel fell; but he has already mentioned six score as captured in the siege\(^4\) of the town. Walsingham says a number of knights and eighty armed men.\(^5\) There is no reason to think that 200 is more than a rough general estimate.

721-3. The Prince had already passed through Berry on his way to Romorantin, and now only continued on the right bank of the Cher in the direction of Tours. Unable to cross the Loire, he stayed four days opposite the town,\(^6\) and then, crossing the Cher and the Indre, reached Montbazon on Sept. 11.\(^7\)

735. Froissart also describes the gathering of the French army at Chartres.\(^8\) King John was at Breteuil at the beginning of August,\(^9\) but at Chartres from August 28 till early in September.\(^10\)

739-42. On the 8th of September King John was at Meung-sur-Loire; 13th, at Loches; 14th, La Haye Creuse; 15th, Chauvigny; 18th, near Poitiers.\(^11\) Jean le Bel says that he spent a night at Tours on his way;\(^12\) Froissart implies that only the Dauphin did this;\(^13\) but in any case the army must have passed very near, if not through, the town.

749-56. The skirmish with a detachment of the French on Saturday, 17th, is a generally recorded fact; it took place at La Chaboterie, close to Chauvigny, sometimes being called after the one place, sometimes after the other. There is some difference of opinion as to the names of the French commanders captured on that occasion. Bartholomew de Burghersh,\(^14\) Avesbury,\(^15\) and Froissart (in one version\(^16\) ) agree with Chandos as to Joigny and Auxerre; the Grandes Chroniques say it was Sancerre and not Auxerre who was captured,\(^17\) and the Black Prince speaks of the Count of 'Soussoire',\(^18\) which seems to support this view; but the Poem (1031) includes Sancerre in the King's division before the battle. Both Auxerre and Sancerre were captured at this time—either on the 17th or in the actual battle of Poitiers on the 19th—as they are included in official lists and were released at the Peace of Brétny.\(^19\)

Froissart gives an account of another affair on the Saturday: a fight between the Prince's scouts (d'Aubrécichcourt, Pommiers, Burghersh and the Captal) and the rearguard of the French army.\(^20\) These two events (if Froissart is correct in thinking that there were two)\(^21\) seem to be occasionally confused and reckoned as one by modern historians; Chandos must, however, be referring to the former incident. The French detachment, according to Froissart, had stayed behind for their own comfort, and where the Poem speaks of valiant fighting 'a lour logement' it probably refers to their night quarters.

762-6. The Prince says that he marched as near to the French army as possible, a league from Poitiers.\(^22\) The river at which they watered their horses must have been the Miausson,

---

1 Arch. Nat., JJ 84, No. 224.
3 Jean le Bel, ii. 196; Walsingham, 281; Letter of Burghersh; Letter of Black Prince; Froissart, v. 11.
4 Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 336.
5 Walsingham, 281.
7 Eulogium, 215, and Denifle.
8 Froissart, v. 2.
11 Denifle, ii. 125; Froissart, v, pp. iv–vi.
12 Jean le Bel, ii. 197.
14 Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 336.
15 Avesbury, 255.
18 Arch. Nat., J 638 b, no. 9 bis; Bibl. Nat., Fonds Fr. 23593, fol. 10; French Rolls, 1360.
19 Froissart, v. 17.
20 Luce, B. du Guesclin, Paris, 1876, i. 172.
a stream running near the battle-field. The place was then called Maupertuis, now La Cardinerie.1

768. Talleyrand de Périgord, Cardinal. He had already come to the English camp at Montbazon to treat of peace.2 Villani,3 Walsingham4 and the Continuator of Nangis,5 all speak as though two cardinals were present; this may merely be because the Pope had sent both Nicholas of Urgel and Talleyrand to treat for peace, and they do not go into the circumstantial details of Chandos and Froissart, who only speak of Cardinal Talleyrand as taking active part in these negotiations. The Herald’s authority should be very good for all these details, which he gives so fully, since Sir John Chandos, one of the deputation to the French camp, may have been his informant.

821–56. There is great difference amongst chroniclers as to the attitude of the Prince at this time. Froissart represents King John as only with great difficulty persuaded by the Cardinal to put off the battle for a day, whereas the Prince said he was quite ready to treat if his honour could be saved, and actually offered to give up conquests made in that expedition, to yield his prisoners and not to fight against France for seven years. Even these terms, however, failed to satisfy King John, who insisted that the Prince with 100 knights should surrender themselves prisoners; it was repugnance to these conditions which caused the failure of the negotiations.6

This view has been followed by most of the chroniclers.7 Modern writers, on the other hand, as a rule agree with Chandos as to the readiness of the Prince for the battle.8 This latter opinion is on the whole the more probable. The Prince had, to all appearances, been making all preparations for battle; he could have retreated, had he wished, from Châtellerault, since the French army had passed him; indeed of which he followed and took up a strong position in view of attack. The substance of the reply put into his mouth by Chandos agrees with what he reports himself to have said to the Cardinal at Montbazon, viz. that he had no power to make peace without the King his father, and this attitude is more in accordance with what we know of his character.

847. The Prince goes on to say, in the same letter,9 that he agreed to send men to arbitrate, but refused to purchase a truce.

867. Probably Jean II de Melun, Comte de Tancarville, son of the Sire de Tancarville, captured at Caen.10

869. Guillaume, brother of the Comte de Tancarville, was Archbishop of Sens 1347–76.11
870. Jean de Talair, afterwards Archbishop of Lyons.12
871. Bouciquaut must be wrong. He had been taken at Romorantin, and was not freed till July 1357.13

Jean de Clermont, Comte de Chantilly, Marshal of France.14

873–84. This Council is also mentioned in the Eulogium,15 which says that there were eleven of each nation, but does not enter into any details. The names given here, with the exception of Bouciquaut, are all most probable.

890–914. Only found in this narrative.

1 Froissart, v. p. vi, note 1. Babinet, Critique du Récit de la Bataille de Poiriers (Bulletin des Anti-
quaires de l'Ouest, 1895).
3 Villani, 411. Cardinal of Bologna and Cardinal of Périgord in French King’s company.
4 Walsingham, Ypodigma, 299.
5 Chronique de Guillaume de Nangis et de ses continuateurs, ii. 240.
7 Cochin, Chronique Normande, 88; Chronique des quatre premiers Valois, 45; Villani, 411, c. 17;

Jean le Bel, ii. 198. Baker of Swynebrooke takes
much the same view.
8 Denife and Babinet.
9 Chronicle of London, 205.
10 Kervyn de Lettenhove, Index to Froissart.
11 Gallia Christiana.
12 Gallia Christiana.
13 Archives Historiques du Poitou, xvii, Introduction.
14 Archives Historiques du Poitou, xvii, p. 192, note.
15 Eulogium, iii. 223.
939–44. Jean de Clermont, Comte de Chantilly, Marshal; Arnoul, Sire d'Audrehem, Marshal; and Gautier, Duc d'Atténes, Constable of France. All agree as to this advanced guard of the marshals, Jean le Bel and Froissart (in at least one version) associating the Duke of Athens with them,¹ though some chroniclers place him with the King.²

949–54. Froissart only says that they chose out 300 knights and squires; Baker talks of 500 mounted men; Chandos must be mistaken in giving so large a number of followers. Far the clearest and most useful account of all this battle of Poitiers is that given by Baker of Swynebroke, which Thompson says must certainly have come from an eyewitness; the editor's excellent notes and map which accompany them are invaluable for an understanding of the engagement,³ and this description is well worth comparing with that given by Chandos.

955–8. Chandos repeatedly represents King John as commanding that no English should be spared except the Prince (973, 1005). Knighton supports this statement⁴; Froissart does not, since he describes two captures made by Frenchmen in the battle; but certainly the oriflamme was carried at Poitiers,⁵ which signified that no quarter was to be given.

959–64. Baker also places Normandy (Charles the Dauphin) immediately after the marshals. Jean le Bel and Froissart give the same divisions of the French army, but place the Duke of Orleans in command of this second 'battle': ⁶ the other arrangement, however, agrees better with the subsequent events of the fight, since Froissart says that the horsemen were driven back on the 'battle' of the Duke of Normandy.⁷

965. Pierre, Duc de Bourbon, Comte de Clermont et de la Marche.⁸

967. Robert, Sire de Saint-Venant.⁹

969. Jean, Sire de Magnelais dit Tristan.¹⁰ Froissart also mentions Saint-Venant as one of the guardians of the Duke of Normandy, the other two being Landas and Vaudenay; ¹¹ but it is certain that he would have several persons of importance to assist him in the command.

1000. Philip, Duke of Orleans, son of Philip VI.

1017. All accounts agree as to King John's position in the battle.

1019. John's youngest son Philip was certainly with him. Froissart places the other two Princes, Louis and Jean, with the Duke of Normandy,¹² and since they all three fled together it looks as though this might be correct.¹³

1021. Louis should be Comte d'Anjou; he was not Duke till 1360. Jean should be Comte de Poitiers; he was created 'Duc de Berri et d'Auvergne' in 1360.

It is interesting to note that the Continuator of Nangis ¹⁴ and the Chronicle of the First Four Valois ¹⁵ support each other in saying that the Princes only fled quite late in the fight when King John was taken; but no other authorities seem to imply this.

1025. Jacques de Bourbon, Sire de Leuze.¹⁶

1026. Jean d'Artois, Comte d'Eu.

1027. Charles d'Artois, Comte de Longueville.

1031. Jean 111, Comte de Sancerre.


¹ Jean le Bel, ii. 107; Froissart, v. 253; Continuation of Lescot, 102.
² Quatre premiers Valois, 45.
³ Babinet (Bulletin des Antiquaires de l'Ouest, 1895) makes some criticism on Swynebroke's narrative; he considers the description of the field rather exaggerated.
⁴ Henric Knighton Chronicon, 89.
⁵ Froissart, v. 23.
⁶ Baker of Swynebroke, 310, map; Jean le Bel, ii. 197; Froissart, v. 20.
⁷ Froissart, v. 37.
⁸ Arch. Nat., JJ 85, No. 112. Confirmed as Lieutenant in Gascony, 1356.
¹⁰ Anselme, vili. 540.
¹¹ Froissart, v. 23.
¹² Froissart, v. 20.
¹³ Froissart, v. 41.
¹⁴ Guillaume de Nangis, ii. 240.
¹⁵ Chronique des quatre premiers Valois, 51.
¹⁶ Archives Historiques du Poltou, xiii, 340, note.
All these are found in the list of the King's followers given in the Chronicle of the First Four Valois, and were captured together with the King and his son Philip.  

1038. This may mean the advanced guard of 300 mentioned by Froissart and Swynebrooke, who say that all but the advanced guard fought on foot, and that it was Ribemont who advised this plan.

All the three leaders now named were certainly present in the battle.

1041. Guichard d'Angle, Sire de Pleumartin; afterwards an ally of the English and Earl of Huntingdon.

1043. Jean, Sire d'Aubigny. One of the prisoners released in 1360.

1045. Eustace de Ribemont, who had fought with the King at Calais.

1070–91. The disposition of the English army is the same here as in the narrative of Baker, who adds that Oxford was with Warwick in the vanguard, Suffolk with Salisbury in the rear.

1077–81. Froissart mentions the Seigneur de Pommiers and Messires Hélie and Aymon de Pommiers as all present in the battle; and there seems to have been even a fourth brother, Jean.

1083. This seems to be a command to cross the river Miausson, as we read later that the advanced guard was on the other side of the river and had to repass to get at the enemy (line 1212).

1084. Babinet thinks that the indispensable carriages were with Warwick, while the right wing was fortified with the pillage wagons.

1106. Sir Eustace d'Aubréchicourt, a knight from Hainault.

Froissart also relates the capture of d'Aubréchicourt, but with slightly different details; he does not mention Curton, nor say that they were sent to reconnoitre, but merely that Sir Eustace was eager to engage, and was caught and kept prisoner by the Germans.

1121–32. This is explained by reference to Baker, who says that the Prince led his army across the marshy valley on the right, and took up a position on a hill covered with vines and brambles, this movement causing the French to think that he was retreating.

1135–56. Baker also relates the quarrel between the two marshals, and how Clermont asserted that the English were not flying; but that he was forced, nevertheless, out of rivalry with his colleague, to hurry on to the attack.

The Chronicle of the First Four Valois alludes to the same event, but dates it earlier, and as taking place before the King.

1163–1179. This description of the rearguard being the first to engage, though given by no French chronicler, is clearly justified by Baker's account. The third division had been placed on the high ground on the left rear, close to a gap in the hedge, with a road leading up to it, evidently the point from which Ribemont had made his survey of the English army. Clermont must have made for this gap by the road, which explains Froissart's statement that the marshals advanced between two thick hedges. Salisbury's 'battle', being moved forward, was therefore the first to engage.

1189–92. The effectiveness of the English archers is attested by all. From Baker we learn that they had been posted all along the hedge.

---

1 Chronique des quatre premiers Valois, 45.
3 Froissart, v. 22.
4 Froissart, v. 44.
5 Bibli. Nat. Fonds Fr., 23593.
6 On this see also Luce, Bertrand du Guesclin, i. 173, and Froissart, v. p. x note.
7 Antiquaires de l'Onest, 1895.
8 Beltz, Memorials of the Garter, 90.
9 Froissart, v. 34. 35.
10 Baker of Swynebrooke, 147.
11 Ibid.
12 Chronique des quatre premiers Valois, 57.
13 On this see Luce, B. du Guescin, i. 175.
14 Froissart, v. 36.
15 Baker of Swynebrooke, 147, 306.
1193-1202. The special mention of these four knights seems to be peculiar to Chandos.
1205-13. All this still agrees with Baker's narrative, as does also the defeat of the Duke of Normandy (1235-8) and the battle between the forces of King John and the Prince (1239-40).
1260-73. The Prince's prayer may have been reported to the Herald by Sir John Chandos, who fought by his master's side throughout the battle.
1283-92. The request of Audeley is given rather differently by Froissart, who places it much earlier in the day. According to him, Audeley had sworn to be the first to engage in the battle, and therefore obtained the Prince's leave to ride against the first attack of the Marshals.¹
1311. John, Lord Mohun of Dunster.
1313. Very probably means Reginald, who was certainly present.
1320-1. The Captal de Buch and the Gascons did particularly good work in the battle. Baker says that the Captal was sent round to attack the French in the rear, and that this, combined with the Prince's charge, finally settled the day.²
1323-6. Almost all the names given here are mentioned by Froissart as those of Gascons in the Prince's army.³
1325. Bernard Ezi, Sire d'Albret; Cénébrun IV, Sire de Lesparre; and Amanieu d'Albret, Sire de Langoiran.
1325. Auger Montaut, Sire de Mussydan, and Raymond Guillaume, Sire de Caupene.
1353. King John, according to Froissart, surrendered to Denys de St. Omer, Sire de Morbecque;⁴ and this was confirmed by letters patent in 1357.⁵ In 1361 a Gascon gentleman, Bernard de Troy, asserted that it was really he who had effected the capture.⁶
1361. Jean de Noyers, Comte de Joigny, had been captured on the Saturday before at La Chaboterie.
1363. The Black Prince names as prisoner a Comte de Salesberg,⁷ who is called Salebrugge in the French Rolls.⁸ The real name was Jean, Comte de Sarrebruck.⁹
1365. Jean III, Comte de Sancerre.
This list of prisoners seems to be quite correct so far as it goes. It agrees with the list given by the Black Prince himself and with the French Rolls of 1360.¹⁰
1373. The Prince gives the number of prisoners, besides those specially named, as 1,933 men-at-arms.¹¹ Jean le Bel says 2,000 prisoners.¹² B. de Burghersh gives the highest reckoning, viz. 2,500.¹³
1375-87. The list of slain appears to be equally without error (though of course far from complete). They are all mentioned by the Black Prince, with the exception of Matas, and also by Burghersh, Froissart and Avesbury.
1380. In Avesbury's list we find le Sire de Matas, and in the letter of Burghersh 'Monsieur Geoffrey Matas' with no other indications. There was a Robert Matas about this time,¹⁴ son of Fouques de Matas and Yolande de Pons;¹⁵ but Thompson, in notes to Baker of Swaynebroke, suggests an interesting solution of the problem.¹⁶ In his account of the Calais plot

¹ Froissart, v. 33.
² Baker of Swaynebroke, 151. On this see also Babinet.
³ Froissart, v. 32.
⁴ Froissart, v. 54.
⁵ Cotton MSS., Caligula D iii, fol. 74.
⁶ Froissart, v. p. xvii, note 3; Rymer (1836 ed.), ill. 457.
⁹ For spelling of some of these names see Champollion-Figeac, Lettres des Rolls, ii. 118.
¹⁰ For complete list see Froissart, v. p. xiii, note 3.
¹¹ Archaeologia, i.
¹² Jean le Bel, ii. 199.
¹³ Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 336.
¹⁵ Archives du Poitou, xvii, No. 381.
¹⁶ Baker of Swaynebroke, 276.
Baker speaks of 'Geoffrey de Chargny, Lord of Matas'. The editor therefore thinks it possible that Chandos is here referring to the famous Standard-Bearer, and that the fact that the two names are given in juxtaposition both by Avesbury and Burghersh renders it possible that two men have been made out of one; and instead of 'Geoffrey de Chargny, le Sire de Matas' we should read 'Geoffrey de Chargny, sire de Matas'. No one but Baker seems to connect Charny in any way with the name Matas, but certainly he would be rather a serious person to omit even in so short a list, whereas Robert de Matas must have been fairly unimportant.

1380. Jean de Mortagne, Sire de Landas.
1381. Renaud de Pons, Sire de Blaye et de Ribérac.
1387. The Black Prince puts it at 2,426 men-at-arms besides the nineteen knights he has mentioned by name; Burghersh says 2,800, of whom 2,000 were men-at-arms.

1405. For once Chandos has given a correct date. The battle was fought on Monday, 19th Sept.: 'surveile de Seint Matheu,' as the Black Prince calls it. Froissart and Jean le Bel are both wrong on this point: the former calling it the 20th, the latter saying it was the day after the festival of St. Lambert, which would make it the 18th. A letter from the French King's Council to the Bishop of Albi on Sept. 27th gives accurate proof of the 19th.

1441-2. Agrees with Jean le Bel and Froissart, who both recount the supper on the night of the battle and the departure next day.

1446. The Chronicle of the Monk of Malmesbury gives the itinerary of this return to Bordeaux. They stopped at Libourne, Oct. 2nd, while King's lodging was prepared at Bordeaux, in the Abbey of St. André.

1459. Feasting and rejoicings, says Froissart, went on till Lent of next year. They stayed in Bordeaux until Easter, leaving the Tuesday or Wednesday after, 11th or 12th April, according to the French Chronicles; this would seem to be fairly correct, since King John was dating an act from Bordeaux as late as April 7th.

1493. They landed at Plymouth during May. The Grandes Chroniques say on the 4th.

Walsingham says on the 15th.

1501. Reached London 24th May, and rode over London Bridge at 3 in the afternoon.

1516. War began again long before that. The truce made in 1357 expired Easter 1359, and Edward began fresh preparations for war.


1524-9. This agrees entirely with the more detailed account of the campaign given by Froissart, with the exception of the curious mention of 'parmi Bayane'. There is a small town called Bayou (Meurthe-et-Moselle), but this is much further east than they seem to have gone. It is more likely the river Yonne, which they must have crossed.

1527. According to Froissart, Edward was stopped by a fearful storm at Gallardon, between Maintenon and Chartres, from which place he saw the spire of the Cathedral (it is true that it is visible from that place), and agreed to come to terms.

1538. The conference to draw up terms of peace was held at Brétigny, five miles from

---

1 Baker of Swynbrooke, 103.
2 Letter dated Oct. 23; Chronicle of London, 204.
4 Jean le Bel, ii. 201-2; Froissart, v. 64, 65.
5 Eulogium Historiarum, iii. 226.
6 Froissart, v. 70.
7 Grandes Chroniques, vi. 58: Tuesday, April 11, 1357; Continuation of Lescot, 110: Wednesday after Easter.
8 Arch. Nat., K 47 b, No. 41.
9 Grandes Chroniques, vi. 58.
10 Walsingham, 281.
11 Nicolas, Chronicle of London, 63.
12 Rymer, iii, pt. i, pp. 185, 186, &c.
13 Froissart, v. 192.
14 Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 188; Froissart, v. p. lviii, note 5.
15 Froissart, v. 199-234.
16 Froissart, vi. 5.
Chartres—1st to 7th May, 1360: the Black Prince acting for his father and signing the provisional treaty with the Regent 8th May (line 1553). This had to be ratified by the two Kings, Edward and John, which was done in London on the 14th June. Finally the formal treaty was drawn up and signed at Calais, and dated 24th Oct., 1360.  

1543-4. John was not fully at liberty until after 24th Oct., 1360; the conditions being the immediate surrender of certain places, including La Rochelle, to the English, the payment of the first instalment of his ransom, and the delivery of hostages.

1546. Besides Guienne the English King was to possess in full sovereignty Poitou, Saintonge, Agenais, Périgord, Limousin, Cahors, Tarbes, Bigorre, Gaure, Angoumois, Rouergue, Montreuil, Ponthieu, Guines and the town and environs of Calais.

1555. King Edward had gone first. He landed at Rye on 18th May, 1360.  

1559. Date wrong as usual; it should be, as we have already seen, 24th Oct., 1360. The Prince of Wales and many others were witnesses.  


1590-5. The Prince of Wales was created Prince of Aquitaine 19th July, 1362. He set out in August of the same year, accompanied by his wife, and established his court at Bordeaux.  

1599. Edward of Angoulême, born 1364 or 1365; died January, 1371. Richard of Bordeaux, born 6th Jan., 1367; afterwards Richard II.

1600-1. Scarcely as much as seven years. In 1368 appeals were made against him to the French King. In Jan. 1369 he was summoned to answer for his conduct before the Parlement of Paris: in the same month hostilities first began to break out in Rouergue.

1602-5. The Gascon Lords did homage from 9th to 30th July, 1363, at Bordeaux; after which the Prince made a tour through Poitou, Saintonge, Angoumois and Périgord to receive his vassals from other parts of the country.

1616. The Prince had a royal residence at Angoulême as well as at Bordeaux. Acts are dated from each.

1649-51. The Herald now enters on by far the most important part of his narrative concerning events of which he was an eyewitness. For the criticism of this portion of his poem we have fewer facilities than for the study of the French campaigns: most of the English chroniclers have dismissed the Spanish wars in a few words, and we possess no letters written on the spot, such as have been preserved for us for the years 1346 and 1356. Froissart was present in person at Bordeaux at the close of 1356, so that for the negotiations preceding the war we can compare the accounts of two eyewitnesses; but for the actual expedition and for the battle of Najera he has so obviously drawn his materials from the Herald Chandos that his corroborate ceases to be of much value as evidence. The Spanish historian Ayala was present in the opposite camp and affords exceedingly useful information, but is naturally less well informed as to the proceedings of Pedro's army than of that of his rival; while the work of another eyewitness, a Latin poem on the battle of Najera by Walter of Peterborough, monk of Revesby, although interesting, is very much confused, and is coloured throughout by a desire to enhance excessively the glory of its hero, the Duke of Lancaster.
The remaining authorities have to be studied with considerable discretion. The rhymed chronicle by Cuvelier on Bertrand du Guesclin ¹ and the anonymous prose Life ² published by Buchon mix so much romance with their statements that it is impossible to place much confidence in their accuracy.

The Grandes Chroniques de France ³ are especially valuable for this period, since from 1340 to 1380 they are an original authority and the work of a contemporary; they give us apparently trustworthy information, and, which are rarer still, precise dates; ⁴ but unluckily they are very brief upon the Spanish affairs and leave most of the details unnoticed.

1653. The battle of Auray, at which Charles de Blois was killed and B. du Guesclin taken prisoner, was fought on Sept. 29th, 1364 ⁵; since the march of the Companies into Spain did not begin until October 1365, this statement as it stands is misleading; no doubt the Herald merely wishes to imply that, after the Breton succession was once settled, the next event of importance was the expedition into Castile.

1669-74. This happened in October 1365. Pedro the Cruel of Castile was engaged in war with his half-brother Henry of Trastamare, who claimed his throne, and who was supported by the King of Aragon. Charles V was enraged against Pedro on account of the suspicion that he had murdered his wife, Blanche of Bourbon, sister of his own wife Jeanne; and therefore on March 9, 1365, he had made a treaty with Henry and the King of Aragon, by which he promised to send an army to their assistance.

1675. The Pope was naturally hostile to Pedro, since the most constant charge made against him was his friendship with Jews and Saracens; ⁶ he had also ill-treated the Papal envoys sent to treat with him, and, on refusing to comply with a summons to Rome, had been excommunicated. ⁷

1679-83. The war between Castile and Aragon had not lasted fourteen years. Pedro’s father, Alfonso XI, died in 1350, at which time Ferdinand, the Infant of Aragon, was one of the claimants for the throne obtained by Pedro; but actual war did not break out between the two countries until 1356, from which time it had continued with intervals until the date at which we have arrived, not quite ten years later. ⁸

1685. The French King, the Pope and Henry of Trastamare had clubbed together to release Bertrand after the Breton war, in order that he might lead the Companies.

1689. Jean de Bourbon, Comte de la Marche, son of Jacques—but himself called Jacques by various chroniclers (e.g. Thalamus Parvus, 370; Grandes Chroniques, 239). He had joined the expedition to avenge the death of his cousin, Pedro’s wife. ⁹

1689. Arnoul, Sire d’Audrehem, Marshal of France.

1691. Eustace d’Aubréchicourt.

1693. Sir Hugh de Calverley, who had gone against the wishes of King Edward. ¹⁰

1695. Sir Matthew de Gournay accompanied him.

Marshal Audrehem had long been engaged in efforts to check evils resulting from the ravages of the Companies; ¹¹ the rest are all well-known members of the Grand Company, ¹² and are all mentioned during the campaign by Froissart, Ayala, Cuvelier, &c.

1697-1705. As for the motives of the expedition, there is no doubt that Castile was the prime object, though Bertrand gave out that he was going to fight the infidels, in order not to

¹ Cuvelier, Chronique de B. du Guesclin, ed. Charrière (Documents inédits sur l’Histoire de France).
² Chronique anonyme, Panthéon Littéraire.
⁴ Lacabane, on Les Grandes Chroniques, Bibl. de l’École des Chartes, tome 2.
⁵ Froissart, vi. 159, p. lxi, note 2.
⁶ Ayala and Cuvelier, passim.
⁷ Froissart, vi. 187.
⁹ Froissart, vi. 188.
¹⁰ French Rolls, 39 Ed. III, m. 3. No vassals of King Edward to fight for Pedro, Dec. 6, 1365.
¹¹ Möllnert, Arnoul d’Audrehem, Paris, 1883, 4to (Mémoires des Savants, série ii, t. 6).
¹² Fréville, Des Grandes Compagnies au 14e siècle, Bibl. de l’École des Chartes, série 1, tomes 3 and 5.
lose the help of the English, who had been forbidden to fight against Don Pedro. According to Cuvelier he informed the captains that he wanted to go against the Saracens in Granada and Cyprus, but that he would not mind doing some harm to Pedro on the way.

1707. Bertrand had been promised large sums to get the Companies out of France, and we read of the halt made on the way by the army of adventurers at Villeneuve-lès-Avignon, and their successful demand for Papal absolution and a large sum of money at the same time.

1709-11. Chandos passes very briefly over those parts of his narrative on which he could not have had personal knowledge. They travelled in different detachments, as is shown by the dates at which the various commanders passed through Montpellier, between Nov. 5th and Dec. 24th; and in January, 1366, they were received by the King of Aragon at Barcelona.

1712-26. This message sent to Don Pedro is only mentioned by Froissart, but it does not appear to have been copied, as he omits the demand for peace with Aragon and adds a reply sent by Pedro, who on receipt of the news ‘ne fist que rire, et respondi qu’il n’en feroit rien, ne que il n’obeiroit ja a tel truandaille’. Apart from this corroboration, some sort of communication would probably have been made by the invaders.

1739-45. This statement appears to be coloured by national partiality. Froissart says that all that Pedro had taken from the King of Aragon was recovered, but makes no special mention of the English captains; while the Lives of du Guesclin, in their turn, ascribe the capture of Magalon and Borja to the prowess of their special hero. As he was leader of the expedition this credit is probably not undeserved; nevertheless Cuvelier repeatedly mentions the names of Gournay and Calverley in connexion with these events, and they must undoubtedly have distinguished themselves.

1751-5. The date given by Ayala of Pedro’s flight from Burgos is 28th March, nearly three months after the first arrival of the Companies; but it is in truth less than a month after the capture of Borja and Magalon, to which reference has just been made, and which fell to the invaders at the beginning of March.

1771. More precise details as to Henry’s coronation are given in the other Chronicles. After being proclaimed at Calahorra, he was crowned at Burgos on Easter Day, 5th April, 1366, according to the Grandes Chroniques; this date, though not given elsewhere except in the Chronographia rerum Francorum, is at least correct as to the date of Easter in that year, and there seems no reason to doubt it: the prose Life of du Guesclin also mentions that it took place on a Sunday.

1775-82. This is apparently true, though Chandos is not always very accurately informed as to the proceedings of Don Pedro; his treasures at Seville also receive frequent notice, Cuvelier making special mention of a certain golden table, which he describes later as given to the Prince of Wales.

1785-7. There is probably an error here. The Lives of du Guesclin speak of Pedro as sailing to Lisbon and having a personal interview with the King of Portugal, but Ayala, who is more likely to be well informed upon proceedings in Spain, after describing the failure of Pedro’s negotiations with Portugal for the marriage of his daughter (who went to Lisbon, but unaccompanied by her father), gives the details of his journey overland to Galicia, through Albuquerque and Monterey, in which latter place he was joined by Fernando de Castro.

1 Molinier, 171.; 2 Cuvelier, i. 254.; 3 Chronique anonyme, 36; Cuvelier, i. 271; Molinier. 4 Chronique du petit Thalamus de Montpellier (Soc. Arch. de Montpellier, 1840, 410; Arch. Nat., J 369-70; Molinier, 172. 5 Froissart, vi. 189. 6 Froissart, vi. 190. 7 Cuvelier, i. 287, 290; Chronique anonyme, 37, 38. 8 Ayala, 403. 9 Molinier, 172. 10 Ayala, 401, 407; Grandes Chroniques, vi. 239; Chronographia, 326; Chronique anonyme, 37; Cuvelier, i. 319. 11 Ayala, 405, speaks of his going to Seville. 12 Cuvelier, i. 544; Chronique anonyme, 42. 13 Ayala, 412 sqq.
1788-96. That all did homage to Henry is apparently true as far as the great nobles scattered about the country are concerned;¹ a certain number of followers, however, had remained with Pedro throughout his wanderings: Martin Lopez de Cordova, Master of Alcantara; Matheos Fernandez, Chancellor; and Martin Yanez, Treasurer, had accompanied him to Seville,² and the names of the first two are on the Treaty made with the Black Prince and signed by Pedro at Bayonne.³

1795. Fernandez de Castro. He had been an ally of Henry of Trastamare, whose sister he married, but had rejoined Pedro in 1354 and remained faithful from that time onwards.⁴ Chandos has avoided a mistake made by the French chroniclers, who speak of Fernandez travelling with the King to Seville,⁵ whereas he was really governing in Galicia at the time.⁶

1825. Corunna in Galicia.

1834-7. In 1344 there had been negotiations for a marriage between Don Pedro and Joan, daughter of Edward III;⁷ and treaties between England and Castile had been constantly confirmed during the previous years.⁸

1847. The substance is correct, but the Council seems to have been held at Monterey, from which place the King journeyed to Santiago and thence to Corunna.⁹

1857-84. Froissart also describes the sending of the letter, which, according to him, contained a direct request for help, with no mention of a desire to come to Aquitaine.¹⁰

1885-1942. For the narrative of the proceedings of this Council, held on receipt of Pedro's letter, Froissart's account is far fuller and the details are given rather differently.¹¹ He agrees with the Herald that the King asked advice of Chandos and Felton, but they suggested, he says, the expedition to Corunna, which was at once prepared under the command of the latter; but, having been delayed by contrary winds for several days at Bayonne, Pedro arrived in person before they had been able to set out. After his arrival a large Parliament was held, in which the exiled King won the favour of the barons, who were at first inclined to be hostile, by numerous promises; and it was not until after this that Armagnac, Chandos and the Captal advised an alliance with Navarre, and that Chandos and Felton were sent to Pampeluna to arrange the matter. Ayala gives yet another account,¹² for he says that a Gascon noble, the Sire de Poyanne, came to Corunna to invite Pedro to Bordeaux, and that on the Spanish King's arrival at Bayonne he was met by the Black Prince and Charles of Navarre, who conducted him to Angoulême. The latter part of this statement is obviously incorrect, and the first part is improbable in the face of more trustworthy evidence (Froissart and Chandos both being on the spot), and therefore need not be considered.

It must be confessed that Froissart's account has an air of greater probability about it than that of Chandos. The pressing question was certainly what answer to make to Pedro before considering the difficulties of a passage into Spain; and if Chandos and Felton really undertook the negotiations with Navarre it must have been after the attempted expedition to fetch the King from Corunna. That the Herald should have been inaccurate over facts which so closely concerned his master may be explained by his desire to pass quickly over these preliminary affairs, and to arrive at what evidently interested him more—the actual campaign in Spain.

1943. The Treaty of Libourne was signed by 'Vexillarius Mayor Domini Sancti filii regis'. There is nothing to prove the presence of the Prince himself, but it is quite possible. The

¹ Ayala, 408.
² Ayala, 413.
³ British Museum, Cotton MS. Vespasian C xii, folio 95.
⁴ Mérimée, 142, 164, 256.
⁵ Froissart, vi. 191; Cuvelier, l. 329.
⁶ Ayala, 408; Froissart, vi. p. lxxiv, note 2.
⁷ Rymer, ii, pt. iv, p. 166.
⁸ Rymer, ii, pt. ii, pp. 60, 73, 91.
⁹ Ayala, 416.
¹⁰ Froissart, vi. 196.
¹¹ Froissart, vi. 197 sq. ¹² Ayala, 419 sq.
daughters who accompanied Pedro were Constance, Isabel and Beatrice, children of Marie de Padilla. (Constance afterwards married John of Gaunt, and Isabel the Earl of Cambridge.)

1955–8. A joint conference was apparently held at Bayonne between the Black Prince, Pedro and Charles of Navarre. The latter had already made an alliance with Henry of Trastamare, but was won over by promise of Guipuzcoa, Vitoria, Logroño, Calahorra, and Alfaro. On 23rd Sept. 1366 a Treaty was drawn up at Libourne, in presence of Lancaster, Chandos, Felton, the Bishop of Saintonge, &c., and signed ‘Yo el Rey.’ By this Pedro promised 500,000 florins to the Prince, as well as payment to his followers, and the lands to Navarre. His three daughters and the wives of three Spanish nobles were to remain as hostages. These promises were confirmed at Bayonne on the 20th Feb., King Pedro touching the Gospels with his own hands.

1971–8. The return of the Companies, as here described, agrees in the main with the fuller account given by Froissart. He includes, in the part played by Sir John Chandos, a mission to the Comte de Foix, to induce him to allow the passage of the Companies through his country. This is of interest: first because we find here the earliest mention of ‘son Héraut’ who was sent to the Companies to explain the arrangements made; and secondly because Dom Vaissette has questioned the truth of the statement, on the plea of the improbability of the adventurers passing through Foix, which would entail a march through the hostile country of Aragon. Certainly it might have been Béarn, which also belonged to the Comte de Foix; but Froissart has taken particular pains to explain how disagreeable the King of Aragon had made it for them while they traversed his country, and how the Passes were all occupied so that they could not return. Another reason for believing what Froissart tells us about the Comte de Foix is that he was personally acquainted with Gaston Phoebus and even wrote part of his Chronicle while residing at his Court.


Creswell. Froissart calls him ‘Jean Carsuelle’ or ‘Cresuelle’, and Luce has identified him as John Creswey de Burnham. But there certainly was a John Creswell fighting in the English army at various dates quite distinct from Creswey, since in the Gascon Rolls these names occur, on the same membrane, as fighting abroad in 1355. This John Creswell receives letters of protection in 1355, 1371 and 1373, and may well be the warrior to whom Chandos here alludes.

Robert Briquet.


The only two of these warriors not specially mentioned by Froissart as returning are Aubeterre and Bernard de la Salle, but they had been fighting in Spain and were members of the Companies, as we know from other references. Our poem omits two names which are given by Froissart, namely those of Calverley and Gournay. This is in reality a proof of its accuracy, for Gournay had been sent by Henry on a mission to Portugal, whence he returned straight to Aquitaine, and Calverley could not have come back with the others if it is true that he threatened Navarre by the capture of Puente la Reina and Miranda.

2018–19. This date is curious—‘at the time when the gentle bird ceases to sing’, three weeks before Christmas. One would have expected the preparations to begin earlier.

---

2 Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 118; Cotton MSS., Vespasian C xii, fol. 95.
4 Froissart, v. 211–216.
5 Histoire de Languedoc, ix. 782.
6 Froissart, vi, pp. 189 and lxxxiii, note.
7 Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 8 (where both occur), 45 m. 3; Fr. Rolls, 47 m. 27.
8 Froissart, vi, p. lxxiii, note 7.
9 Froissart, vi, p. xciv, note 1, and lxxxi, note 3.
10 Froissart, vi, 211.
11 Froissart, vi, 226; Ayala, 402.
12 Dict. of Nat. Biography.
13 Chandos, 148; Froissart, vii. 3.
2031. Dax in the dept. of Landes.
2049. The Prince waited in Bordeaux until after the birth of his son Richard, rather over the fortnight.
2097. Richard of Bordeaux, born January 6, 1367;¹ therefore roughly a fortnight after Christmas Day (see line 2049).
2107–12. The Prince left Bordeaux 10th January, and waited at Dax three days for his brother, according to Froissart.

The Duke of Lancaster had apparently been in England when the first message was sent, to ask the advice of Edward III,² and was then sent to Gascony to take part in the arrangements, for his name is found amongst those who witness the Treaty at Libourne 23rd Sept. He must have immediately gone home to collect troops, with which he was now returning, leaving England for the second time on January 5, 1367.³

2119. Froissart says Lancaster landed at Saint Mallère de Fine Poterne, identified by Luce as a hamlet in Finisterre.⁴

2125. John de Montfort, Duke of Brittany; he met the Duke of Lancaster at Nantes.
2129. Olivier de Clisson and Sir Robert Knolles.
2135–53. All this agrees perfectly with Froissart’s narrative.
2158. Gaston Phoebus, Comte de Foix. Froissart says that he arrived at Dax just after the Duke of Lancaster.⁵

2183. Ayala gives his name with the English army at Nájera, but this is obviously a mistake; Froissart agrees with Chandos that he returned immediately, presumably to his own country.⁶

Walter of Peterborough’s poem says that Foix was left in charge at Bordeaux, together with Pommiers.⁷ Froissart says ‘il li recarga son pays, et li pria que il en volsist songnier dou garder jusques à son retour’; but does not speak of his going to Bordeaux, for ‘sur ce s’en retourna li dis contes en son pays’. This is not perfectly clear, but may mean that he promised to guard the frontier in case of danger arising during the Prince’s absence. No history of Gaston Phoebus seems to imply his Governorship of Aquitaine, and the Herald is more likely to be correct than Walter of Peterborough.

2189–94. Charles of Navarre had, as we have seen, already signed a treaty with Pedro, by which in return for certain concessions he had promised to open the passes through his country to the English army.⁸ The subsequent alliance with Henry, according to Ayala, was made at Santa Cruz de Campezo, by which King Charles undertook to prevent the passage of the troops.⁹

2196. Chandos and Froissart seem to be the only contemporaries who mention the capture of Miranda and Puente-la-Reina;¹⁰ but Ayala, with the authority of an eyewitness, speaks of Calverley leaving Henry directly after the latter’s treaty with Charles the Bad.¹¹ Navarre would be a possible route of return from Burgos, and, knowing of the recent engagement, Calverley may have wished to take revenge upon the perfidious Charles, or, more probably, he merely sacked the towns in passing, after the usual custom of the Companies, whereupon the King in alarm thought the passage of troops would be less dangerous if they came as allies, and so hastened to renew his old alliance. (On 27th Sept. the Black Prince had signed a promise to forbid all pillage during the march.)¹²

¹ Froissart, vii. 1.
² Froissart, vi. 206.
³ Dictionary of National Biography.
⁵ Froissart, vii. 2.
⁶ Froissart, vii. 3.
⁷ Wright’s Political Songs, i. 104; Froissart, ed. Kervyn de Lettenhove, vii, 149.
⁹ Ayala, 435.
¹⁰ Froissart, vii. 3.
¹¹ Ayala, 437.
¹² Brutaille, Documents des Archives de Navarre (Bibl. de l’Ecole des Hautes-Etudes, 1894), 155.
2203. Martin Enríquez de La Carra, ‘Alfárez’ de Navarre. He has already appeared on the scene as councillor and delegate for the King of Navarre in September, 1366; and he is also mentioned in an earlier document as placed in guard of an important place on the frontier. He was certainly Charles’s right-hand man, and may well have taken part in these negotiations, but he probably returned to look after the business of the kingdom when Charles arrived in person, for he is not mentioned as accompanying the army on its passage.

2210. The arrival of Charles of Navarre at Saint-Jean-Pied-du-Port, and meeting with the Prince at Peyrehorade, is told by Froissart also. Ayala says that directly after his treaty with Henry of Trastamare the King of Navarre made a second alliance with Pedro and the Black Prince at Pampeluna, because he thought them the stronger. In all probability Charles was anxious, as far as possible, to keep on good terms with both parties, and all this seems quite true. As to the renewal of the treaty with Pedro, the Herald is more likely to be correct in placing it at Peyrehorade rather than Pampeluna, as it must have taken place before, not after, the passage of Roncevaux.

2242 sq. This long list of men who marched in each of the ‘battles’ appears to have been copied with a few slight variations by Froissart, who unfortunately from this time onward loses his value as an original authority; he remained at Bordeaux instead of accompanying the expedition, and there can be little doubt that this poem now becomes his chief source of information. He may, however, have had some first-hand knowledge as to the men taking part in the campaign.

2247. This is probably Sir Thomas d’Ufford, one of the Knights of the Garter. The Earl of Suffolk at this time was Robert d’Ufford.

2249. Hugh of Hastings, probably a son of his namesake who fought in 1346 and 1360.


2253. Probably John, Lord Neville of Raby, who joined the Black Prince in 1366–7. He was knighted in 1360, and is identified in the Dictionary of National Biography with the warrior mentioned by Chandos. Froissart calls him Sire de Neuville, a Breton captured at Auray, who had served Chandos after that event. This is curious; he cannot be the nephew of Audrehem mentioned elsewhere, who was fighting on the other side.

2261. Kervyn de Lettenhove calls him Gérard Chabot, Sire de Rais or Retz. Froissart adds that he also was a Breton, like Neuville.

2263. Guardia Raymond, Sire d’Aubeterre, was a famous member of the Great Company.

There was apparently a Robert d’Aubeterre also, probably a member of the same family, unless the name is merely Froissart’s mistake.

2265. Garsis or Garsiout du Castel, Sire du Bois.

2267. Called by Froissart Gaillart de la Motte, and mentioned several times in Spain.

There was a man of this name in 1347 called a natural son of Bertrand de la Motte.

2268. Aimery de Rochechouart, Sire de Mortemert.

2269. Robert Camyn: not mentioned by the other authorities in this connection.

1 Vargas y Miranda, Diccionario de Antigüedades del reino de Navarra. Pampeluna, 1840–43, iii. 89.
2 Rymer, iii. pt. ii, p. 117.
3 Brutails, 155.
4 Froissart, vii. 4.
5 Ayala, p. 435.
6 Froissart, vii, p. iii, note 1.
7 Beltz, 127.
8 Froissart, Kervyn de Lettenhove (Index), xxii.
9 Beltz, 95.
10 Dugdale, i. 328.
11 Beltz, 227.
12 Beltz, 166. He was certainly going abroad in 1366 (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 4).
14 Froissart, Kervyn de Lettenhove (Index), xxii. 15.
15 Froissart, vii, p. xxxi, note 3.
16 Froissart, vi, p. xcv, note 1.
17 Anselme, viii, 347.
19 Arch. Nat., JJ 76, fol. 145.
20 Sceaux de Clairambault, ii, nos. 7795, 6, 8.
MURIEL WADDINGTON

HISTORICAL NOTES

2270. John Creswell (mentioned earlier, see note to 1989).
Robert Briquet.1

2271. Sir Richard Taunton. Given in Froissart’s list.

2272. William de Felton, a relative of Sir Thomas. Froissart places him, together with
Sir Thomas, in the Prince’s detachment, instead of with Lancaster, as does Chandos.2

2273. Evidently identical with the Wm. le Botiller, or Boteller, member of the Grand
Company, summoned to do homage to Charles of Navarre (together with Briquet, Creswell,
Cosinton and d’Aubréchicourt) when passing through his territories April 1366.3 There was
a Wm. Boteler of Oversly, alive at this time;4 Dugdale makes no mention of his share in the
Spanish war, but it is just possible that these two are identical.

2274. Froissart calls him Penneriel; but there were plenty of Peverells in the French
Wars, mentioned in the French and Gascon Rolls.

2275. John Sandes: not found elsewhere.

2276. John Alein. He and Sandes may have been personal friends of the Herald, who
was in the same detachment (see Index).

2277. Hawley and Shakell captured the Count of Denia at the battle of Nájera.5

2278. Stephen de Cosinton is constantly mentioned in all records. He received letters of
protection at this time.6

2285. Guichard d’Angle had joined Edward after the Peace of Brétigny, and was made
Marshal to the Black Prince in Gascony.7

2294-5. There is a slight error here, for Feb. 14th that year fell on a Sunday, and it is
probably the 15th that is meant.8

2312-14. Froissart also says that the Prince and Don Pedro set out on Tuesday the 15th
(which should be 16th), the rear-guard on Wednesday. Buchon, in his notes, suggests the
20th instead of the 15th for the departure of the forces, but without stating his reasons.9 In
favour of the 20th it may be said that there is a document dated Bayonne, Feb. 20th, and
signed by Don Pedro;10 but, on the other hand, there is a letter addressed to the inhabitants of
Murcia which purports to have been written by Don Pedro from Pampeluna, Feb. 19th.11 As
the 20th that year was a Saturday and not a Monday, and as the document of that date
might possibly have been sent after the King for his signature, and as it was witnessed by only
five officials (Spanish) instead of by the numerous knights whose names appear upon the
Treaty of 23rd Sept. (e.g. the Duke of Lancaster, Chandos, Neville, &c.), it seems as though the
weight of evidence were in favour of the earlier date.

2321. Louis d’Harcourt, Vicomte de Châtellerault.12

2322. Sir Thomas Felton, Seneschal of Aquitaine.

2324. Guillaume l’Archevêque, Sire de Parthenay.13

2325. Jean, Hélie and Amanieu de Fomniers, brothers of the Seigneur Guillaume Sans,
placed by Froissart in the rear-guard, which seems more probable, since the majority of the
Gascons were there.14

2327. Olivier de Clisson, who had joined Lancaster in Brittany.

2328. Petiton de Curton (see pp. 189, 194).

2329. There was a Roger de la Warre, mentioned several times in the Gascon Rolls.15

1 Both did homage to Navarre, April, 1366.
2 Froissart, vii. 8.
3 Brutails, 151.
4 Dugdale, i. 595.
5 Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 133.
6 Gascon Rolls, 47 Ed. III, m. 3.
7 Beltz, 182.
8 Froissart, vii, p. v, note 2.
9 Froissart (Panthéon Littéraire), i. 525 note.
10 Cotton MSS. Vespasian C xii, fol. 95; Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 131.
11 Cascales, Discursos históricos, fol. 116 dorso.
12 Scœaux de Claudemarti, ii, No. 4493.
13 Anselme, i. 434.
14 Froissart, vii. 9.
15 Gascon Rolls, 30 Ed. III, m. 4; 40 Ed. III, m. 14; 42 Ed. III, m. 6.
2331. Robert Knollis. Called by Froissart 'Canolles', and placed not here, but in the
3rd Company.1
2333. Louis, Vicomte de Rochechouart, nephew of Aimery.8
2335. John Bourchier (see Index).
2337. The Seneschal of Aquitaine from 1363 was Thomas Felton; 8 already mentioned by
name above.
2339. William Felton (already mentioned in vanguard) was Seneschal of Poitou; there
was no separate seneschal for Angoumois.4
2340. The Seneschal of Saintonge was Baldwin de Fréville from Sept., 1364.8
2341. Seneschal of Périgord and Quercy. Thomas de Walkfere.6
2344. Seneschal of Bigorre. Jean de Roches.7
2351-2. The passage of the rearward began Wednesday, 17th Feb.
2353. The King of Majorca is mentioned by Ayala, Walter of Peterborough and others.
He was the son of James II, who had been driven out of his kingdom by Pedro of Aragon.
Thus he was only king de jure, not de facto: some books call him King of Naples, because
of his marriage with Jeanne I in 1362.8
2355. Jean, Comte d'Armagnac de Fézensac et de Rodez, Vicomte de Lomaigne et
d'Avillars. One of the most important of the Gascon nobles.
2356. This is probably Bérard d'Albret, Sire de Puch Normand, since Froissart here calls
him nephew of the Sire d'Albret.9 Arnaud Amanieu had also a brother Bérard d'Albret, Sire
de Sainte-Bazeille, who deserted the English in 1370.10
2367. Raymond de Montaut, Sire de Mussidan et de Blaye.11
2371. Bertucat or Perduacas d'Albret: probably an illegitimate son of Bernard Ezi, and
a member of the Great Company.12
2373. The bastard of Breteuil.13
2374-7. The rest of these names, Camus, Naudon de Bageran, Lami or Lamit, are men-
tioned earlier in Froissart when he enumerates the members of the Great Companies.14
Bernard de la Salle, whom Froissart now names, was not in the earlier lists.
2383. The arrival in the valley of Pampeluna was accomplished about 20th Feb.15
2388. Arnaud Amanieu, Sire d'Albret, nephew of Armagnac.
2389. Jean de Graillely, Capital de Buch, had been fighting for the King of Navarre, and being
captured at Cocherel did homage to the French King (1364); but on his return to Guienne he
re-entered the service of the Black Prince.16
2391. This mention of the 200 combatants, which each brought, indirectly supports the
story given by Froissart 17 to explain the origin of the quarrel between the Black Prince and
d'Albret: the former, thinking the latter dangerous, countermanded the 1,000 armed men which
he had promised to supply, and requested him to bring only 200. Luce thinks that the dispute
arose from a different cause; namely, the failure of the Prince of Wales to pay certain rents due

1 Froissart, vii. 9.
2 Anselme, iv. 653.
3 Taulin, in Revue de Gascogne, 1891.
4 Bibl. Nat. Fonds Lat. 18391, fol. 67 v. See 'Geste de Feltoune Seneschal de Poitou pour notre seigneur le
prince d'Aquitaine,' Nov. 1366.
5 Rymer, iii. pt. lii, p. 133.
8 Froissart, vi, p. xiv, note.
9 Froissart, vii. 9.
10 Arch. Nat., JJ 100, No. 670.
11 Anselme, vii. 603; vi. 222.
12 Froissart, vi. lxxxi, note 3.
13 Froissart, vii. 9.
14 Froissart, vi. 189.
17 Froissart, vi. 230.
to d’Albret, which the French King took upon himself to make good. The story of the knights need not, however, be without foundation.

2397. Perfectly correct, as we learn from Ayala.

2402-40. Ayala does not mention this letter to the Black Prince, which has been copied almost word for word by Froissart; but we have no reason to doubt the truth of this event, as the Herald would certainly have had information on the subject, and, for the council held to discuss the matter, we may consider his authority good (2441-4). Unfortunately the letter has neither place nor date. Froissart, in the abridged Chronicle which he published at a later date, has tried to remedy this omission, and adds to the letter ‘Burgos, 17th February’. This must, however, be a mistake, for Henry, as we have seen, was at St. Domingo, and on the 17th the English army was still on the march; the news could scarcely have been brought to him so early.

2450-64. Our poem appears again to be the principal authority for this expedition of Sir Thomas Felton, and Froissart has reproduced it with very slight additions. The fact that the same name figures in the second more disastrous adventure, when an English detachment was cut off by a party of Spaniards under Don Tello (lines 2725 sq.), has led to some apparent confusion between these two events by less well-informed chroniclers, and may perhaps explain the general omission of this previous undertaking. The Herald enters sufficiently into details to give his narrative every semblance of verity.

2461. Froissart calls him Thomas du Fort, but according to Beltz, as we have seen, there was a Thomas d’Ufford amongst the Knights of the Garter.

2462. William Felton. Very likely to be in his brother’s Company.

2463. Hugh, son of Ralph, afterwards second Earl of Stafford. Called Stanfort by Froissart.

Robert Knolles.

2466. Simon Burleigh.

2475. Luce has inserted a note to the similar account given by Froissart, that it is the Navarete in Alava to which reference is here made, because the army was en route to Burgos, through Vitoria, and that therefore it is a mistake to state that they crossed the Ebro at Logroño. If, however, Felton’s motive was to spy upon the Spanish army while still quartered at St. Domingo, it must have been the Navarete nearest to that place which is here intended, and that appears from the map to be the one in the Province of Logroño, and on the right bank of the Ebro, which would entail crossing the river in coming from Navarre. The main army advanced later through Alava to Vitoria, but that was because their search-party had sent word of Henry’s change of quarters; in this case the words of the Poem would be absolutely correct. It is rather uncertain, however, how long Henry remained at St. Domingo: his positions after leaving that place were, according to Ayala, Banares (right bank of Ebro), near Trevino (left bank), Zaldieran (heights of Alava): but he probably marched fairly rapidly from St. Domingo to Zaldieran.

2479. The whole question of this imprisonment of Charles of Navarre is very complicated. That he was captured by Olivier de Mauny is universally acknowledged; but the date of the event, the nature of the capture, and the length of the imprisonment are all matters of doubt. Ayala has no hesitation in asserting that it was all a matter of arrangement between Charles and De Mauny, in order that the former might save himself from the responsibility of taking a part in the war, and so embroiling himself with one side or the other. In recompense, he adds,
Olivier was promised money and the castle of Gavrai in Normandy; but, as soon as the necessity for his imprisonment was over, the King obtained his release by leaving his young son as hostage, and finally arrested Olivier de Mauny himself and repudiated his engagements.\(^1\) This is doubtless the account of an enemy, but it is not without support. The Grandes Chroniques speak of it as a pre-arranged scheme,\(^2\) and Froissart says that there was a general belief among the English that it was the King’s own device.\(^3\) A recent biographer and apologist of Charles the Bad has vehemently opposed this view,\(^4\) declaring that Ayala’s story is absurd on the face of it, that the promise of the cession of Gavrai was an impossible one, and that he could never have left as hostage a child of two or three years of age. He adopts, without hesitation, an account for which the Chronicle of the First Four Valois is the sole authority.\(^5\) According to this, Olivier de Mauny was sent by Bertrand du Guesclin to prevent Navarre from allowing the passage of the invaders, while the Black Prince was still engaged in his preparations at Bordeaux; it was at this time that Charles was taken prisoner, but released on giving hostages. Thus, he concludes, the capture took place before any agreement was made with Don Pedro, and therefore Ayala’s story is completely disproved. But this explanation is untenable. It neglects the obvious fact that Charles had made engagements with Pedro as early as Sept., 1366; it does not answer the question what possible advantage could have been gained by Henry if the prisoner were released in time to continue the alliance with his enemies; and it takes no notice of the fact that the other chroniclers agree with Ayala in placing these events at the later date.

There are also, I think, other indications that the Spanish historian was not so far wrong in his conjectures.

(1) Feb. 11, 1368. Payment due to Lopez Ochoa, Captain of Caparroso, for sums spent during the captivity of ‘Olivier Claquin’.\(^7\) Olivier de Mauny was a cousin of du Guesclin, and as it certainly cannot refer to Olivier du Guesclin, Bertrand’s brother, it probably alludes to the imprisonment of which Ayala speaks.

(2) During the course of 1369 and 1370 there are records of various sums of money paid to Olivier de Mauny.\(^8\)

(3) Feb. 4, 1369. Homage of Olivier de Mauny at Borja, to Charles of Navarre, for castles and lands in Normandy. At the same date he makes this declaration: ‘Whereas in times past the King of Navarre has had treaties with me, for which he gave me certain rents and towns, &c., I promise to restore these letters, the promises being no longer binding.’\(^9\)

The conclusion to be drawn from the evidence we possess at present appears to me to be this. That Navarre, anxious above all things to remain at peace, and to avoid the devastation of his country from the passage of hostile troops, found himself forced to make arrangements with Pedro and the Prince of Wales; that, with his usual duplicity, he did not hesitate to sign a treaty immediately afterwards with Henry of Trastamare, in the hopes of reaping some benefit from whichever side was successful. That finding his plan was discovered, and also possibly alarmed by Hugh of Calverley, he renewed his earlier alliance with the side which appeared to him to be the more formidable, and, to conciliate the troops, accompanied them into his own country, and entertained them when there. That anxious, however, to have an excuse for breaking his promise to assist the Black Prince, he made the arrangement with Olivier de Mauny which resulted in his own imprisonment before the fighting began. That after the battle of Navarrete, thinking the immediate danger over, he contrived his release, and then

---

1 Ayala, 436, 464. See also Cascales, Discursos históricos. Murcia, 1621, 4t0, fol. 116.
2 Grandes Chroniques, vi. 245.
5 Chronique des quatre premiers Valois, 171.
6 Chados, Froissart, Grandes Chroniques.
7 Brutails, Docs. des Archives de Navarre, 160.
8 Isarn, Comptes de Navarre; Bibl. Nat., Fonds Fr. 10367.
9 Brutails, 169.
captured Olivier in his turn, as a means of diverting attention from his own duplicity, and of convincing the world that his imprisonment had been involuntary. That he subsequently recompensed Mauny with various gifts, although his original promises were not kept, the reward then offered being probably considered too high. That Mauny, being induced to surrender his just claims in return for what he could get, gave up the proof of this previous engagement, which is therefore never likely to be forthcoming.

As for the exact date of the imprisonment, the Grandes Chroniques alone attempt to consider this question, 1 giving it as March 13, 1367. This should be approximately correct, according to what we learn from Chandos and Ayala. The troops were in Pampluna on Feb. 20th, and the battle of Nájera was fought on April 3rd, so that it took place some time between these two events, and it must have been early in March if the Prince did not leave Navarre until after hearing the news. Charles's release probably took place quite shortly after the battle: he was, in any case, back in his kingdom by June 20th, as we find him again signing an act on that date. 2 (No acts are published by Brutails between Sept. 27, 1366, and June 20, 1367.)

2582-90. Froissart also gives this incident; but he differs slightly from Chandos, in saying that the Queen came in person and afterwards sent La Carra to guide the Prince through the country. 3

The one certainty is that La Carra did accompany the army and fought in its ranks in the battle of Nájera.

2507-14. The Prince crossed the Pass of Arruiz, rode through Guipuzcoa, and came to Salvatierra in Alava.

Froissart has the same account, even to the spelling of the names; there seems no doubt as to his copying.

2521. The surrender of Salvatierra without resistance is confirmed by Ayala. 4

2542-70. The account of all this has been copied by Froissart. We can verify from Ayala the fact that Henry took up his quarters at Zaldieran only a slight distance from Vitoria, to which place the enemy advanced. 5

2605-28. Froissart has given the same list of those knighted, and in the same order, but with a few differences of spelling; 6 he has also added the names of those knighted by Chandos, which our author does not insert until just before the battle of Nájera (3109-3205).

2609. Thomas Holland, afterwards second Earl of Kent; he was only seventeen at this date, so that his knighting is most probable, it being his first expedition. 7

2611, 2612. Hugh, Philip and Peter Courtenay were all sons of the Earl of Devon. 8

2613. John Trivet. 9 Nicholas Bond had letters of protection. 10

2615. Ralph Camois. Possibly the same as Camies? 11

2617. Walter Ursewick. In a grant for services at Nájera his knighting on that day is mentioned. 12

2518. Possibly this may be a Thomas Daventrie who travelled to Aquitaine with Ursewick. 13 Froissart calls him Thomas de Daimeri, and Kervyn de Lettenhove suggests Damy de Bradley. 14

---

1 Grandes Chroniques, vi. 245.
2 Brutails, 158.
4 Ayala, 445.
5 Ayala, 445: 447.
6 Froissart, vii. 18, 19.
7 Beltz, 217.
8 Kervyn de Lettenhove (Index), xxii.
9 Gascon Rolls, 41 Ed. III, m. 15.
10 Gascon Rolls, 41 Ed. III, m. 3.
11 Ayala, 553.
12 Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 132.
13 Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 363; Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 4.
14 Kervyn de Lettenhove (Index), xxii.
2619. John de Grendon is mentioned together with Urswick in Lancaster’s retinue 1369.1 He does not, however, have ‘Chevalier’ after his name as Urswick does.

2652. Don Tello, Lord of Biscay, second brother of Henry of Trastamare.

2667. Don Sancho, Lord of Albuquerque, youngest brother of Henry.

2669. Marshal Audrehem, we have already seen, had joined Henry’s forces with B. du Guesclin: Froissart in his earlier version says he did not go,2 but in the Amiens MS. that he did;3 Ayala specially mentions him.

2673-6. Froissart says elsewhere that Bertrand had been sent first to Aragon, then to the Duke of Anjou at Montpellier, and finally to France to seek for help; though Luce questions the latter part of this statement.4

Certainly Ayala distinctly says that Henry’s position at Zaldieran had been adopted on the advice of du Guesclin:5 there is no reason why he should have accompanied this party of reconnoiters even if he were present at the time.

2727. Sir Thomas Felton and his company had already marched two leagues from the English army at Vitoria (2647–50). They were at Ariñez in Alava, a little village on the way from Vitoria to Burgos and Madrid.6

2729. Froissart calls him ‘Monsieur d’Agorisses’. F. Michel suggests De Grey; Luce thinks possibly Gregori Seys, Sieur de Gencey.7

Ralph de Hastings. Froissart calls him Hugh, who has already been mentioned; but there was a Ralph who accompanied Lancaster to Spain.8

2731. Froissart calls him Gaillard Vighier, really the same name. Found in Gascon Rolls in Richard II’s reign.9

2735–58. This important incident has been recorded in every chronicle, but with perplexing variations. All agree that a skirmish took place between a Spanish and English force, and the death of Felton has been commemorated by the name of the Englishman’s Mound, which is still pointed out near Ariñez (environs of Vitoria)10. The poem of Lancaster’s secretary speaks of the Bastard rushing down like a whirlwind into the camp, in which sudden attack Felton was killed and Hugh Hastings captured, after which Lancaster drove the enemy back into the mountains; and, although another party renewed the attack next day, it was repulsed with loss.11 (The general confusion in this account is proved by the fact that reference is made to the capture of Navarre, as though occurring on the same occasion, a note adding that he was taken by Lord Oliverum!) The prose Life of du Guesclin says that Bertrand and Denia fell upon William Felton, who had been sent out to forage, and that he fell in the skirmish; Cuvelier, with a very similar story, adds that he was killed by du Guesclin himself.12 Even Ayala is not very explicit as to the origin of the struggle. He says that an English company in Alava were seeking provisions when Henry sent against them Denia, Tello, Audrehem and others: this force defeated them at Ariñez in Alava, and William Felton, the English commander, was slain, the rest being taken.13 These varying accounts have evidently been caused by a confusion between three separate skirmishes which took place about this time: (1) Thomas Felton’s exploit before reaching Vitoria (2546–60); (2) the surprise attack made by Don Tello on the outskirts of the English camp (2688–2724); (3) the defeat of an English detachment again under Sir Thomas Felton, and the death of William in the fight

1 Gascon Rolls, 43 Ed. III, m. 15; Rymer, iii. 871.
2 Froissart, vii. 21.
3 Froissart, MS. d’Amiens, vii. 271.
4 Froissart, vi, p. xc, note 3; vi. 213.
5 Ayala, 444.
7 Froissart, viii, p. lx, note.
8 Gascon Rolls, 40 Edw. III, m. 4; Dugdale, i. 579.
9 Gascon Rolls, 5 Rich. II; Chandos, ed. F. Michel, 364.
10 Froissart, vii, p. ix, note 4.
11 Wright’s Political Songs, i. 110.
12 Cuvelier, 389, 393.
13 Ayala, 445.
(2725-58). The Herald gives by far the clearest and most comprehensible description of these events.

2780. Audrehem was presumably with Don Tello all the time; therefore this must mean not that a fresh force arrived, but that the enemy, whose superior numbers would enable them easily to divide, had sent a party of their men to create a diversion in the rear.

2781. Evidently Jean Neufville, nephew of Audrehem, who had accompanied his uncle into Spain, together with du Guesclin and the Companies.

2805. That is, the two brothers of Sir Thomas as well as himself. There was a John de Felton in the English army in 1367, who was probably one brother: 1 there was an elder brother named Hamo, who may very likely have been present. The latter was accompanying the Earl of Cambridge to France in 1369, so that he was evidently a warrior. 2

2807. Possibly Thomas de Mytton (see Index).

2811-19. Froissart explains the Prince's inactivity by saying that he knew nothing of the whole affair. Either solution is probable. He may have missed Felton's party without knowing the cause of their absence, and he would not have ventured to send out another force in search of them.

2841-60. Ayala is less detailed on all this part of the story and does not describe Bertrand's advice: but he does say that the Black Prince could not get to Castile because the Passes were held, so that he left Alava and returned to Logroño. 3

2861-2. Froissart speaks of the English army going and camping outside Vitoria, after the loss of Felton's detachment, and staying there in great distress for six days. 4

2885. It is a great pity that Chandos has not dated his Itinerary; it seems impossible to fit in the different accounts. A note to Ayala, quoting from Cascales' Discursos históricos, gives the date of this retreat as the 1st of April, 5 but this must be too late. The Black Prince is apparently writing a letter from Navarete on April 1st. 6

The Latin poem speaks of the skirmish between English and Spaniards as taking place on the 30th day in spring-time, the Feast of the Annunciation. 7 There is an inconsistency here, for the Annunciation of the Virgin falls on the 25th March, which would be a more probable date; and this would fit in with Froissart's six days before Vitoria, and Cascales' date for the march on April 1st. But it would not allow time for the two days spent on the way at Viana according to Froissart, nor for the letter which he dates from Logroño, 30th March, nor for the day of the week named by Chandos. Chronology was, however, never a strong point amongst the chroniclers, and particularly not so in the case of the Herald.

2889. Pass of La Guardia, on left bank of Ebro.

2905-5. Ayala says that Henry's army moved from Zaldieran towards Nájera, and placed its camp near the town, on the river Najerilla. 8 He does not mention St. Vincent, but its position would render it a likely halting-place en route.

2907-50. Chandos does not date the Prince's letter, but puts it immediately after his arrival at Logroño, and makes his advance to Navarete occur on the Friday (which was the 2nd April, the day before the battle: but in the Poem it appears to be the day after the letter was written).

Froissart has practically reproduced the same letter, allowing for the differences between prose and verse, and dates it from Logroño, March 30th.

Ayala, on the other hand, says that Pedro and the Prince came to Navarete and

1 Gascon Rolls, 41 Ed. III, m. 3.
2 Bury and West Suffolk Arch. Institute, 1874, Playford and the Feltons. Gascon Rolls, Edw. III, m. 7.
3 Ayala, 447.
4 Froissart, vii. 28.
5 Ayala, 447.
6 Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 131.
7 Wright's Political Songs, i. 111.
8 Ayala, 448.
tence sent a letter to Henry. As this agrees with the document in Rymer dated Navarete, April 1st, his information appears to be the more correct; and he gives a copy of Henry's reply written at Nájera on April 2nd, which is omitted in the poem. As for the substance of the first letter, the essential part—the offer of mediation—is the same in all, but Chandos has not given by any means an exact summary of the actual document, whereas Ayala has reproduced it, which is another reason for attaching particular value to his testimony. Cascales has published a letter from Don Pedro dated from Logroño on April 1st: but, as this is only about six miles from Navarete, that does not render this date any more unlikely. The Poem of Walter of Peterborough becomes more detailed towards this point, and expatiates on the hardships endured on the march, but is not very explicit. The author tells us, however, in a note, that it was on April 1st that the Prince crossed the river and encamped in the fields of Navarete: another first-hand witness to this date. (The Duke's secretary does not seem well informed as to events going on around him, or else he is fond of drawing on his own imagination, as, although he alludes to the second letter from Prince Henry, he gives it as containing a request for two knights from each side to choose the place of battle; a proposal absolutely foreign to the contents of the document, which was a recapitulation of the charges against Don Pedro, and a defence of his own claims by national right of election.)

On the whole it seems possible to accept the following Itinerary:—Monday, 29th March, departure from the camp before Vitoria; that and the following nights spent at Viana; 31st, at Logroño; 1st April, departure to Navarete, and the letter sent from the Black Prince to the enemy's camp; 2nd April, Friday, reply of Prince Henry and preparations for battle.

2984-3004. The numbers of the Spanish army arc given differently by every writer, ranging from 40,000 (Cuvelier) to 99,000 (Henry's speech according to Froissart). The numbers which Chandos puts into the mouth of Henry, added together, come to 66,000, so that he may be considered to have struck a very fair average, allowing for a little of the usual exaggeration on the part of an enemy: Ayala does not give a full estimate, but only reckons 4,500 lances.

3060-2. The Herald omits to mention a fact upon which Ayala lays stress, and which might have detracted somewhat from the glory of the victory; namely that Henry had left the favourable position in which he was at first encamped, and had crossed the river on to the plain facing Navarete, so that no one might accuses him of taking any unfair advantage. This is doubtless what is meant by the chroniclers of du Guesclin, who lament that the battle was lost because Henry would not take the advice of the great captain. Certainly nothing could be more opposed to the military experience of Bertrand than this chivalrous but mistaken action.

3063-77. Ayala also places Bertrand, Audrehem, Sancho and the Bègue de Villaines in the vanguard; Jean Neufville would naturally accompany his uncle: but the Comte de Denia, according to the Spanish historian, commanded the cavalry on the right wing. This I cannot in any way decide from the details of the battle, as there seems to have been considerable confusion between the different divisions.

3067. Alfonso, Comte de Denia and Marquis of Villena, was son of the Infant Pedro of Aragon.

3069. Pierre de Villaines dit le Bègue had gone out with the Companies.

3078, 3079. Ayala agrees as to Don Tello being on the left wing, and then adds that the right was under Denia.
3078-99. Ayala also describes this force as composed of cavalry and infantry, without mentioning any names. The idea we gather from Ayala of the arrangement of the army, with a vanguard on foot, wings of horsemen and a large mixed force in the rear, is more practical than the description of Chandos, which seems to imply a very large force of cavalry on the left of the vanguard, while the main portion of the army was on the right, mostly consisting of infantry, but with a smaller body of horse on one side. The discrepancy probably arises from the fact that, while Ayala gives the actual disposition of the troops before the battle, Chandos is making a rough plan gathered from the subsequent course of the contest.

3102. Gomez Carillo de Quintano, Chamberlain of Henry.
3103. Gomez Perez de Porres was prior of the Order of San Juan in 1367.1
3107. There was an Order of Santiago or Saint-Jacques both in Castile and Galicia. Of the former apparently Gomez Perez just mentioned was Master.2 Here the reference is more probably to the latter, of which the Grand Master was Gonzalo Mejia at this time. He had succeeded Garcia Alvarez de Toledo, who had deserted Pedro for Henry, but resigned his office before 1367.3
3109. Pero Moñiz de Godoy, of whom Froissart speaks in the battle.4 He had succeeded Diego Garcia de Padilla, who had been Grand Master of the Order of Calatrava under Pedro.5
3121-44. Chandos had been made a banneret in 1360, when he received the estate of Saint-Sauveur-le-Vicomte, but was now displaying his banner for the first time in battle. That this was no new honour conferred upon him is borne out by the fact that he is said to have brought his banner to the Prince, who merely unfurled it; not, as a later historian has said, cut off its tail,6 which would have signified the conversion of a pennon into a banner. Chandos could not have brought his banner to the Prince if he were still only a simple knight.
3161-71. Walter of Peterborough puts similar words into the Prince’s mouth, as to the lack of food and the necessity of taking it from the enemy’s camp, but earlier in the narrative, before the arrival at Navarre.7
3172-95. For all these events—the Prince’s prayer and words to Pedro, &c.—the Herald appears to be the original authority.
3200-5. Froissart also states that these warriors were knighted by Chandos, but he mentions the ceremony as taking place earlier, when the Prince and the Duke of Lancaster were making new knights before Vitoria.8
3201. In Froissart we find Courson in one version; Courton in another.
Prior, Thomas (see Index).
Eliton, called by Froissart Cliton.
3202. William de Ferinton in Froissart.
3224. John of Ypres was a Fleming in the service of Edward, present at Nájera, and evidently an important personage.9
3225 sq. The Herald treats the history of the battle with great vigour and detail; he is better informed than Cuvelier, clearer than the Latin Poem, fuller than Ayala and is the source of Froissart’s description; his account is evidently of first-rate importance. The positions occupied by the different combatants are impossible to verify for certain; every one has distributed them somewhat differently, even Froissart not actually reproducing the same divisions, though the names mentioned can all be found in one or other of the narratives of the battle. The principal events and nature of the combat can, however, be traced out with sufficient precision in the

1 Catalina Garcia, Castilla y Leon. Madrid, 1892, 354.
Ibid.
Mérimée, 424; Froissart, vi, p. lxxxvi, note 3
Catalina Garcia, 340, 426.
8 Froissart, vi, p. lxxxvi, note 2.
6 Barnes, 707.
7 Wright’s Political Songs, i, 111.
8 Froissart, vii, 19.
9 Kervyn de Lettenhove (Index), xxiii, 306.
Poem; and from what we are able to verify of this description the accuracy of the rest can be inferred: an accuracy, that is, as great as can be expected from the account of one who was himself in the thick of the conflict.

3310. Martin de La Carra, as Navarre's representative, bore his banner.¹

3321. Ayala says that Tello's flight was caused by the advance of Armagnac and Albret with the Gascons; and that this force, on the departure of their adversaries, turned their arms against the vanguard of infantry which was already engaged.²

3329. There were two Percies living at this time: Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, who fought in France in 1370, and his younger brother Thomas Percy, Earl of Worcester, who was in the Black Prince's Council at Bordeaux in 1369. The latter, therefore, seems the more probable of the two.³

3329. Olivier de Clisson before mentioned.

3330. This must be a mistake, since he had just been made prisoner at Ariñez. He was exchanged finally, but not, I think, until after the battle.

3331. Walter Hewet is mentioned by Cuvelier.⁴

3335. Ayala says that the English left wing also attacked the Spanish infantry, so that they were surrounded by enemies.⁵

3348. Guy de Sévérac, one of the principal Seigneurs of Rouergue.⁶

3370. In Ayala also we find that Henry led his cavalry three times to the attack, but was at last forced to fly. Cuvelier likewise testifies to the courage of the Bastard, whom he describes as being led by force from the field by du Guesclin.⁷

3401. The biographers of du Guesclin describe him as surrendering to the Black Prince himself.⁸ This may only be added for the purpose of extolling his prowess; it is mentioned neither by Ayala nor by the Herald, who would probably have gladly recounted an event of such interest had it really occurred.

In studying this battle Ayala furnishes by far the most valuable commentary on Chandos. Walter of Peterborough's Poem,⁹ although the work of an eyewitness, is confused, and differs so much from Ayala and Chandos that any comparison seems hopeless. We read there that Lancaster led the way, followed by the King of Majorca and Armagnac; as to numbers, that not quite 2,000 destroyed fully 40,000; that the Duke tried to get at the brothers, who avoided the conflict; and some lines later, that Henry and Tello fled (as though together). The principal aim of the poet is to sing the praises of the Duke of Lancaster, and he seems to have sacrificed any accurate account of proceedings to this object. Cuvelier seems to have little genuine knowledge; according to his account the Captal began the battle by attacking Henry, who was rescued by du Guesclin; while the prose Life says that the Count of Denia put Lancaster to flight, but that the Captal de Buch, coming up, restored the battle and slew Denia.

3401-10. Ayala mentions all these prisoners, except Jean Neufville, whose name I have only found in this connexion in Froissart, which is not much testimony; Ayala, however, is not at pains to make a long list of the French who were captured, but gives more Spanish names; he was himself amongst the number.

3412. Adam de Villiers dit le Bégue, Seigneur de Villiers-le-Bel. Froissart mentions him as slain, and also adds a few more names.¹⁰

3421. Called by Froissart Raoul, which seems to connect him with the Ralph Ferrers

¹ Mérimée, 467.
² Ayala, 455.
³ Beltz, 154, 221.
⁴ Cuvelier, 400.
⁵ Ayala, 455.
⁶ Froissart, ed. Kervyn de Lettenhove, vii. 203;
⁷ Cuvelier, 419.
⁸ Cuvelier, 424: Chronique anonyme, 49.
⁹ Wright's Political Songs, 113-21.
¹⁰ Froissart, vii. 43.
who was Captain of Calais in 1360. There was certainly a Ralph Ferrers still alive after Nájera, who was Admiral of the fleet in 1370, but he may have been a son. This Christian name, however, which is only found in some editions of Froissart, may possibly be a mistake, in which case this Ferrers could be identified with the John Ferrers of Charteleye, who was certainly with the army in 1366, and is not mentioned later.

3425–33. The battle was fought between Nájera and Navarete, and is therefore called sometimes by one, sometimes by the other name. The Herald spells it as Naddres, Nazarz, or, as here, Nazareth; the differences being probably due to the French and Spanish pronunciations combined with the exigencies of verse. In Froissart it is always Nazres or Nazares.

3434. The river was the Nájerilla. The great losses of the Spaniards, especially on the bridge and in the river, are mentioned in various accounts. The numbers who thus perished must have rendered any calculations practically impossible. The Herald is doubtless repeating rough guesses when he speaks of 7,700 reported to have perished.

3453. i.e. the town of Nájera
3457. Gomez Perez, Prior of San Juan and Master of the Order of Santiago in Castile.
Cascales, in enumerating some of the warriors from different parts, speaks of the Prior of San Juan amongst those who came from Castile.
3459. Master of the Order of Santiago in Galicia, probably Gonzalo Mexia. Garcia Alvarez de Toledo had filled the place under Pedro and still disputed the title with Gonzalo Mexia.
In one edition Froissart gives only two names in this connexion: ‘li grans prieus de St. Jame et li grans mestres de Caltraue’. In the Amiens MS., however, he seems to have copied Chandos almost exactly and gives the three.

In Walter of Peterborough, where all the names are very curiously spelt, we find: ‘Baro Calenrag sive custos militiae Christi’; and ‘Magni praetati Jacobique Iohannis amati’.
3475. This date is exact. All the authorities agree on this point, and it is also mentioned in a letter written by Pedro himself from Burgos on the 15th of the same month.
3520–33. Ayala says that Pedro promised to spare the prisoners who submitted, and we learn the Prince’s part in this by the fact that a quarrel arose later between them at Burgos, because the King had broken his word to Edward.
3540. We learn from Ayala that not only Gomez Carillo de Quintana was killed on the Sunday, but also Sancho Sanchez de Moscoso and Garcia Jufre Tenorio. Besides these three, Pedro himself had slain Inigo Lopez de Orozco immediately after the battle.

Gomez Carillo, however, appears to have been a specially marked enemy of Pedro. He was excepted from the amnesty arranged with Aragon in 1361, and was evidently in high favour with Henry, being his Chamberlain. He came also of a family of rebels: his uncle had been an adherent of Don Juan Nuñez, claimant to the throne in 1350; and his cousin, accused of treating with Trastamare, had been murdered by command of the King.

3565. Donna Juana, wife of Henry of Trastamare. Her flight from Burgos to Saragossa is also described by Ayala. The King of Aragon apparently received her very badly.
3597. Briviesca. Froissart adds that the halt was from Monday to Wednesday.
3598–9. Pedro set out for Burgos on Monday, 5th April, parting from the Prince at Briviesca; the King was evidently hurrying on with a small force, while Edward travelled with his army.
3631. Chandos is extraordinarily inconsistent as to the Prince's stay at Burgos. Before this he says he sojourned at Burgos a month (3607), and later he talks of his moving to Valladolid, and waiting there six months for Pedro's return (3645). Froissart, who has no longer slavishly followed the Poem, is nearer the truth in his chronology. He gives a similar description of the numbers who flocked to Burgos to make their submission to Pedro, and then says that after three weeks the Prince demanded money from the King.

3632-8. Ayala gives the details of the discussions on the point of money payments, which ended in a renewal of the old promises, in a treaty dated Burgos, May 2, 1367.

3641. Froissart agrees that the Prince went to Valladolid, but Ayala gives his quarters at Amusco, a town midway between Burgos and Valladolid. Probably he was not definitely fixed at one place or the other; Chandos says he was in the town and its neighbourhood, and his troops must have been more or less scattered over the country, owing to the difficulty of procuring provisions.

3645. This is certainly wrong, since only about five months passed between the battle of Nájera and the Prince's return to France. Froissart says he stayed till the feast of St. John in the summer (24th June), so that possibly six weeks should be read instead of six months.

3664. This is possibly Amusco, since Ayala speaks of the Prince's residence there. F. Michel has translated it Almazan, but a note states that this is purely conjectural, whereas the other explanation has some support.

3665. Medina del Campo.

3677-92. For this letter of Pedro we find no details in Ayala. Froissart gives some which differ slightly from those of the Herald. According to him, the Prince, becoming impatient after St. John the Baptist in the summer, despatched three knights to Pedro, who sent back an answer similar in substance to that given by Chandos, though couched in rather more respectful terms, and holding out hopes of a full payment in a year. The English Council, summoned to consider the matter, strongly advised return on account of the climate. All agree as to the fatal effects of the Spanish summer on the army and on the Prince himself: Walsingham is only expressing a very general belief at the time when he speaks of Edward as having been poisoned in Spain.

3708. Henry, after Nájera, had established himself in the Castle of Roquemaine, not far from Toulouse, whence he made incursions into Aquitaine. Finally he invaded Bigorre and seized Bagnères.

3714. This is the first mention made of Madrigal, but it is only slightly to the south of Valladolid, and close to Medina del Campo, one of the towns to which the army had resorted in search of provisions.

3716-17. The month's delay in Soria must have been to give time for the mission of Chandos to Aragon and Navarre to negotiate for passage of the troops.

3718-19. Ayala in his account substitutes the name of Calverley for that of Chandos as negotiator. Froissart, who in his first edition speaks of 'les plus especiaux de son conseil' being sent, adopts the Herald's version in the Amiens edition: 'Endementroes eut grans consaix entre monsieur Jehan Camdos et le conseil dou roy d'Aragon.' He adds that

---

1 Ayala, 473.
2 Ayala, 479-83.
3 Kymcr, iii, pt. ii, p. 133.
4 Ayala, 495.
5 Froissart, vii. 57, 58.
6 Walsingham, Ypodigma Neustria, 313.
7 Froissart, vii, p. xxii, note 1.
8 Ayala, 465.
9 Froissart, vii. 60.
10 Ibid. 300.
the King promised to allow the passage on condition that everything was paid for and no violence done.  

3726-7. The King of Navarre, says Froissart, offered passage for the Prince, the Duke of Lancaster and several knights; but hoped that the Companies would not pass through Navarre.  

3737. Froissart says that he was accompanied by the King and La Carra as far as Roncevaux.  

3753. According to the Grandes Chroniques, which, as we have seen, are as a rule exceedingly precise in the matter of dates, the Prince's return took place in August, 1367; and Luce speaks of his arrival at Bordeaux early in September. This would allow the month of July to have been spent in the valley of Soria, while arrangements were made, if the long period of waiting at Valladolid is renounced as impossible. The Companies were certainly arriving at Montpellier on the 15th and 16th of September.  

3783-8. Here comes to an end the most valuable part of the Poem, and that which the author himself evidently regards with the greatest complacency. The conclusion loses its personal interest; for although the Herald was still in France, and taking an active share in events, a share which continued even after the death of his master (he was sent by Cambridge and Pembroke with a message to the Duke of Bourbon in 1370), he spends no time over the recital of all that he must himself have witnessed, but merely gives a brief summary of the close of the Prince's career in France. But though little but a summary, it appears to have been conscientiously written, and can be verified by comparison with Froissart and the Grandes Chroniques.

3845. The Comte d'Armagnac was the real leader of the deserters: he had refused to pay fouage as early as 1367. Jean, Comte de Lisle en Jourdain, Captain of Moissac does not appear to have been amongst the number of those appealing to Charles, but he is mentioned as taking part against the English in the subsequent struggle.  

Roger Bernard, Comte de Périgord was a sharer in the treaty made with Charles V in 1368 (see note on 3855-64); his son Talleyrand deserted the English about the same time; Archambaud, his successor in 1369, during that year or the next.  

3846. Arnaud Amanieu, Sire d'Albret, married Marguerite, sister of the French Queen, on May 4, 1368.  

Pierre Raymond, Comte de Comminges, is mentioned by Froissart and the Grandes Chroniques as another deserter.  

3855-64. June 30, 1368. Charles made a treaty with Armagnac, Périgord and Sire d'Albret, by which he agreed to receive the appeal of the Gascons; mutual aid was promised in case of war and fouage was never to be imposed on them against their will.  

Nov. 19, 1368. Charles granted money to Albret, who had appealed to him, and promised aid in case of war against England. In March, 1369, certain towns and castles were given to the Comte de Périgord, who had appealed against the English.  

There were also appeals from various towns, e.g. Montaubon, Sauveterre, Villefranche, &c.  

3865-76. Dec. 25, 1368. Charles summoned a Council to discuss his action in regard to these appeals.  

The summons of Edward to appear before the Parliament of Paris, to which allusions are
made in various letters of the French King to the appellants, was conveyed to him by
Bernard Palot and Jean de Caponval, and dated from Paris, according to Froissart, 15th January,
1369. This date seems rather late: Luce thinks it must have been delivered at the end of 1368,
or in the first week of 1369. As King Edward was preparing to send out to the Prince on
Jan. 16, 1369, war must certainly have been declared by that date.
3881. This answer is given in practically the same terms by Froissart.
3898. War began Jan., 1369. The Duke of Anjou had prepared an army which included
its ranks the Counts of Armagnac, Périgord, Comminges and Vendôme.
3925. They must have arrived by April, 1369, and were sent into Périgord in the
following May.
3927-30. Froissart recounts the siege of Bourdeilles, but does not mention the knighting of
Pembroke (vii. 150-3).
3932. La Roche-sur-Yon was invested by the English in July, 1369, and was given up by
a traitor, Jean Belon, its captain. This town had never been handed over to England after the
treaty of Brétigny, as it should have been by right.
3933. Chandos was in Montauban at the end of January, 1369, where he was guarding the
frontier with the Captal de Buch and others; but Froissart narrates various other undertakings
in which he was engaged and names him at the siege of La Roche-sur-Yon. He must in any
case have left Montauban before the 15th June, at which time the town submitted to the Duke
of Anjou.
3943-5. According to James and Francisque Michel, both Chandos and Froissart are
mistaken in placing here the death of the celebrated Sir James Audeley, who, in their opinion,
returned to England at this date, and did not die till 1386. It would be curious, however,
for the Herald to be mistaken in an event touching his master so nearly, and about so well
known a person. May not the Audeley who died in 1386 have been a son of the warrior and
not Sir James himself? Froissart says his death took place at Fontenay-le-Comte, which is at
a very short distance from La Roche-sur-Yon.
3950-1. Chandos was mortally wounded in the skirmish at Lussac, January 1, 1370, and died
one or two days after at Mortemer, where he was buried, and where his tomb is still to be seen.
3975. Bertrand du Guesclin had been ransomed after the Battle of Navarete and released
on 27th December, 1367; he had rejoined Henry of Trastamare before Toledo, which he was
besieging in the following year. After his recall, he arrived at Toulouse about the middle of
July, 1370, where he met the Duke of Anjou.
4009-10. Anjou and du Guesclin had in their company a large number of the discontented
Gascons; they marched towards Agen, taking Moissac, Agen, Port Sainte-Marie, Aiguillon,
Tonneins, Montpazier, and laying siege to Bergerac.
4011. The Duc de Berry had been made Lieutenant-General on the 5th Feb. 1368. On
the 6th April, 1372, he received a large sum of money from Charles for his services and conquests
in Guienne.
Louis de Bourbon, Comte de Clermont. Named also by Froissart as accompanying Berry.

4014. Berry and his army arrived before Limoges on the 21st August.

4025-7. According to the Grandes Chroniques, Lancaster arrived in Calais towards the end of 1369; but he did not come south till this time (Aug., 1370), when he joined the Prince's army at Cognac.

4037-8. This was the work of the Bishop, Jean de Cros, who 'turned French', as Froissart expresses it; and the town was occupied by the Duc de Berry in the name of King Charles, 22nd August.

4040-1. Possibly the Herald thought it better for his hero's reputation to leave this incident without comment: even Froissart spares pity for the townspeople on this occasion. 'Il n'est si dur cœur... qui n'en plorât tendrement du grand meschf qui y étoit; car plus de trois mille personnes, hommes & femmes, et enfans, y furent délivrés et déçolés celle journée. Dieu en ait les âmes, car ils furent bien martyrs.' The siege was from the 14th to 19th Sept., 1370.

4043. Roger de Beaufort was a son of Guillaume Roger, Comte de Beaufort and Vicomte de la Motte.

4045. Jean de Vilmur, son of the Vicomte de Vilmur.

To these two Froissart adds Hugues de la Roche, who had married a sister of Roger de Beaufort.

4061-2. Prince Edward, according to a note by Buchon, died in January, 1371, aged 6.

The Prince was probably in Angoulême before this, since the massacre of Limoges took place in September, and he was too ill to remain long in the field.

4069. The Prince must have left for England before Jan. 15, 1371, since the Duke of Lancaster is mentioned in an act of that date as governing for him.

4074. Sept. 8, 1372, La Rochelle surrendered to the Dukes of Berry and Burgundy.

4075. Pembroke was taken in a sea-fight with the Spaniards outside La Rochelle, June 23, 1372, before the town fell into the hands of the French.

4077-92. In August Edward began to prepare a force to go to the help of La Rochelle, in which the Prince insisted on taking part despite his illness, and his son Richard was declared Guardian of the Kingdom during their absence. They must have been about eight weeks at sea altogether, since they embarked at Sandwich 30th August, and on the 31st August the King signed a document there arranging for the custody of the kingdom during his absence, while he was back in Westminster by the 28th October; for there is a document of that date 'teste rege apud Westmonasterium', whereas on Sept. 14th we find at the close of an Act 'teste Ricardo filio...'

4165-85. The account given by Chandos of the Prince's death agrees closely with that given by a monk of St. Albans in a chronicle which is very valuable for the history of home affairs.

The date is correct: Trinity Sunday, June 8, 1376.

4189-252. Franciscoe Michel suggests that this list of principal officers, which follows as a sort of appendix, may have been added by another hand. There are several arguments in favour of this view:

---

1 Chazaud, Chronique de Loys de Bourbon (Soc. de l'Hist. de France).
2 Froissart, vii, p. cii, note 1.
4 Dict. of National Biography; Froissart, vii, 240.
5 Froissart, vii, 242.
6 Froissart, vii, 250.
7 Froissart, vii, p. cxiii, note 4.
10 Froissart, Panthéon Littéraire, 625, note.
11 Froissart, viii, p. 4, note 1.
12 Delisle, Mandements de Charles V, No. 918.
14 Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 206; Froissart, viii, p. lii, notes i, 3, 7.
15 Chronicon Angliæ antæque monachorum Sancti Albani, ed. Maunde Thompson, 1874 (Rolls Series), 85.
(1) Chandos has wound up his poem in the previous canto: 'Et ci fyn je lui ditz du tres noble Prince,' &c.
(2) The list is a mere pretence of verse, without the life and spirit which characterize the rest of the poem, and even its lists of names.
(3) There are a few slight variations of spelling—as for example, Estephen, instead of Stephen, which is generally found; Poytoo instead of Poitou; Anguymis for Angoumois; Cressy, whereas elsewhere it is called Cressin and Cressyn; Perègore instead of Perigos; Gwichard for Guychard. This is, however, very little proof, since Chandos is rarely consistent in his spelling of names, and there are no radical differences.
(4) The list is certainly incomplete and not always correct, whereas Chandos is particularly accurate in all such questions.
(5) It is not given on the author's own authority: twice it refers to a list—'Après sa mort comme dit lestille' (4228).

4197. Sir John Chandos, Constable of Aquitaine, 1361—1370.  
4196. Captal de Buch, Constable of Aquitaine, 1371—1373.  
4197. Guichard d'Angle, Marshal to Black Prince in Aquitaine.  
4200. Stephen de Cosinton.  

4201. Sir Thomas Felton was Seneschal of Aquitaine from February 8, 1363, onwards: before that there had been Chandos 12 Nov., 1361, Chiverston 8 June, 1362.  
4203. Sir William Felton, Seneschal of Poitou.  
4226. Sir Baldwin de Fréville was Seneschal of Poitou, 1367.  
4209. Thomas Percy was certainly Seneschal of Poitou in March, 1369 and in 1371, although Chandos is mentioned in a document as holding that office in Nov., 1369.  

Possibly Sir John took Percy's place when he went to La Rochelle, and the latter resumed his office after the death of Chandos at Lussac.

4212. Sir John Harpeden was Seneschal of Saintonge in 1369, and still held the place in 1371.  
4213. Sir Henry de la Hey is called by Froissart Seneschal of Angoulême in 1372.  
Angoumois was, I think, generally united to some other place.

4215. Thomas de Roos is mentioned by Froissart as fighting in 1367, but with no title.  
In 1369 he speaks of John Devereux as Seneschal to the Prince of Wales in the Limousin.  
4218. Sir Richard Abberbury is mentioned in the Gascon Rolls as receiving letters of protection in 1369, but no title is added.  
4219. Sir Thomas Wetenhale became Seneschal of Rouergue in 1365, in place of Amanieu Fossard, who had been appointed in 1361.  
4223. Sir Thomas de Walkfere was Seneschal of Quercy and Périgord in 1366.  
Gaujal, in his book on Rouergue, says that he succeeded Fossard in 1364; but that is probably a mistake.  
4227. Sir Richard Baskerville.  
4229. William le Moigne is called Seneschal of Agenais by Froissart in 1369.  

1 Dictionary of National Biography.  
2 Beltz, Duchy of Lancaster Records.  
3 Beltz, 182.  
4 See Index.  
5 Taezin, in Revue de Gascogne, 1891.  
6 Guérin, Archives du Poitou, xvii. 46; Bibl. Nat.  
Lat. 18391 speaks of him in 1366.  
7 Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 133.  
8 Froissart, vii, p. lxxiv, note r; p. lxxv, note r.  
9 Fillon, Vie de Chandos, 30, 31; Froissart, vii, p. lxxiv, note r.  
10 Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 115.  
11 Froissart, viii, p. xxxviii.  
12 Froissart, vii, 156.  
13 Gascon Rolls, 42 Edw. III, m. 3.  
14 Le Rouergue sous les Anglais, 92.  
16 Gaujal, Études historiques sur le Rouergue, Paris, 1858, i, 513.  
17 Froissart, vii, 98.
4234. Sir Richard Walkfare had letters of protection in 1356 and 1365.\(^1\)
4236. Sir John Roches was Seneschal of Bigorre in 1366.\(^3\)

4237. There certainly was a Seneschal of the Landes, since he is mentioned in Acts of the Black Prince.\(^8\) I have not found the name of the Sire de Pyan. In 1371 the office was filled by Mathew de Gournay,\(^4\) in 1375 by William d’Elmham.\(^5\)

---

\(^1\) Rymer (1836 edition), iii, pt. ii, 40, 763.
\(^2\) Arch. Nat., J 642, No. 2.
\(^4\) Delpeit, Coll. des documents, i. 180.
\(^5\) Gascon Rolls, 49 Edw. III, m. 8.
GLOSSARY

Square brackets indicate that the enclosed word or form has been supplied by the editor, round brackets that the enclosed word or form has not been adopted in the critical text.

The persons of the verb are denoted by the figures 1, 2, 3; 4, 5, 6, the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons of the plural being denoted by 4, 5, 6.

Abateis, abatis 3356, overthrowing.
Abuvrer 765, to water.
Accroire : indic. perf. 3 accreut, accreust 1256; to become greater, more serious.
Acoellir : past part. fem. acoellie, acollie 1709, (guille) 3730. — sa voie 1709, 3730, to start on one's way.
Acompte, see Aconte.
Aconte, aissue, acompte 344, 876, 1205 &c., account; estre granz — 288, estre uns granz — 1481, to be of great account, very numerous; faire — de 96, [192], to take account of; faire grant — de 556, faire un grant — de 338, to esteem highly; tenir — de 16, to take account of.
Aconter, acomter, act. 427, to relate, tell; neuter with prep. a [1341], to have regard for.
Acoind, acorder, act. 2937, to reconcile, 1866, 2229, to agree, decide, 846 &c., to grant; refl. 1800, 2222, 2665, 2932 &c., to agree.
Acoind, acoind, acorde, accorde, accord 1701, 1810, 2410 &c., agreement; d' — 1862, willing; estre d' — 550, 1955, 3851, 4003 &c., to agree; mettre a — 818, to reconcile.
Aco变更 : past part. acover 371; to cover.
Acoquire : indic. perf. 3 acquist 384, 1308, 3236; to gain, win.
Ades 266, always.
Adevancier : indic. perf. 3 adeuanee 760; to outstrip.
Adonc, adonques, adont, adonges, adongs 447, 724, 905, 1070, 1295 &c., then.
Adrecier, adresser; refl. with preposition a 44, 80, 1650, to turn to, set oneself to.
Afaitie, afaitie 328, prepared, ready.
Affaire 1927, 2969, see Faire.
Affaire, affere 1328, 1540, 1838, 2078 &c., rank, position, state, disposition, 2970 opinion.
Affier : neuter 710, 1080, 1528, &c., to assure; refl. 1895, to trust.
Agu 566, eager, impetuous; cf. agu in A. Scheler Geste de Liége, Glossaire Philologique.
Ahan, ahan, aham, ahen 1136, 1314, 3458 &c., labour, tribulation; faire — 726, to lament, cf. Cotgrave.
Aide, eyde 275, help.

Aidier, aider, aider 1350, 1977 &c.; imperative 5 aidez, aident 3371; subj. pres. 3 aidez 2567, 3212, eide 2714, aid, ait 3187, aiuwe [3448], 4153; to help.
Aincois, aincois 3053, but.
Ajourd'hui, ad journer 3044, to dawn, become day.
Alegier : pres. subj. 3 aliege, alegge 2349; to alleviate, diminish.
Alentir, alentir, alenter, alentier, allenter 1647, 2012, 2520, 2790, to slacken, flag, delay.
Aler 365, 776, 1676 &c., alier 2042; indic. pres. 1 voir, vois 2375, 3 va 2488, 3196, 3231 &c., 4 alons 1138, 6 vont [313], vont 1223; perf. 5 aia 358, 1499, 1973 &c., 6 alarent 2639, alarent 3562; cond. 3 iroit, irroit 554, 2666, 2668 &c., 6 iroient 1697; imperative 4 alons, alons 2569; subj. pres. 5 aiz 793; subj. imp. 3 alast 1631; past part. ale 1253, 2673, 2816, to go; — so voyege 2042, to set out on one's journey.
Alongier, alingier, alinger, act. 292, 633, 862, 1954, to lengthen out, delay; [refl.] 1482, to be lengthened out.
Amaisser 227, 735, 736, to assemble.
Ambedeux 271, 1161, ansdeux, ambedeux 2937; nom. ambedoy, andoi, ambedeux 1433; both, the two.
Ame, alme 1388, 3423, soul.
Amener : indic. pres. 3 amayne 3338; perf. 3 amena, ameina 2354, 2694 &c.; to lead.
Amenteverve, amenceveur 4, one who is mindful.
Amer 832, 1757, aymer 3806, 3824; indic. pres. 6 ayment 537; imp. 6 amoient 1620, 1623; perf. 3 ama 462, 1598, 4142; past part. ami 1750; to love.
Amiablement 2082, 2144 &c., graciously, courteously.
Amont 2703, 2742, up.
Amoureus 1512, lovable, charming.
Ancelle 1454, maidservant.
Angle, angle, aogle 1106, 3240, angle, corner; mettre en l'- 2286, to hold of no account, to pass over.
Apartenir : indic. pres. 3 apartient 1423; imp. to be fitting.
Glossary

Apparailler, apparailler, act. 226, 2013, 2982
&c., [neuter] 2256, refl. 2312, to prepare, make ready; past part. 3998, ready, willing.
Apparaître 1761, evident, clear.
Appellement 3876, appeal.
Appeler, refl. 3859, to appeal, with de [3853], to appeal against.
Approcher, apprècher; act. 2206, to bring nearer, facilitate.
Arbalastier, arbalaster 2997, 3087, 3283, crossbowman.
Archigaie, archigai 3358, archigai 2765, archegay, assagai, dart.
Ardoir: indic. perf. 3 ardi 170; pres. part. ardant 221; past part. fem. arse, arsee 1009; to burn.
Ariéco, ariére, arie a vero 2903, 3550, 3588, 4089, back.
Armée 487, expedition, 4077 army.
Arrêt 307, rot, arroy, arri, arrole, arrai 108, 283, [2081], 388, 946, 1035, 4088 &c, arrangement, disposition, military equipment, army, 1762, situation, state.
Arroir, arrerer 580, to bring into a situation or plight, to treat.
As 1449, [3545], contracted form of 'a les'.
Ascouler, see Escoeur.
Assaillir, assailer 2004, 2519, 2789 &c.; indic. imp. 6 assaillissent 2763; perf. 3 assaillit 1352; to attack.
Assaillir, assaillir 735, 2031, 2465, muster.
Assailler, assailler, assaillir; act. 508, 2045, to bring together, assemble; neuter 1167, 1289, 1292, to enter into action, attack; refl. 2033 &c., to assemble, 2717 with preposition a, to join. Infinitive used as substantive 786, engagement, fight. A — ensemble 3260, when they joined battle.
Assault 3376, attack; prendre sur — 713, prendre par — 3927, gaigner par — 4041, to carry by assault.
Assaouir; faire — 3436, inform.
Assenner 2053, to destine, call, 3590, to marry.
Assentir, assenter 856, approve, agree to.
Asséne, asseure 3462, secure, safe.
Assez, assets, assetes 205, 272, 472, 1474, 2172, very, much; 287, 2807, 3654, many, 3653, enough.
[Asouffrir]: past part. asouffit (a. sufficte) 805, to satisfy.
Asur, assure, asure 986, 2595, azure.
Ataindre: past part. ataingit 3293; to hit, to strike.
Atant 1193, then.
Atargier, atargier, atargier, atargiere, atargier; neuter and refl. 1591, 2200, 3010, 3722 &c., to linger, delay.
Atempérance 1627, temperance, moderation.
Atour 742, 2106, equipment; [1602], character, quality.
Attendre, refl. 3153, to wait.
Attente, attent 3138, delay.
Attiser 3180, to urge, incite.
Attrait, aret 861, reception; 2677, arrangement, preparation.
Aucun, aucum 4, 35, 1916, some.
Autre 915 &c.; stressed oblique pronominal form, pl. autrui, autru 1723; other.
Aval 2703, down.
Avaler, avaller, act. 3056, refl. 2770, to descend, come down.
Avancier; act. 3912, give prosperity to; neuter 1154, to come forward, reach.
Avant 81, 1114, 1175 &c., on, forward.
Avanter, refl. 482, to flatter oneself, boast.
Avenement 316, the coming of Christ.
Avenir 46, 1652, 3955; indic. pres. 3 avenir 1074, avoyer 3958, 5 avenes, avinri 1087; perf. 3 avenir 3815, avenir 116, 480, 2209 &c., avyn, avenir 2892; neuter 46, 1087, 2499, 4080, to come, arrive, reach, befall; imp. 116, 417, 480 &c., to happen, come to pass.
Aventure 494, 2424, good fortune, success; mettre en — 3301, risk, expose, imperil.
Avis, avis, avis 269, 1898, opinion, 1851, 2740, wisdom, prudence; m'est — 470, (3222), 3882, it seems to me.
Aviser; act. 366, to recognize, 1830, devise, discover; refl. 2111, 2400, to decide; estre a devise 1833, to remember.
Avouer, avoueques, ouvseg, ouvseg 118, 274, 679 &c., with.
Avoier 662, 758, 2099 &c., to guide, direct.
Avoir 111, 1831, 2030 &c.; ind. pres. 1 ay 93, 1285, 2064 &c., ai 1273, 1894, 1902 &c., 3 a 936, ad 772, 799, 809 &c., 4 avons 1900, 2433, avoum 2014, 5 avex 1822, 1896, 3717 &c., 6 out 448, 514, 539 &c., ount, (34), 541; imp. 3 avoir 178, 278, 287 &c., 6 aviento 884, 1634, 1802 &c., avoyont 332; perf. 3 ot 122, 138, 168 &c., out 128, eut, out 1248, estu 142, 161, 446 &c., 6 orent 295, eurent 515, 574, 747 &c., eusent 3634; (erent) 1709; future i averai 2986, avroy, auver 1097, avray, avroy 2904, 3 avra, avra 788, auver 961, 4 avrons, auons 983, auuons 1137, 5 avrez, auuere 949, 966, 1150, auueter 951, auuerez 963, auuerez, auueries 1080; cond. 5 avieres, auuerez 2940; imperative 5 aies 957, aiez 1076, 3984, 3193; subj. pres. 1 aye, av 3004, 3 ait 2424, eit 2578, 3423, 4181, 4 aions 1179, 5 ies 817, aies 1006; subj. imp. 3 eust 449, 450, 2705, euiat, estu 102, 1336, 1791 &c., 6 eussent 2176, eussent, eussent 188, 1255; past part. eu, eu 1900, 2176, fem. une, eu 1835; to have. En lui ot bon chevalier 942, he was a good knight. En ly n'avoir que coreci 3369, he was filled with anger.
Avoir used substantively 514, 1832, 2836, money, property, valuables.
Bachelerie, bachelrie 612, bachelry, bachelors collectively.

Bacinet 3895, bacynette 2027, bassinet.

Bail: nom. sing. baie 2412; governor, regent.

Baillie, baillie, bailee 796, 1546, keeping.

Baillier 1545, 2440, 2953, 3142, to give.

Baneret, baneret, banerer 119, 193, 1368 &c., banneret, knight banneret.

Baniere; estre a baniere, banter 3133, to have a banner, be a banneret.

Barnage, baronage 486, 1518 &c., baronage, barons, 748, valour.

Baron 119 &c., baron, 279, a man of noble qualities.

Baronie 118, 3630, barons.


Bataille, bataille, batail 1128 &c., battle, 302, 964, 991 &c., battle, corps, battalion.

Baus, see Bail.

Baut, baut, baud [596], 2954, 3928, [4042], joyful, glad.

Benier: past part. fem. benoite 3438; to bless.

Beubant, beaubant 3396, 1347, 3282, countenance, bearing, demeanour. Faire mate — 4090, to look downcast.

Bienveignier: 1448, 1504, to welcome.

Biere, bere 369, coffin.

Blicier: indic. imp. 6 bliceoient, bliceoient 3363; to wound.

Boire: past part. beu 3653; to drink.

Bodir, bouder 989, to resound.

Bonte, bonte 1280, merit, prowess.

Borde 2684, cottage, hut.

Bourdeour 18, buffoon, jester.

Bouter, act. 1305, to thrust, drive home; neuter 3260, to thrust; reflex. 1196, to put oneself, go; — avant, 81, 2225, to push forward.

Brief 342, 1105; nom. bris (brysmos) 767, brifs 2228, bries, briefs 3846; brief, short.

Bries, bris, see Brief.

Buysyne, buysyne 988, trumpet.

Capitaine, capitaine, cheftayne, cheftaine, chesitaine 541, 944, 2338, 3070, captain, leader.

Car 1292 &c., for, 464, 775, 812, now, I pray you, 1877 that.

Carriage 1084, corage 2699, baggage.

Carkier, carkier 369, place, 603, load.

Cas; pour — de 1873, on account of.

Cave 3455, cellar.

Ce, see Dest.

Ce, ce, cee, see Intro. p. xl.

Cel, cele, ycell, ciaux, ceaux, cil, cils, cis, celni, celi, see Intro. p. xii.

Cel, see Cel.

Celestial 1272, celestial.

Certain, certain, certein, 1732 &c., certain, 3318 firm, resolute.

Cest, ycest, ce, ceste, yceste, ces, cez, cis, cert, see Intro. p. xl.

Cesti, see Cest.

Champaigne 368, field.

Cheminer, chiminer 2438, 2511, 2890, to journey.

Cheoir; past part. chen 3276; to fall.

Chescun 832, 996 &c., each.

Chevalereusement, chivalrusement 315, 1225, chivalrously, valiantly.

Chevalerie, chivalrie 2246, 2289, 3924, chivalry, knights.

Chevaucherye, chiuacherye 1674, mounted troops.

Chevauchie, chiuache, chiuachie 376, 687, 709 &c., expedition.

Chevauchier, chiuacher; act. 169, 912, to ride over.

Chief 3895, head.

Chier; avoir — 1510, to love; se faire — 3926, to win renown.

Chiere, chiere, cher [2032], 2718, 3147, 3282, countenance, bearing, demeanour. Faire mate — 4090, to look downcast.

Choir 761, 2522, to perceive, see.

Chor 988, horn.

Ci, cy 815, 1244, 2658 &c., here.

Ciaux, see Cel.

Cil, see Cel.

Cis, see Cest, Cel.

Clamer 1759, 2010, to call. For 1759 cf. Cotgrave under 'Subject', Qui de ses subjets est hai n'est pas seigneur de son pais.

Coer 6, 462 &c., heart.

College 1452, probably here the members of a Collegiate Church, perhaps those of Saint-Seurin and Saint-André.

Combien que 15, although.

[Coment que] 27, although.

Compaigne [197], 2302, company, companionship; 1738, 2124, 2396, company, troop.

Compaignon 1740, 2459 &c., companion, comrade, member of one of the companies; 258, fellow.

Compleindre: indic. imp. 3 compleindoit 3595; reflex., to lament.

Compleinte 592, lament.

Comprendre: perf. 3 comprist 996; past part. compris 2677; fem. comprise 1928; 996, to cover; 1928, 2671, to arrange.

Comunale 1607, 2101, all.

Comunes 244, the forces levied by the Communes.

Conclusion 3783, conclusion, end.

Conduire: imp. 3 conduisot, conduissoit 1041; perf. 3 conduit 2354, 3737; to lead, guide.

Conduit, conduyt 2472, 3572, escort, guides; 1952, feast (?).

Conforter: act. 917, 1957, 2071, 3334 &c., to help, comfort, reinforce; reflex. 3913, to strengthen oneself.

Congie, congie 2176, 2660, 2950 &c., leave; se doner — 3088, to take leave of each other.
GLOSSARY

6 demourerent, (demourerent) 479; neuter 191, 295, 1617, 1971 &c., to remain, dwell, delay; refl. 1809, to remain; imp. ne demoura gere 411, 517, 1586 &c., it was not long.

Demour, denmoire 2387, delay.

Demouster 28, to set forth, describe.

Deniers 2014, money.

Departir 4155, departure, death.

Departir 2815, departir 580; indic. imp. 3 departoit 924; perf. 3 departi 1295, 2159, 2959, departy 889, 6 departirent 2228, 3742, departir 347, departirent 1346; fut. 6 departirent 899; past part. deptayny 739, (1252), departi (2116), 3751; act. 2815, to divide; refl. 2228, 3742, to part, separate. se — 739, 3751 &c., s’en — 347, 2156 &c., to depart. Ininitive used as substantive 589, departure.

Depor, depor, desport 3740, delight, pleasure; n’avoir point de — 927, to be pitiless, not to hesitate.

Deporter, act. 3540, to spare; refl. 903, to be delayed, put off.

Derier, derere 1177, last.

Derieire, derere 1364, 2636, behind.

Desaroy 434, confusion, rout.

Desconfir, desconfir 2851; perf. 6 desconfirent 1209; past part. desconfir 2845, desconfir 3504, desconfir, desconfir 497, desconfir 897, 3397, fem. desconfir, (desconfir) 1237; to defeat, rout.

Desconfinir, desconfinir 3445, destruction, havoc.

Descom, discom 3904, strife.

Descovrir, descovrir 1110, to discover.

Desermer, desermer 1420, to disarm.

Deservir 3501, to deserve, repay.

Desier, desier 2895, (desire) 2011, desire.

Deslogement 3047, raising (of a camp), removal.

Desoubz 2753, 2905, (3554), par — 2289, 2898, under, below.

Desployer, desployer, desployer, disployer; act. 955 &c., unfurl; refl. 1904, to be deployed.

Desroi 656, damage.

Desseparer: indic. pres. 3 desesepere, desafpire 1770; refl. with de, to part from, abandon.

Destourer, destoiber 1098, 2208, 3354, 3936, to disturb, hinder, interrupt.

Destourner, act. 785, 853, to avert, prevent; refl. 4116, to avoid, escape.

Destre 3082, 3235, (adestre) 3308, right.

Destroit, destroyt 1700, defile; 3646, hardship.

[Desur] 2711, on.

Detri, detri, detry, destri 1742, 1884, 3460 &c., delay.

Detryance 859, delay.

Detrier: act. and neuter 934, 1097, 1592, 1953, delay, hinder.

Deux 1599; nom. doy 1575, doi, deux 1114, 1278 &c., two.

Devaler 2813, to go down.

Devant: prep. (of place) 2556 &c., (of time) 719, before; adv. (of place) 3196, 3229, in front, (of time) 3222 before; par — 1823, before.

Devant que 1211, before.

Devers 745, 777, &c., towards, to; par, par, per — 374, 741 &c., towards, to, 895, on, from.

Devier 4172, to die.

Deviser, devyser: act. 302, 577 &c., to arrange, 2241, 2291, 2444, 3678, to describe, enumerate, set forth, relate, 3005, to talk; refl. 1099, 1433, 2581, to talk.

Devoir: indic. pres. 1 doy 470, 2318, 4124, doi 1424, 1854 &c., doy 3346, 3 doit 29, 454, 832 &c., doit 2392, 4 devons 1429, 6 doiens 35, (1753), 3853; imp. 3 devoir, 111, 146, 1938 &c., 6 doiens (1753), 1828, 3824; cond. 5 devoivez, devoivez 2928; subj. pres. 5 dojies, deusse 2417, 2418; imp. 3 deus 2818, 3660, deuist, deus 2930, 6 deuissent, deusse 3035, 3824; to owe, ought &c., 146, to be about to, 832, to be wont.

Di; touz dis, tut dis, tout dis 2863, 3252, 3673, always, all the time.

Dicusse 2052, goddess.

Digne 1571, noble, precious, 2486, worthy.

Dire 23, 144, 153 &c.; indic. pres. 1 die 2345, 2450, 2537; die 1549, 2348, dy 2015, 2600, 3155, 3473, dy 93, 3 dit 214, 279, 344 &c., 5 dites, dites 823, ditez, dites 2843, 6 dient 2101; imp. 3 disoit 547, 921, 1423 &c., 6 disoius 1119, 1914, 3602 &c.; perf. 3 dist 229, 463, 727 &c., 6 dirent 3858, disent, disient 3143; fut. 1 diroy, dirroy 702, dirai, (dirra) 638, 3 dira, dirra 3584; cond. 1 diray, dirroy 342; imperative 5 dites, dites 1909, 2165; subj. pres. 1 die 456, 1235, dite 3377, 3 die 836; pres. part. disant 111, 1472, 2402 &c.; past. part. dit 961, 2075, 3147 &c., dist 1276; to say, 25, to compose poetry.

Dit 2, 30 &c., poem; 1638, 2115 &c., word, saying.

Ditter, dicter 1892, 2951, to compose, write.

[Doel] 278, 1826, grief.

Dolant 1824, 2117 &c., sorrowful.

Dolouer 592, 2090, 4160, complain, lament.

Doner: indic. imp. 6 donon 3265; perf. 3 dona 2956 &c., 6 denerent 1723, donon 2088; future 1 douroir, douroire 2839; subj. pres. 3 doint 3884, (donast) 3893; imperative 5 done 3515; past part. done 1859, 3135; to give.

Don, donc, don, dont, donzt, donz 485, 791, (999) &c., then.

Dormir: indic. imp. 3 dormir 2690; to sleep.

Doutance, doute, doutez 2984, fear, 3194, doubt.
double in violence, wax fiercer, 2724, 3360, to make efforts, endeavour.

En氟r : indic. imp. 6 enfuyoit 1131 ; refl. to flee.

Engrant, engrant 179, 1141, eager.

Enhort 1541, advice, counsel.

Enseigne, enseigne 4060, sign.

Ensemant 406, 550, 756 &c., thus ; 504, 1063, 3067, also ; — que 2488, as, exactly as.

Ens, ensy, 101, 479 &c., thus ; — que, come, [com] 672, 1464, 1524 &c., as.

Entalentz 323, 614, 3351, desirous, eager.

Entendre, neuter 1853, to attend, listen, 3154, to give one's attention, devote oneself.

Entente 838, intention, 3867, proposal; mettre s'— 39, to devote oneself, strive.


Entier 1322, loyal, steadfast.


Entour, prep. 1439, round; adv. — s 2524, round about ; la —, thereabouts, 3641, near there.

Entracoler, entrecoller, entre coller, refl. 2087, 3677, to embrace one another.

Entre ; — lui et ses compagnons 1207, he and his companions.

Entreci ; — jusques, (jiesger), a 2298, as far as.

Entremettre 31 ; indic. pres. 3, entremet (entremet) 3314 ; refl. with de, to set about, apply oneself to.

[Entr'encontre], refl. 313 (entre acontier), 2160 (entre conter) to meet one another.

Entreset, entre set, entrefeat, entre fait, entroof, 523, 2633, 3056, 3490, at once.

[Entreus] (en trois, entre eux, en treveus) 3718, meanwhile ; — que 1939, 2478, while.

Entreos, see Entreus.

Entroubler, entre oubliez 2375, to forget.

Entrues, see Entreus.

Envaie 3250, onset, charge.

Envair, envoair 1228, to attack.

Envers 1726, to.

Environ, environ, enveron ; prep. 1251, around; adv. 1604, 2683, 3428 &c., around, round about, 2620 thereabouts, 3451 about.

Envoyer 551, 1881, envoyer 545 ; indic. imp. 3 envoiot 3734 ; perf. 3, envia 1460, 3021, 3918 ; past part. fem. envie, envoie 1477 ; to send.

Enz, ens 1491, [2035], [2704], 2901, [3029], [3209], in, used with en to emphasize it.

Ermyn, hermyne 987, 2957, ermine.

Errant, erranta, 2604, at once, straightforward.

Errament 1868, 2542, 3633, speedily, straightforward.

Es 655, [2035], 2517, 2901, [4129], contracted form of ' en les'.

GLOSSARY
GLOSSARY

Franc, franc, frank, 55, 63, 74 &c., noble.
Franchise 66, 3179, &c., nobility, high-mindedness.
Frayn, frayne, fraine; order or frayn de 575, to appoint as tutor or adviser to; cf. 'De par le Roy Sire de Moreul vous savez comme nous vous deynez l'autre jour que nous vous aviens ordené pour estre a veuques Jean nôtre fils et a son frain.' Morelî, Grand Dictionnaire Historique, under Moreul. Cf. Littre, under 'Fren'.
Frois, see Ferir.
Fret, fret, cold.
Fri, frivent, see Ferir.
Frontier, Frontiere, frontier, frontier 3090, frontier, front line or foremost part of an army; venir en — 3925, to go forward, see Critical Note to line.
Frus 3938, frowning.
Fumièr, mièrter 3271, steam, reek.
Fut, fuit 216, wood, beam.
Fuyer 4064, fuir, fuyer 3388; indic. pres. 3 suit 3393, 6 fuyent 1143; perf. 6 fuirent, fuyerent 1345; refl. past, fuyant 3384; act. 4064, to flee from, escape; neuter 1345, 3384, 3388, refl. s'en — 1143, 3393, to flee.
Fyn 122, 992, &c., loyal, noble.
Fyner 4184, to finish.

Gage; tenir son — de bataille 3621, seems to mean ‘to preside at combat following upon a gage of battle’, cf. the corresponding passage in Froissart, ed. Luce. vol. vii, p. 51, l. 13: 'y tint gage et camp de bataille.'
Gaignage 1394, gain, plunder, booty.
Gaires; ne ... gaires 295, 1485 &c., not much, but little.
Gait 2529, 2532, watch.
Galée, galaye 1781; galley.
Gantilette 2028, gauntlet.
Garant 3216, protection, defence.
Garde; prendre — 254, examine, investigate, 354, to note, observe, 2240, to apply oneself to; se prendre — de li 3042, to be on one’s guard, look to oneself.
Garder; act. 293 &c., to guard, 2962, to look at; neuter 955, 1005, 1011, to take care.
Garir, garrer; [refl.] 1846, to extricate oneself from one's difficulties.
Garir 67, to endow; past part, garmi 3629, rich.
Garnison, garison 3900, fortified place.
Gaster 221, 650, 799, to ravage, pillage.
Genetor 2005, 2873 &c., genetor, a soldier riding a jennet.
Gent 251 &c., graceful, beautiful, 2916 gracious, courteous.
Gentieux, see Gentil.
Gentil: nom. sing. gentieux 1797; noble.
GLOSSARY

Genz, gens; — d'armes 1933, men at arms, warriors.

Gesir: indic. imp. 3 gisit 368, 3961, 4018; perf. 3 gist 3995; neuter 368, 3961, 3995, refl. 4018, to lie.

Gille 1028, deceit.

Glave, glayve, gleve 952, 2028 &c., lance.

Gorge; a haute — 1391, 3399, with all their might.

Goules 987, 2596, gules.

Governer act. 1626, 2110, 3101, 3823, govern, have command of, sway; refl. 326, 2477, to bear oneself.

Gracier 1418, 3487, 3759, 3963, to give thanks to.

Granter, grantier 2454, to grant.

Gre 856, 1675, will, pleasure; bon —, 927, gratitude; prendre en — 4065, to accept with resignation.

Grever, greuer, greuir 979, 1765, 2774, 3829, injury, harm.

Grief 784; nom. sing. [gries] 3449; grievous, terrible.

Gries, see Grief.

Grimache 19, grimace.

Gueredon, guerdon 4127, reward, payment, guerdon.

Guigne, gynge 2730, a kind of cherry.

Guyse 86, 2493, manner, way.

Hair, heier 2417.

[Hante] 3142, handle, staff.

Hardement, hardement, hardierment 188, 1150, 2748, boldness, courage.

Hatiplat 1339, buffet, blow.

Hautece, hauteces 68, excellence, nobility.

Hautein 87, high, lofty.

Hayette 1221, little hedge.

Herbergier, act. 291, 675, refl. 693, 764, to lodge, encamp.

Hermyne, see Ermyne.

Het, wish. En — de 3350, anxious, eager to.

Home 1333, 1763 &c.; nom. sing. hom, home, home 1269, 1300, 1860 &c., home 1692; man.

Hontage, honteage 2680, shame.

Hos, Host, see Ost.

Hostage 676, to lodge.

Hosteller 2234, 3482, to lodge.

Huëe, huëe, huëie, 1121, 1157, outcry, clamour.

Iaux, see Le.

Ii, see Le.

Iloec, illoecues, illoeces, illoeges, illoges 346, 390, 453, 883 &c., there.

Ire, 278, 312, 1168, sorrow, anger.

Issir : imp. 3 issit 3443; to issue.

Ja 1213, 3675, already; expletive 1006, 1150, 3618, 4159 &c.

Jadys 42, formerly. Du temps — 1, in bygone days.

Janglour, janglour 17, chatterer.

Je, see Moi.

Joglour, jogelour 18, itinerant minstrel and entertainer.

Joinlour, ioiat, ioiyant 1390, 2054, joyful.

Joindre: perf. 3 joinde 3173; pres. part. joindant, ioian 1471; to join, fold.

Joli, joli, joly 1553, 3594 &c., merry, fair.

Joliment 3013, fairly, in order.

Jolite, jolleft, jolitee, jolite 76, 478, 663, gaiety, good humour.

Jouvente, iuuent 837, youth, young men.

Jus 2746, 3116, down.

Jusques, iusques, iuset 723, 1501, 1529 &c., as far as, up to.

Justement 2551, accurately.

Kenu 878, white, hoary.

[Laire]: indic. pres. 3 [lait] 2018; to leave off, cease.

Largece, largesce, largesse, largitee 62, 75, 1619 &c., liberality.

Larmoyer 4130, to weep.

Las, wretched, unhappy; invariable, with the force of an interjection, 3576.

Le, la, les, li, ly, luy; art. see Introd. p. xxxvii.

Le, les, il, elle, lui, li, ly, lour, yaux, iaux, eux; pron. see Introd. p. xlii.

Leece, leese 1056, 1618, joy, gladness.

[Legal] (lagasi) 770, envoy.

Lequel, liqueus, pron. see Introd. p. xlii.

Les, las, los 1037, 3508 &c., side.

Leur, leure 682, 3977, where.

Lever: neuter 1122, 1158, 3226, refl. 300, to rise, arise.

Li, see Le.

Lie, lie 566, 3928; fem. lye 2718, lie, lee, 3147; joyful, glad.

Lieu: prendre — 2570, to take up a position; avoir son — 3964, to have its course; bone parole tient bon — 774, cf. Cotgrave, 'bone parole bon lieu tient: a good word hath great acceptance, good language brings its welcome along with it.'

Lieuwee, leuwe 2637, 3017 &c., league.

Lignie 1660, lineage.

Lire: past part. fem. lue 1887; to read.

Logement 2710, 3483, lodging, quarters.

Logier, loger: act. 395, 1532 &c., to lodge, encamp, quarter; neuter 1436, 3597 &c., refl. 2036, 2311 &c., to lodge, take up one's quarters, encamp, be encamped.

Logis, logizem, loges, 2702, 3492, quarters.

Loial, loiel 2266 &c., loyal 2933, legal.

Lointain, lointain, lointaigne 2046, distant, 3557, long.

Los, los, loos 440, 692, 882 &c., honour, reputation.

Ly, see Le.

Lymache 20, snail, cf. Cotgrave, 'Faire le limacon: to wind, twirl or turne round about.'
Main, see Maint.
Main 2138, morning.
Mainse, maintse 1645, younger.
Maint, main, main, main, meant, ment, 1186, 1239, 1676, 1741, 2336 &c., — de, 630, many a, many a one.
Maintenir: indic. pres. 3 maintenit 2110; imp. 3 menetinoit 3934; perf. 3 maintint, maintien 114; cond. 6 maintenrienit, maintien- droit 4148; act. 114, 2110, 4148, to maintain, carry on; refl. 3934, to bear oneself.
Mains: onques — 445, — onc 4153, never; — que 54, 3532, provided that.
Malmetre: past part. malmis (maltuais) 650; to devastate.
Mander, act. 579, 1730, 1920 &c. to send for, 1480, 2400, to send; act. 1713, 2171 &c., neuter 195, 1856, 3975, to send word, communicate.
Manecier: indic. imp. 3 manecoit, manceot 206; to threaten.
Maneir: indic. pres. 3 mest, mist 1820; to dwell.
[Mar] 2833, to his cost.
Marir 358, 1116 &c., to grieve.
Mat 4090, sad.
Matere, matiere, matter 44, 81, 202 &c., subject, 454, 843, 1848, matter, affair.
Matinet, matinet, matinent; le — 1441, 2661, early in the morning, at dawn.
Mautalent, mautalent,aultant 312, 1149 &c., anger.
Me, see Moi.
Meismement, meisment 3663, even.
Meismes 1409, self.
Meistrier 3593, to overcome.
Membre 2032, wise, prudent.
Memore, memorie, memoire 1343, sense, wisdom; avoir en — 2555, to intend.
Mencion, mencion, mencione; faire — de 377, 1679, 3414, 3784, to mention, speak of.
Mencoigne, mencoigne, mécogine 526, 1319, lie, falsehood.
Mener 1507, 2259 &c.; fut. 3 merra, mesnera 1091, 5 [merrez] 1002; to lead.
Menour, meinour 1774, lesser.
Mentir 826, 2944, 3657, mentier 3514; indic. pres. 1 menk 260, 268, ment [1126], 3 ment 790, 3048; perf. 3 menty 3942; fut. 1 men- teray 1602, 2382, 3618, 3738, mentetrai 3672; cond. 1 mentiroie 2629, mentiroye 3773; subj. pres. 1 mente 375; past part. mentit 3788; to lie.
Mercier 3590, to thank.
Mesavenir (mys av venir): imp. 3956, to happen (of misfortunes), to mishap.
Meschief 1087, 3896, 3957, 3959, mischief, misfortune, harm.
Mesfaire: perf. 1 mesfis 2415; to injure.
Mesprendre: perf. 1 mespris 2416; to trans- gress.
Message 1884, messenger.
Mest, see Maneir.
Mestier, mestier, mester, mester, 314, 1224, profession; avoir — 2981, avoir — de 360, 3989, to need, require; estre — a 926, faire — a 1822, to be necessary to.
Mestire, mestiere 1818, authority, power.
Mettre 32, 39, 47 &c.; indic. imp. 3 mettoit 1065, 3301, 4082, 6 [mettoient], (mentoient) 3463; perf. 3 mist 608, 643, 666 &c., 6 mirent 1219, 2759, 2784, 2824, misent, mistrent 237, 3931; imperative 5 metter 1007; subj. pres. 5 mettez 958, 957; past part. mis 434, 932, 2286, mys 273, 3367, mise, mis 1187, 3588; to put; [3134], to spend.
Mie, mie, mye, my, 2534, at all. Non —, ne . . . mie 25, 184, 243 &c., not at all, not.
Misericort 2356, merciful.
Moi, mi, me, je, see Introd. p. xli.
Mon, ma, mes, see Introd. p. xliii.
Mont, monde 4170, world.
Mont 3436, see Mout.
Morir 784, 2680, mourir, morir 786, 2858, 3440, 3581; perf. 3 morat, mortus 3420, 3945, morist 4180, 6 morurent, morirrient 3417; subj. pres. 1 morere 837; past part. mort 33, 507, 1239 &c., (morte) 904; to die; past part. 33, 368 &c., dead, 333, 497, 507 &c., killed.
Mot; de — en — 2492, every word, right through.
Moul, see Mout.
Moullier, moullier, matiere, mulliere, multier 603, 1509 &c., wife.
Moult, moul, moul 134, 476, 529, 3436 &c., very, much; — de 386, 2246 &c., many, much.
Mounstrer 1891, 2443, to show, 1848, to explain.
Mucier, refl. 1364, to hide oneself.
My, see Moi.
My; par —, see Parmy.
Naistre: perf. 3 nasqui 378, 1550, 2021, 3015, nasquy [64], 102, 2016; past part. ne, see 471, 1609, 4062, (nasquy) 64, fem. nee 3576; to be born.
Ne: conj. 10, 51, 979 &c., nor, or, and; ne . . . ne, 191, 1832, 3583; either . . . or.
Nef, nief 481 &c., ship.
Nelige, niege 2305, snow.
[Neis] 4101, even, just.
Nepourquant, nepourquant, ne pur quant 281, 3571, 3913, nevertheless.
Nient, see Contreant.
Nivier 2880, to snow.
No, see Nostre.
Noel, nuyt 363 &c., night.
Noise 1122 &c., noise, clamour.
Nombre 993, enumeration, list.
Noncier 3649, relate, repeat.
Noritute [72], 1820, nurture, see Critical Note to l. 1820.
GLOSSARY

Nostre, no, noz, nos, see Introd. p. xliii.
Nul, pron. and adj. masc. sing. nom. nus, nul 1162, nuls, nult 1756, 2068 &c., nulli, nult 3120; acc. nuli, nult 329, nuli (nullae) 928, nul, null, nult 455, 582, 1763 &c.; dative nulli, nult 2950; no one, no.
Nuli, nulli, see Nul.
Nus, see Nul.
Nyce 1788, foolish.

O, ou, oue 251, 368, 2645 &c., with.
Occire 3280, 3392, to kill.
Get, eepht, eepht 1553, 2468, eight; dis et eet, discept 180, eighteen.
Oir 1821, ier 53, 105, 1647 &c.; indic. pres. 1 oy 508, 3835, 4094, oi [888], 1930; perf. 1 oi 394, oy 734, 3 oy, 277, 743, 1469 &c., oi 2115, [2026], 6 oirent, orent 4031; future 5 orres 104, 2493; subj. imp. 3 oist 2580, 5 oissiez, oisses 989; past part. oy 1902, 3487, 3649 &c., oi 1822, (2626 &c.).
On, hom, home 474, 522, 1557, 1558, 2098, home, home 1, 8, 1465 &c., en 162; one.
Onques, unges 37, 307, 316 &c., ever.
Ordenance, ordenance, ordainment 578, 932, 1065 &c., arrangement, marshalling, order of battle, preparation; a son — 3624, at his discretion, in his control.
Ordenement 299, arrangement, disposition.
Ordener, ordainement 301, 998, 1016 &c., to arrange, march, arrange in battle array; 553 [2941], to ordain; 575, 2379, 3642, 3691, to appoint, assign.
[Ordonner] 2941, see Ordener.
Orfany, orphany 239, orphan.
Orgoell, orgoille 836; nom. orguieus, orgoilles 782; pride.
Orguieus, see Orgoell.
Orr, ort 2876, fool.
Ose 976, bold.
Ost, ost, oost, hoast, hooste 758, 807 &c., army.
Ottroi, ottroier, ottriore 1431, 3534 &c., to grant.
Ou 2184, oue 2524, contracted form of ‘en le’; 575, 2184, 2193, confused with ‘au’.
Ou, see O.
Ous, see Vous.
Outrage 782, 854, 2679, outrage, excess, insolence.
Outrageus 166, presumptuous, rash.
Outre 1213, 2355 &c., beyond, across.
Ouvrir, ouvrer 1701, ovrir, ouver 1717, ouvrir, ouver 4119, to open.
Par 164, 247, 283 &c., intensive particle generally separated from the word it modifies.
Parage 1063, rank.
Parfaire 2924, to carry out.
Parfit 60, 452, perfect.
Parillement 77, 1072, perfectly.

Parlement 883, 2181, 3556, speech, conversation, conference.
Parmy, par my 616, 722 &c., through, across; 758, 989, 2301, in the midst of, in the course of, throughout.
Parole; bone — tient bon lieu 774, see Lieu.
Part, part, pte 2090, share, 1660, 1317, 3906, side, hand, direction, party.
Parti, partic; tenir son — 3905, to take sides.
Partir 1754, 2503, 3171, 3321, partir 2066; indic. pres. 6 partent 919; imp. 3 partoit 4158; perf. 3 partit 858, 2103, 3729, party 2048, 3559, 6 partirent 1010, 2823, 3317, 3311; subj. pres. 1 parte 2498; past part. fem. partie 1050; act. 1050, to divide; neuter 1010 &c., refl. 919, 2103 &c., to depart.
Partralier, partrailer 847, to treat fully.
Pas 259, 1221, 1700 &c., passage, pass, ford; prendre — 2711, to take up a position; plus tost que le —, see Tost.
Passer, act. 2888 &c., to pass through, 1410 to pass over, 1882 to bring across; neuter 2134 &c., to pass, pass over.
Payne; a grant — 3535, with great difficulty, reluctantly.
Pechie, pecchie; par — 418, a — (a piecies) 800, sinfully, wrongfully.
Peygon, peygon 2280 &c., penon, 1974, 2370, penon, knight bachelor.
Pener; indic. pres. 3 payne 1326, payn 3261; imp. 3 paynot 3279, 6 [penoiy] (tenoiy) 271; cond. 1 penoye 2938; ref. to exert oneself, labour, endeavour.
Per, pere 2061, equal.
Percevoir 3026, 3364, to see, perceive.
Perir, perrer 506, to destroy.
Petit; un — 3097, a little.
Pie, pie 1044 &c., foot, 978, man, soul.
Pietaille, pie taille 3391, foot soldiers, infantry.
Pisson 3166, fish.
Plain, poeste 3426, plain.
Player 3281, to wound.
Pleindre 4159; indic. pres. 6 pleident 3888; neuter 4159, to lament; ref. 3888, to complain.
Plente, plente, plente 3856, great number; a — 3735, in plenty.
Plere: indic. pres. 3 plest 892, 1176, 2500; imp. 3 plesoit 3906; perf. 3 plest, plust 2633, plust 3494, 3041; fut. 3 plera, plera 2949; pres. subj. 3 plese 775, 1877; imp. subj. plest, plust 2453, plust 3589; neuter 892, imp. 1176 &c., to please.
Plesant 1589, agreeable, gracious.
Ploovoir: indic. pres. 3 pient, pluit 2880; imp., to rain.
Plueve, plume 3362, rain.
Poeste, paeest; par leur — 2750, with all their might.
Poi, poy 229, 639, 727 &c., little; a — 4158, wellnigh.
Pres 3163, almost; a... pres 3039, except, but for; — a... 3246, side by side.

Present; en... 4132, present.

Prest 2632; nom. sing. pres. 601, 2610; ready, eager.

Preu 3144, profit.

Preudhomye, Ædomye 4105, excellence, worth.

Preudome 3829; nom. preudoms, Ædhome 559, preudom, Æd home 1414, preudhom, Ædhome 1858; pl. nom. [preudome] 904, preudhome, Ædthomes 2282; a man of moral and intellectual excellence.

Principalment 1572, certainly (!).

Principauté, principalte, principalete 2008, 3795, principality.

Pris 178, 449, 466, 1587 &c., reputation, honour, prowess, worth.

Prisier, priser, act. 148, 200, 205 &c., to honour, esteem, value; refl. 229, 727, to esteem oneself.

Prive, priue, prince 1913, intimate, familiar, 2046, belonging to the country.

Promettre; perf. 6 prominent, promisement 4146; past part. promis 1286, 3001, 3698; to promise.

Proprment 1608, 2812, 3068, 3484, truly, justly, properly, exactly.

Prover; refl. 441, 503, to show one's mettle, to distinguish oneself.

Publique, public 4108, public-spirited (!).

Pucelle 1453, maiden.

Puis, prep. 51, 102, 2209 &c., since, after; adv. 501, 2618, 3820, &c., afterwards, then.

Puisque 798, 2296, 3015, (of time) since.

Quant; tout — que, put — 3128, all that.

Quant; — de 2945, as for.

Quart 1017, fourth.

Quarttime; lui — 284, himself the fourth, he and three others.

Que, qui, quo, quoy: relative and interrogative pron., see Introd. pp. xlili and xlv; qui, 1631, 3653, if one; que... que, que... qui, 2734, 3074, both... and, whether... or; que meulz meulz, que meulz &c. meulz 2713, in emulation of one another, for the fastest; de quo 3134, the means.

Que, conj. 2, &c., that; causal use [364], 1589, 1839 &c.; modal use 38, 194, 3010 &c.

Querre, guere 1934, 1973, querir, quier, quier 3749; indic. imp. 6 quierent, quiorent 678; to seek, fetch.

Qui, see Que.

Quidier, neuter 203, 231, 1125 &c., [refl.] 1127, refl. 2715, to think, intend to.

Quite, (verb adj. from quiter) abandoned, given up.

Quoi, see Que.

Rade, radde 248, 2474, 3430, swift, rushing.
GLOSSARY

Raison, rayson 1628 &c., reason, 824, 3110, speech, words, 2444, substance, matter; estre —s 1639, 1641, to be right.

Raler, raler; s’en — 1577, to return.

Ravoir, reanouir 2495; indic. pres. 4, ravons, ravons 796; fut. 5, ravres, reaures 1864, reanueret 3192; to have back, have again.

Rebatter, rebater 2723, to beat back.

Reconforter, active 1242, to encourage, 1088, 2080, to support, succour, reinforce; refl. 3916, to strengthen, succour oneself.

Reconnaissances, 4103 (4110), recognition.

[Reconoistre]: pres. part. reconissant 4110; to acknowledge.

Recorder, recorder, recordir 41, 48, 93 &c., to relate, tell.

Record, record, recordre 34, 1930, 3852 &c., report, account.

Refaire 3477; indic. perf. refist, 709, 1517; to make again, once more.

Referir: indic. pres. 3 refir, 3290; refl. with en, to dash into once more.

[Regestrir] 1822, to record, relate.

Regraicer 3508, to thank.

Regreter 359, 594, to lament for, 2052, to reproach.

Relenquir: indic. perf. 6 relinguercnt 3847; cond. 3 relingueroit 1799; to abandon.

Relure 2594, to shine.

Remandere: indic. perf. 3 remesit, remiset 1792; to remain.

[Remanant] 1944, remnant.

Remembrer, refl. 2066, to remember.

Remest, see Remoanier.

Remettre: indic. perf. remisemt 1644; to put back.

Remordere: subj. pres. 3 remorger 2287; refl., to remember.

Renforcer: indic. pres. 3 renforce 3376; to grow fiercer.

Renvoi 2448, to send back.

Reparer, repaireir 3689, to return.

Reposer, act. 641, to give rest, to rest.

Requerir, requeruir 1878; indic. imp. 3requeteir, requieroit 1961; to beg, ask.

Rescouer: indic. perf. 3 rescoust 432, 453; to rescue.

Resvvertuer, refl. 532, to grow more courageous, be encouraged, be remembered.

Retien 30: past part. retenu 1115; to keep, 30, to remember.

Retraire 1070, 1386, 1387 &c., retrere 1566; indic. pres. 3 retract 3461; perf. 3 retractis, retrahist 4187; act. 1386, 1566, 2798, 4187, to relate; neuter, sanz — 1670, 1387, 3143, without hesitation, delay; refl. 3461, to retire.

Revel, ruelit, 475, 1615, 3268, 3750, revel, delight; faire —, reviaux, reviaux 618, 653, 1484, 3812, demener reviaux, reanuex 2955, to rejoice.

Revenir 1667: indic. perf. 3 revint, revient 1987, revynt 4059, 6 revimert, reviundrent 412, reviundrent 2538; past part. revenu 1966; neuter 412, 1667; refl. 1966, 1987 &c., to come back.

Revoir: fut. 4 revovrers, reuerons 2083; refl. to see one another again.

Riche 945, 1013, 3984, powerful, 2106, rich, splendid.

Rien 2170, anything; ne ... rien 3031 &c., nothing, 2415, 3030, not at all.

Royal 1755; royal state, kingdom (?).

Roine, Roynre, Raigne, Rognye, Royn, Raigne 586, 1462, 3577 &c., queen.

Romant, romant, romance 1113, 1205, French book.

Route 950, hand, troop.

[Royn], (royalne) 1565, kingdom.

Sage; faire — 2934, to inform.

Saieler, sealler, seallier 1868, 2436, 2952, to seal.

Saiete, scatte 606, arrow.

Saillir, sailler 2003, (fallir) [3439]; perf. 3 sailly 2710, sailli 3288; to spring, spring out, sally forth.

[Saisson], (saison, faison, faisson); on courte — 1593, 1712, 3793, 3931, in a short time.

Salvement 1882, safely.

Sambliche, semblance 1666, opinion; avoir de — 665, to believe.

Sauler, senbiler 570 &c., to seem.

Sauf 804, safe, secure.

Saus, see Sauf.

Savoir 820, 2431, 2918 &c.; indic. pres. 1 say 144, 349, 885 &c., sai 351, 3 siet, scet 3887, 4 savoirs 2421, 2426, sauons 823, 5 savez 107, 536, 828 &c., 6 secont 31; imp. 3 savoir 637, 2189, 837, 831, 3911, 6 savoir 1900, 3837, 3967; perf. 3 seuil, seet 1830, 2905, 3118, secoest 1997, scent 1497, seint 2906, soet 2543, 2548, [3567]; 6 soient 2541; fut. 3 savra 902, 5 savrez, saurez 3191; cond. 1 savoir, sauvant 153, 3 savoir, sauvait 23; imperative 5, sachiez, sachez 112, 154, 190 &c., saches 2372, saches, saches 245, saches 2179, 2995; pres. part. sachant 84, 792; to know; pres. part. 84, 792, wise.

Scarmouche, see Escarmouche.

Se, si 105, 230, &c., if; se ... non 3720, if not, except.

Seigneurie 2432, dominion.

Seintisme 1270, 4128, most holy.

Selonc, solone 3429, along, beside, 1404, according to.

Semblant; ne faire — de rien 3031, to give no sign.

Semondre: pres. indic. 3 semont, semonter 3180; to incite, urge.

Sendal 2599, 3095, sendal, a kind of silk.

Senestre 3078, 3317, left.
Sentir, sentier 2744, 3513, sentier 2928; indic. imp. 3 sentoit 4157; to feel.
Serment, sierement, serement, sement, seurement, 2221, 3373, 3634, oath.
Servir 1753; indic. imp. 3 servoit 3978, 6 servoient 4122; subj. pres. 5 servez 4138; past part. serviz 3127, 3680, 3807 &c.; to serve.
Sì, se, sì, adv. so 83 &c.; expletive particle sometimes used as copula, sometimes between subject and predicate to indicate a pause (cf. Introd. p. xxiv) 8, 115, 510, 691 &c.; conj. introducing an optative clause 293, 758, 1001 &c.; 29, 541, yet; sique 1637, 1758 &c., so that.
Sì, sy; sans null — 289, 582 &c., without fail, without doubt.
Sì, see Son.
Siccle 2065, world.
Sien, see Son.
Sigler 615, 616, 1492, 1785, to sail.
Sivre: indic. imp. 3 sievot, sevoit 266; perf. 6 suirent 2751; cond. 3 sieroit, sieroit 1051; to follow.
Socourir, socouer 1845, 1877, 2816, 4084; past part. socouru, socouru 467, socouru 1662; to help, succour.
Soer 587, sister.
Sojour, sojour, sejour 668, [695], sojourn; 21st day; pred. — 3018, 3731, to halt; sans — 2762, 2770, without ceasing.
Solas 1601, 3583, 3798, pleasure, happiness.
Solemnite 88, solemn feast.
Some 2316, list, enumeration; ce est le — 814, 1764, 3830, that is all, in short.
Son, sa, si, ses, sien, soen, senes, see Introd. p. xiii.
Soubgit, soubgit 1621, subject.
Soubtil, subtil 3101, cunning, resourceful.
Soffissant, suffisant 3195, 3402, noble.
Soffrete, suffrete 2040, privation.
Soffrir, souffrir 2283, 3710, souffrirt 3105, souffrirt 3258, souffrir 3458; indic. imperf. 6 souffroit, souffroit 2300; perf. 3 souffri, souffrit 2338, souffrit 2509, 6 souffriron, souffrent 3672; to suffer.
Souprendre: past part. fem. souprise, suprise 2706; to surprise.
Sourdre: indic. imp. 6 sourdoient 3959; to arise, to come to pass.
Souvenir: indic. imp. 3 sourvoient, (vienoit) 1257; perf. 3 sourvint, survenit 2465, 6 survinrent, survenirent 2779; to come unexpectedly, to come up.
Soustenir, sustenir 89, sustiner 825, 2927; indic. imp. 3 sustoienoit, sustenoit 1625; perf. 3 sustint, sustint 91; pres. part. sustenant 113; past part. sustenut, sustenut 3178; to maintain, uphold, celebrate.
Soyng, seyng 2894, wish.
Space, see Éspace.
Supplier, neuter 4143, to beg, to implore.
Surnvoir; past part. fem. surnueve, surueve 1888; to read through.

Sus 1039 (desus), 3463, on, on the top.
Symnoble 2597 (heraldic), sinople, vert.
Taille, taille; d’estoch et de — 3392, see Estoch.
Talent 884, opinion.
[Tamaint] 2104, many.
Tamps, temps; par — 1132, soon.
Tamer, tasmer 3702, to weary.
Tant, tant, launt, adj. 837, 904, so many; adv. 68, 164 &c., so much, so; quatre tanz escuier 1614, four times as many squires; pour — 3687, therefore; — poy que 2419, the little that; — que, — come, tanque 390, 659, 1219, 2439 &c., tant... que 600, until; — faire que 216, 804 &c., to do so much that, arrange, act so that.
Tantost, tantos, tantot, tantos, tantosta 2401, 2440, 2831, 3122, 4023, at once, soon.
Tarder, refl. with a 1666, to delay.
Targier, targier, targer 1134, 3200, to delay.
Tas; a — 1329, with might and main.
Tel, tel, tel 1055 &c., such; acc. pl. [teus] 1726; telea fus 3273, on one occasion.
Temprement 2974, soon.
Tecuant; en un — 389, consecutively.
Tencier 3650, to dispute.
Tendre 106, to aim.
Tenir 365, 1804, 2852 &c., tener 831; indic. pres. 3 tient 774, 2936, 4 tenons, tiegnons 2932, 6 tienent, teignont 3885; imperp. 3 tnoit 1162, 1836, 1984 &c., 6 tnoient (271), 1279, 1697; perf. 3 tint 4070, tient 387, 400, 1794 &c., tinrent, tiéndront 1773, temrient 3772; future 6 temront, tiéndront 3002; cond. 3 tenroit, tiéndroit (16), 1906, 6 tenroit, tiéndroit 1573; subj. pres. tiegne [16], 27; past part. tenu 3, 1610, 2830, 3697; to hold; — rien de 27, to think nothing of; estrê tenuz a 2830, to be beholden to; refl. with de 29, to abstain from.
Tentir, tenter 590, to resound.
Termine, termynce 2195, 3026, time, 3161, issue, end.
Terrien, terrien, terrien, terrien 1704, 1850, 2422, holding land.
[Teus], see Tel.
Tolir, tollir, toller 1058, 2418, 2833, to take away.
Tost; plus — que le pas 1144, 3306, plus — que le cours 2787, at full speed.
Tour 1830, means, expedient.
Tourner 50, [1632], to extend.
Toursier, Trouser, tourser, truser, trusser 1486, 1781, 1939, 3570, to load, pack.
Tout; [a] — 604, with.
Trahin, trahin, trahim, traïm 746, 1219, 4010, train, convoy, troop.
Traire 270, 1160, 1247; indic. pres. 6 traien 3227; imp. 6 traienent, 3252, 3361, traionent 1189; perf. 3 traist, trahist 1671, 6 traissen, trahient 3857; past part. fem. traiete 2749; act. 1671, 2749, to draw; neuter 270, 1160

GLOSSARY
235
GLOSSARY

estre, voloit, verroye, refl. imperative veuillez veillez voeil, voloient tramessist — veoit cf. fut. subj. indie, perf. fut. vosistes, to cond. to veut, voleillent, verrez indie, imperative perf. vienront, to 1750, perf. vienent, to part, used as subst. 3500, life. Vivres, vueses 2512, [3163], provisions, victuals. Voir, voire 1293, in truth, 2238, that is to say, be it understood. Volee; a le — 1189, 3227, quickly, thickly, at random. Voler 1513, to hawk. Voloir, inf. used as subst. see below; indic. pres. 1 veoi, voil 39, 47, voille 835, 976, 1290 &c., 3 veut, voet 1485, 1591, 3115, voet 1879, voil 3535, 4 volons 825, voilons 793, 5 volez, voilles 907, 1235, 2849 &c., voillets 1648, voilies 2659, 6 voelent, voilient, 848, voilents 3153, 3154; imp. 3 voloit, voilait 1247, 1845, 1977 &c., voilet 1853, voilets 3111, volent, voilett 69, 6 volont 3484, voiletoit 1801, 3859; perf. 5 vosistes, vosistes 1267; fut. 1 vorai, (voloir) 45, vorray 980, 2256, (vorrdat) 2260; cond. 1 vorroie 3336, 3581, 3 vorroit, vorrodat 19, 5 youriez, youriades 2918; imperative 5 veulliez 464, voilles 1270, 1734; subj. pres. 3 voelle, voillez 917, 1717, 2236, 2681, 5 veulliez, veilles 1291, 2430, veilliez, veilles 3183, veillez 4118; subj. imp. 3 vouis 405, 1067, 1715 &c.; to wish. Voloir: inf. used as subs. voloir, voiloir 1214, voiloir 1248, 1294, 3510, voloter 3344, will, desire. Vostre, vo, vos, see Introd. p. xiii. Vous 469 &c., [ous] 2944, you.

Yeol, see Cel.

Ycest, see Cest.

Yre 3386, sad, angry.

Ytant; pour — 1684, 2659, 2835, therefore.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

(1) The spellings in brackets are the variants which occur in the text of the MS.
(2) 'Kervyn de Lettenhove' means his Index to Froissart. Vols. xx—xxiii contain index of persons; xxiv, xxv, of places.

Aberbury, Richard, 4218.—Fighting abroad in 1356 (French Rolls, 30 Ed. III, m. 15), and in 1366 and 1368 (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 14, and m. 4).
Abbeville (Auenille), 282.—Dept. Somme.
Agen (Agent), 686.—Dept. Lot-et-Garonne.
Aimery de Pavia (Amerie de Paye), 422.—A Lombard mercenary, in service of Edward III. 1348. Captain of the King's Galleys. 1349. Captain of the Castle of Calais. Share in plot for surrender of the town. 1352. Taken at Fréthun, Froissart says, by Geoffroi de Charny, and put to death at St. Omer (Froissart, iv, p. xxxviii, n. 2).
Albret, Béard d' (Berard or Berard de la Bret), 2366, 3349.—There were two of this name: (1) The son of Bernard Ezi, who married Hélène de Canmont, dame de Sainte-Bazeille, and took that title. In 1369 he was made Captain of Lavardac, Durance and Feuguerolles; he joined the French in 1370 (Arch. Nat., JJ 100, no. 670), and is probably the Béard d'Albret spoken of as prisoner to Sir Thomas Felton in 1374 (French Rolls, 48 Ed. III, m. 7). (2) Chandos is more probably referring to a nephew, not a brother of Arnaud Amanieu; the son and heir of Béard d'Albret, Sire de Puch Normand (Gascon Rolls, 28 Ed. III, m. 13). The father, in 1354, signs a truce between England and France and is already on the English side. The son, in 1359, receives a reward for services done for England (Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 183), and in 1373 is spoken of as 'dear and faithful', and restored to possession of his father's lands (Rymer, iii, pt. iii, 4).
Albret, Bernard Ezi, Sire d' (Prince de la Bret, Breet), 624, 1323.—Vicomte de Tartas, father of Arnaud Amanieu and Béard, Sire de Sainte-Bazeille. Married (1) Isabelle de Gironde, (2) Mathe d'Armagnac. An early ally of England, doing homage in 1340. 1354. Given lands in recompense for what he had lost in English service (Gascon Rolls, 27 Ed. II, m. 7), and again in 1356 (Ibid., 29 Ed. III, m. 5). 1358. Died. (Anselme, vi, 209; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)
Albret, Bertucat d' (Berutukat de la Bret), 2371, 3350.—A younger brother or bastard of the House of Albret (Froissart, vi, p. lxvii). Captain of Companies. Fought at Cocherel and in Spain, at Najera on side of Black Prince. Fought for England in S. of France (Froissart).
Alby, William (Guillaume Alby), 3156.—Called by Froissart 'Alery' (Froissart, vii. 35). He carried the banner of Sir John Chandos at Najera.
Alein, John, 2276.—Fighting under Chandos at the Battle of Najera. Possibly the John Aleyn who received letters of protection in 1372 (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 19).
Alençon, Charles, Comte du Perche et d' (Alençon), 338.—A brother of Philip VI of France. Was killed at Crecy.
Amusco (Hamonousque), 3844.—Spain, Province Valencia.
Anbeguy. See Aubigny.
Angle, Guichard d' (Guychard or Gwichard), 1041, 1195, 2285, 3239, 4199.—Lord of Pleumartin, Boisgaurnaut and Rochefort-sur-Charente. Lived about 1323–1380. At first served the French King as Seneschal of Saintonge (Beltz, 182, and Bibl. Nat. Fonds Fr., 2619, fol. 80); fought at Poitiers (Froissart). 1360. Ordered by King John to go to La Rochelle and take oath to the King of England (Bibl. Nat. Fonds Fr., 23592, fol. 7). 1363-71. Marshal to the Black Prince in Aquitaine (Froissart). 1367. Joint Marshal of
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES


Angoulême (Anguileme or Anguyleume), 1616, 3816, 4059.—Dept. Charente.

Angoumois (Dangoumois), 4214.

Anjou, Louis, Duc d' (Danieo, Daniano), 1021, 4090.—Second son of King John of France. 1339–84. Was only Count of Anjou when he fought at Poitiers. 1360. Created Duke. One of King John's hostages in England, but escaped by breaking his parole. 1370–7. Fought against English in Guienne. 1382. Crowned King of Sicily. 1384. Died in Italy. Married Marie de Bretagne, daughter of Charles de Blois. (L'Art de vérifier les dates; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Aragon (Daronagon), 1716, 2676, 3573.

Ariñez, Note to lynes 2735–55.—Spain, Province Alava.


Arruz (Sarris), 2597.—Spain, Province Navarre.

Artois, 1525.—Old province. Now department of Pas-de-Calais.

Artois, Charles d'. See Longueville.


Aubeterre, Guardia Raymond, Sire d', (Dambeterre), 1991, 2263.—A great recruiter of the Anglo-Gascon Companies, who first went with du Guesclin, but returned and fought at Nájera under Lancaster (Froissart, vi, p. lxxii). There was also a Robert d'Aubeterre of the same family, whom Froissart names as with the Prince in Spain, but he was not the Sire.

Aubigny, Renaud, Sire d' (Dangebuguy, Aubuguy), 1043, 1201.—A French noble captured by Winkfield at Poitiers. In 1358 money was paid to Winkfield for his prisoner 'Lord Dauboneye' (Issue Rolls, 32 Ed. III, ed. Devon). Was released in 1360 (Bibl. Nat. Fonds Fr., 23593; cf. Rymer, iii, pt. i, 216).

Aubrécicourt, Eustace d' (Dabrécicourt), 1106, 1691, 1988, 2322.—A Knight of Haïnault, who became Captain of a Company; his brother Sanchet was a Knight of the Garter (Beltz, 90); he himself fought for the English and was one of their plenipotentiaries at Calais in 1356. Fought in Gascon campaigns of 1355 and 1356 (Froissart). First accompanied Bertrand du Guesclin to Spain, but returned at Black Prince's summons, and fought for him at Nájera. 1370–2. Fought on side of English in Gascon Wars (Gascon Rolls, 44 Ed. III, m. 9). 1373. Died at Carentan. (Freville, Des Grandes Compagnies; Bibl. de l'École des Chartes, vol. v; Kervyn de Lettenhove; Froissart.)

Audeley, Sir James (Audelei), 139, 573, 577, 681, 1281, 1283, 1294, 3943.—Eldest son of Sir James Audeley of Stratton-Audeley, Oxon. Great friend and constant companion of Sir J. Chandos. 1346. Present in Crecy Campaign (French Rolls). 1350. At Battle of Espagnols-sur-Mer (Froissart). 1355–6. Campaigns of Black Prince in Gascony (Household Book, quoted Beltz, and Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11), and especially rewarded for valour at Poitiers. 1367. Governor of Aquitaine while Black Prince in Spain. 1369. Fought under Cambridge, and was present at Siege of La Roche-sur-Yon. Died same year at Fontenay-le-Comte. (Dict. of Nat. Biography (a very poor notice); Beltz; Kervyn de Lettenhove, who agrees with Francisc Michel in giving the date of his death in 1386, but that much more likely to have been his son, cf. note to lines 3943–5, p. 183.)

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Auvirmetri, Sir Thomas d' (Dauvirmetri) 2618.—A doubtful name. Froissart speaks of a Thos. de Daimery, who fought at Najera and was knighted by Lancaster. Francisco Michel suggests that this might really be a Thomas Daventri, mentioned as fighting abroad with Earl of Stafford, in 1355 (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11), and with Lancaster in 1366 (Ibid. 40 Ed. III, m. 4) and 1369 (Ibid., 43 Ed. III, m. 15. Printed by Rymer).

Auxerre, Jean de Chalon III, Comte d' (Dantoire), 751.—Son of Jean II, killed at Crécy. 1356. Captured with Joigny before Battle of Poitiers. Mentioned as a prisoner in 1357 (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 12). 1360. (Rymer, iv, pt. ii, p. 205) and died not long after. (L'Art de vérifier les dates; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

B.

Baigert. See Naudon de Bageran.


Baskerville, Richard de, 4227.—Seneschal of Agenais according to Chandos. Mentioned as receiving letters of attorney in 1355 (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11) and 1372 (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 15), but without the addition of any title.

Basque (Baskle), 2037.—A Pyrenean country, including, in Spain, the Provinces of Alava, Guipuzcoa and Biscaye; in France, the SW. corner now part of the Basses-Pyrénées.

Basset, Ralph, of Drayton, 568, 1311.—Accompanied the Black Prince to Gascony in 1355 (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11) and fought at Poitiers (Froissart). He was again in the Prince's retinue in 1365–6 (Gascon Rolls, 39 Ed. III, m. 5; 40 Ed. III, m. 13), and fighting in Aquitaine during the campaigns of 1372 and 1373 (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 17; 47 Ed. III, m. 19). He died in 1390. (Beltz, 159; Froissart.)

Baye, 1528.—Dubtiful.

Bayeux (Bayeux), 172.—Dep. Calvados.

Bayonne (Bayonne), 1392, 1414, 1499, 1743, 1751.—Dep. Basses-Pyrénées.

Beauchamp, John (Beauchamp, Jehans), 131. —Second son of Guy Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick and brother of Thomas; he carried the royal standard at Crécy (Patent Rolls, 25 Ed. III). was made Captain of Calais in 1349 (Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 1751; cf. also Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 2; French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 16 dorso); Constable of the Tower, 1360, and died in 1361. (Beltz, 47; Dugdale, i, 326.)

Beauchamp, Thomas, Earl of Warwick. See Warwick.

Beauchamp, William, Lord of Bergavenny, 2250, 3210.—Youngest son of Thomas, Earl of Warwick. 1366. Went with Lancaster to Spain, and fought at Najera. 1370. Accompanied the Duke to Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 44 Ed. III, m. 3), and fought at Limoges and Montpiano (Froissart). 1411. Died. (Beltz, 227; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Beaumont, John de Hainault, Sire de (Johan de Baiumont), 199.—Son of Jean II, Comte de Hainault. Married Marguerite de Nesle, through whom he became Comte de Soissons, a title which he resigned, however, in 1344. Fought for Philip VI at Crécy, and forced him to escape, accompanying his flight. Died in 1357. (L'Art de vérifier les dates, under Comte de Soissons.)

Begue, Gaillard, or Vighier, 2731, 2804.—Did homage to England after the Peace of Brétigny. Became a member of the companies; went to Spain with du Guesclin, and then returned to accompany the Prince (Froissart).

Benesques. See Briviesca.

Bernard de la Salle (Barnat de la Salle, Bernard de la Salle), 1993, 2377.—A native of Navarre, and member of Great Company. Went with Bertrand du Guesclin to Spain, 1366, but returned on summons of Black Prince, and fought for him in campaign of Najera. Was fighting for English, 1370–2, and at Siege of Limoges (Froissart).

Berry, 720.—An old province; now departments of Cher and Indre.

Berry, Jean Comte de Poitiers, and Duc de (Barry), 1021, 4011.—Third son of John of France, 1340–1416. Married Jeanne d'ARMagnac. Was only Comte de Poitiers when he fought at Poitiers, wrongly called Berry by Chandos. 1359. Became Lieutenant for the King in Languedoc (Delisle, Mém. de Chas. V, no. 495). 1360. Created Duke of Berry and Auvergne. Successes against the English, especially at La Rochelle and Thouars (Arch. Nat., K 49b, no. 59). (L'Art de vérifier les dates; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)
Bertuls. See Breteuil.


Bertrand, Robert, Baron de Briquebeq. (Bertrans), 155—1325. Marshal of France (Sceaux de Clairembault, ii, Nos. 1572, 1573). 1342. Fought in Brittany (Froissart). 1345. Captain of the sea-coast of Normandy (Sceaux de Clairembault, ii, p. 362), and was in defense of the country in 1346 (La Roncière, Hist. de la Marine Française, i. 478. Quotes from a chronicle, Bibl. Nat. Fonds Fr., 20636, fol. 175 verso, which seems to support the story of his vain attempt to check landing of English). Died in 1348, when Guy de Nesle succeeded as Marshal. (Anselme, vi, p. 688.)

Béziers (Vesier), 648.—Dept. Hérault.

Biangiu. See Beaujeu.

Bigorre (Pygor), 2344, 4235.—An old Vicomté; now Department of Hautes-Pyrénées.

Blanchetache, 259.—Passage of the Somme, between Abbeville and Saint-Valery.

Blois, Charles de, 1657.—1319-64. Son of Guy de Châtillon, Comte de Blois, and Marguerite de Valois, sister of Philip VI. Married Jeanne de Penthièvre, daughter of Guy, Duke of Brittany. 1341. Claimed the Duchy of Brittany against Jean de Montfort, brother of the Duke, Jean III; a decision was given in his favour, and he was supported by French King, Edward III helping his rival. 1345. Jean de Montfort IV died, leaving claim to Jean V, who continued the struggle. 1346. Taken prisoner by English at Battle of Roche-Derrien; Jeanne de Penthièvre continued the war. 1356. Given safe-conduct to come to France (French Rolls, 30 Ed. III, m. 10). Sept. 29, 1364. Defeated and slain at Auray. (L'Art de vérifier les dates; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Blois, Louis de Châtillon, Comte de. Might possibly be read instead of Jolli, 341.—He married Jeanne, daughter of Jean de Hainault; and was killed at the Battle of Crécy (Froissart).


Bohun, William de. See Northampton.

Bond, Nicholas, 2613.—Accompanied the Black Prince to Spain, and was knighted before Nájera. 1368-9. Still in the Prince's retinue (Gascon Rolls, 42 Ed. III, m. 4, and 43, m. 3). 1370. Fought under the Duke of Lancaster (Ibid. 44 Ed. III, m. 9). 1372. Was rewarded for good services (Ibid. 47 Ed. III, m. 1).

Bordeaux (Burdeaux), 617, 639, 657, 1442, 1446, 1455, 1484, 1616, 1906, 2025, 2048, 2117, 2139, 2150, 3753, 3774, 3789.—Dept. Gironde.

Boteller, Willecock le, 2273.—Possibly the same as Willelmus le Botiller, mentioned repeatedly in the French and Gascon Rolls, who fought in 1355 (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 9), went to Spain 1367, and married Joan Suley. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Boucicaut, Jean le Maingre dit (Buscikant, Buscicaunt), 714, 871.—Born in Touraine. 1337. Fighting against the English in Guinée. 1349. Was made prisoner by the English, and does not seem to have been freed before 1354 (Rymer, iii, pt. i, 93). In 1356 he fought with King John in Poitou and Languedoc. Aug. 29, 1356. Captured at Romorantin. 1357. Signed the truce between England and France at Bordeaux, as did the other prisoners (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 14 dorso). June 1, 1357. Was given a safe conduct to go to Poitou (Ibid. m. 12), and apparently freed the same year. He was made Marshal of France, Jean de Clermont his predecessor having been killed at Poitiers. 1361. Was charged to deliver towns to Chandos, and became eventually a vassal of the English (In Bibl. Nat. Fonds Lat. 17041, is spoken of as having been Guardian of the Castle of Lésigman, for which Seigneur le roi d'Angleterre). 1367. Died. (Archives du Poitou, vol. xvii, Introduction; Anselme, vii, 753.)

Bourbon, Jacques de, Comte de Ponthieu and La Marche (Jakes de Burbon), 1025, 1355.—Third son of Louis I, Duc de Bourbon.
1347. Was Lieutenant for the King of France in Saintonge, Poitou, Tournaine, Anjou, Maine, Berry and Limousin (Arch. Nat., JJ 76, no. 195). Became Constable of France after the murder of Charles d'Espagne (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 38) in 1354 but surrendered the office to the Duke of Athens in 1356. Was taken prisoner at Poitiers by the Captal de Buch; signed truce of 1357 (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 14 d or 80); was set free in 1360 (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 27). 1361. Mortally wounded at Battle of Brignais (Arch. du Poitou, vol. xii, 340, note; Anselme, vi. 164).

Bourbon, Jean de, Comte de la Marche, 1687.—A son of Jacques de Bourbon; Captain of Companies; accompanied Bertrand du Guescin to Spain to fight against Pedro; died in 1393.

Bourbon, Louis II, Duc de, Comte de Clermont, 4011.—A son of Pierre I, whom he succeeded in 1356. 1360. Went with King John to England, and became his hostage. 1367. Ransomed himself (French Rolls, 41 Ed. III, m. 2). 1370-3. Fought against English under Duc de Berry. Present at Siege of Thouars, &c. (Chazaud, Chronique de Loys de Bourbon; Froissart.)


Bouchier, John, Lord (Bourcier), 2335.—Evidently John Bourcier, who accompanied the Black Prince in 1367 (Gascon Rolls, 41 Ed. III, m. 3). 1370. He served under the Earl of Cambridge (Ibid., 44 Ed. III, m. 9). 1373. Was taken prisoner by the French (French Rolls, 47 Ed. III, m. 19).


Breteuil, Bour de (Bour de Bertuls), 2373.—A Captain of the Companies. 1361. Fought at the Battle of Brignais. Went with Black Prince to Spain and fought at Nájera. Fought on the side of the English at Limoges. Finally joined the Marquis de Montferrat, and was put to death. (Kervyn de Lettenhove; Froissart.)

Brien, Guy de, 135—A Knight of Devonshire, who fought at Crécy, and died in 1349. His son, Guy de Brian, Lord of Laghern, is the more celebrated. It was he who distinguished himself at the time of the Calais plot (see note to lines 429-32), took a leading part in wars and treaties with France, became Admiral of the Fleet and Knight of the Garter. (Beltz, 179; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Brie (Vrie), 1527.—Part of the Dept. of Seine-et-Marne.

Briquet, Robert (Briket), 1989, 2270, 3205.—One of the Captains of Companies, who first went to Spain with Bertrand du Guesclin (Thalamus de Montpellier, 369), then returned and accompanied the Black Prince in 1367; was knighted by Chandos, and fought at Nájera. He afterwards took part, with many other members of the Companies, in the war in Lombardy (Froissart).

Brittany, 1653, 2124.—Includes departments of Ille-et-Vilaine, Côtes-du-Nord, Finistère, Morbihan, Loire-Inférieure.

Briviesca (Benesques), 3597.—Spain, Province Old Castile.

Buch, Jean de Grailly III, Captal de, 526, 679, 1221, 2389, 3311, 3322.—Son of Jean de Grailly II and Blanche de Foix, the cousin of Gaston Phoebus; succeeded to the title in 1343. An ally of the English, and fought under the Black Prince in 1355 and 1356. At Poitiers he captured Jacques de Bourbon. After that he became Lieutenant to the King of Navarre (Arch. Nat., K 49, no. 32), and was captured at Cocheler. In 1367 he accompanied the Black Prince to Spain, and fought at Nájera. In 1370 Edward gave him Bigorre in reward for his services (Gascon Rolls, 44 Ed. III, m. 8). 1371. He was made Constable of Aquitaine. 1373. Was captured by the French at the Battle of Soubise. 1377. Died in prison. (Beltz; Froissart; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)


Burgos (Burges, Burgues), 3555, 3559, 3565, 3569, 3620, 3629. Capital of Old Castile.

Burgundy (Burgonie), 1527.—Old province; now depts. of Yonne, Côte-d'Or, Saône-et-Loire, Ain.

Burges. See Burgos.

Burleigh, Simon (Simond de Burelee), 2466, 2535.—1336-88. A relative of Walter Burleigh, tutor of the Black Prince. 1367. He accompanied the Prince to Spain. 1369. Was captured by the French, but exchanged,
1370. Fought under Lancaster. 1380. Was tutor to King Richard, and took a leading part in the government. 1388. Was impeached and beheaded. (Dict. of Nat. Biography; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

C.

Caen (Ken), 172.—Dept. Calvados.

Cahors (Caours), 686.—Dept. Lot.


Calatrava, Master of the Order of, 3109, 3456.—Pero Moñiz or Muñiz, an ally of Henry of Trastamare, took the place of Don Diego Garcia de Padilla, who held the office under Pedro the Cruel. He was taken prisoner at Nájera, and submitted to Pedro, but was again on Henry's side at the Battle of Montiel, March, 1369. (Catalina Garcia, Castilla y Leon, Madrid, 1892.)

Calverley, Hugh de (Calvelee), 1693, 1739, 2197, 2202, 2696, 3348.—A son of David de Calverley, and possibly a half-brother of Sir Robert Knolles (Dict. of Nat. Biography). He fought in the Breton War and was present at the Battle of Auray in 1364; went to Spain first with du Guesclin, afterwards with the Black Prince; he became Seneschal of Limousin (Froissart), Deputy of Calais, and Governor of Brest; and died in 1393. (Dict. of Nat. Biography.)

Cambridge, Edmund of Langley, Earl of (Esmond, Comte de Cantebrige), 3918, 3940. —1341-1402. Fifth son of Edward III. Married (1) Isabel, second daughter of Pedro the Cruel; (2) Joan, daughter of Thomas Holland, second Earl of Kent. 1362. Created Earl of Cambridge. 1369. Was sent with the Earl of Pembroke to Aquitaine, where he fought during the following year (Gascon Rolls, 44 Ed. III, m. 4) and took Bourdeaux and La Rochelle (Rolls, 1375). Captain General in France and Brittany. 1385. Created Duke of York. 1402. Died. (Doyles, Official Baronage; Beltz, 136; Froissart.)

Camois, Raoul (Cammois), 2615.—In Lancaster's army at the Battle of Nájera. (Ayala, i. 553.)

Campayne. See Caupene.

Camus, Bour ou Bâtard (Bourt Camus), 2374.—A member of the Companies, who went to Spain, first with du Guesclin, afterwards in the Black Prince's army. He was either a Navarrais or a Gascon. (Froissart, vii. p. xxii; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Cameyn, Robert (Camyn), 2269.—A member of the Companies, who followed the Black Prince to Spain, 1367.

Cantebrige. See Cambridge.

Carcassonne (Carkason), 648.—Dept. Aude.


Castro, Fernandez de (Ffarrantz, Fferant de Castres), 1795, 1852, 3625.—A descendant of the old Lords of Biscay, and brother of Inez de Castro (Mérimeé, Hist. de Don Pedro, 133). He at first joined the rebellion of Henry of Trastamare and married his sister; but in 1154 permanently rejoined Pedro, Henry having apparently annulled his marriage. He was Governor of Galicia for Pedro, and remained faithful to him (Catalina Garcia, 354), being taken prisoner at the Battle of Montiel.

Caupene, Raymond Guillaume, Sire de (Campayne), 1325.—A powerful Gascon noble, who joined the English in 1348; in 1354 he signed a truce between England and France as representing the former (Gascon Rolls, 28 Ed. III, m. 13). He fought at Poitiers, and there took prisoner the Comte de Vendôme (Issue Rolls, 35 Ed. III). In 1374 he was Châtelain of Mauléon (Gascon Rolls, 48 Ed. III, m. 1).

Caux, 220.—An old country in present department of Seine-Inférieure.

Chandos, the Herald, 4187.—The Herald of Sir John Chandos from about 1360; was employed to treat with the Comte de Foix in 1366; accompanied his master to Spain in 1367; joined the Earl of Buckingham in 1381; and became Ireland King-at-Arms in 1382. Kervyn de Lettenhove thinks that he was a Breton, and that his name was Guyon, but this is by no means a certainty. (Anstis, Order of the Garter, i. 432; Froissart.)

Chandos, Sir John, 139, 573, 677, 881, 1281, 1307, 1910, 1971, 2214, 2227, 2257, 2279, 2720, 3121, 3145, 3199, 3235, 3287, 3718, 3722, 3933, 3950, 3979, 3993, 4197.—Son of Thomas Chandos, Sheriff of Herefordshire, and descendant of Robert de Chandos who came over with William the Conqueror. He fought at Sluys, Crécy and Poitiers, being rewarded for his gallantry at the latter, where he is supposed to have saved the Prince's life. 1360. Became Vicomte of Saint-Sauveur-le-Vicomte. 1361. Constable of Aquitaine. 1364. Won the Battle of Auray. 1367. Was in the Spanish campaign and captured Bertrand du Guesclin at Nájera. 1369. Was Captain of Montauban and Seneschal of Poitou (Froissart, vii. pp. lxxiv and lxxv). Dec. 31, 1369. He was mortally wounded in a skirmish at Lussac. Jan. 1, 1370. Died at Chavigny, and was buried at Mortemer. (Dict. of Nat. Biography; Fillon, Life of Chandos.)

Charles V, King of France, 960, 981, 1220, 1240, 3857, 3866, 3889, 3973.—1337-80. Charles, Duke of Normandy, eldest son of King John; married Jeanne de Bourbon;
bled from the Battle of Poitiers and became Regent on the capture of his father. 1360. He negotiated the Peace of Brétigny. April 8, 1364. Became King of France. 1368. Received appeals of the Gascon Nobles. 1369. Summoned the Black Prince to answer for his conduct. 1370. Declared Aquitaine confiscated. 1380. Died.

Charles IV, Emperor (Roy Dalmanye, Dal-meyme), 193, 286—1316-78. Son of John, King of Bohemia. 1346. Was elected King of the Romans. Fled from the Battle of Crécy. 1347. His election to the Empire opposed, but established later. 1356. He published the Golden Bull. 1378. Died.

Charles II, King of Navarre, 1917, 1920, 1956, 2109, 2198, 2231, 2479, 3209, 3725.—1332-87. Eldest son of Philip III, King of Navarre, and Jeanne, daughter of Louis X of France. 1350. Succeeded his father as King of Navarre. 1351. Married Jeanne, eldest daughter of King John of France. 1353. Suspected of share in the murder of Charles d'Espagne. He intrigued with the English and also with Étienne Marcel, was for a time imprisoned by the French King, but later came to terms with the Regent. 1366. He made treaties both with Henry of Trastamare, and with the Black Prince and Pedro. 1367. Imprisoned for a time by Olivier de Mauny. 1370. Made a treaty with Edward III. 1371. Did homage to Charles V. 1357. Died at Pampeluna. (Secoussé, Hist. de Charles le Mauvais; L'Art de vérifier les dates.)

Charles de Blois. See Blois.

Charny, Geoffroi de (Charguy), 421, 871, 890. —Seigneur of Pierre-Perthuis, Montfort and Savoisy. Served under the Constable d'Eeu on the frontiers of Flanders. 1348. Received grants from Philip VI for loyal services (Arch. Nat., JJ 77, no. 275). 1349. Was made Captain of St. Omer. 1350. Tried to win back Calais by a plot. He was captured in the fighting at Calais, but ransomed in the following year. He bore the oriflamme at Poitiers, and was killed in the battle. (Arch. du Poitou, xiii. 357, note; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Chartres, 735, 1537.—Dept. Eure-et-Loir.


Clisson, Olivier de (Clisceon, Clichon), 2129, 2327, 3329.—1364. A Breton ally of the English; he fought for them at Auray. Received the Duke of Lancaster at Nantes, went to fight in Spain, and was at the Battle of Nájera. 1370. He swore allegiance to Charles V, who had made him grants of land (Froissart, vi, p. lxxvii), and became sworn brother-in-arms of du Guesclin. 1371. Lieutenant of Charles in Poitou. 1380. Constable. 1397. Died.

Cobham, Reginald, of Sterburgh, Lord, 132, 571, 1312.—Son of John Cobham and Joan Nevyll. Fought at Crécy, Calais and Winchelsea (Froissart). Was Captain of Calais in 1356 (Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 94); but was fighting with the Black Prince in 1355 and 1356 (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11; 30 Ed. III, m. 5). 1357. Fought at Poitiers, where he captured Charles d'Artois (Patent Rolls, 33 Ed. III). 1357. Signed the truce at Bordeaux (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 14). 1361. Died of the plague. (Belts; Kervyn de Lettenhove; Dugdale, ii. 67.)

Comminges, Pierre Raymond I, Comte de (Corages), 3826.—Son of Pierre Raymond I, whom he succeeded in 1342 or 1343. He only joined the English very reluctantly after 1360. 1367. Went with the Black Prince to Spain, and fought at Nájera (Froissart). 1370. Joined the Duke of Anjou and fought against the English until his death in 1376. (L'Art de vérifier les dates; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Constantyn. See Cotentin.

Corages. See Comminges.

Cordova (Cordual, Cordeval), 1809, 3611.—Spain, capital of Andalusia.

Corunna (Calonge), 1786, 1825.—Spain, Province Galicia.

Cosington, Stephen de, 2282, 3237, 4200.—1355. Went with the Black Prince to Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11; 30 Ed. III, m. 6), and fought at the Battle of Poitiers (Froissart). Was still abroad in 1365 and 1366 (Gascon Rolls, 39 Ed. III, m. 5; 40 Ed. III, m. 12). Went to Spain and fought at Nájera. 1370 and 1371. Fought under various English commanders in the struggle for Gascony (Froissart).

Cotentin (Constantyn), 121, 169, 2119, 2124.—A part of Normandy; now in the department of Manche.

Couchon, 1324.—A Gascon who fought for the Black Prince at Poitiers.

Courteney, Hugh de (Huon), 2611.—Eldest son of Hugh, Earl of Devon and Baron of Okehampton, and of Margaret de Bohun. He went with the Black Prince to Spain, and fought at Nájera.

Courteney, Peter de (Peron), 2612.—Brother of the above; also in Spain. 1388. Became
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES


Courtenay, Philip de, 2612.—Brother of Hugh and Peter; also in Spain. 1372. Was made Admiral of the Fleet (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 46). 1384. Lieutenant of Ireland.


Crécy en Ponthieu (Cressy), 290.—Dept. Somme, arr. Abbeville.

Cressyn. See Quercy.

Creswell (Cresswell), 1389, 2270.—A Captain of the Companies, who went to Spain with du Guesclin, but afterwards joined the Black Prince, and fought with him at Nájera. He appears also to have served under the Duke of Lancaster in 1371 (Gascon Rolls, 45 Ed. III, m. 3). In the end he went off to fight in Italy, where he was taken prisoner, and died (Froissart).

Curson, 3201.—Fighting in Spain in the English army, and knighted by Chandos. Identity rather uncertain. There was a Gascon family named Curson; but this man being mentioned with other English, he is far more likely to be one of the Cursons who occur from time to time in the Gascon Rolls; very probably the ‘Rogerus Curson Miles’, receiving letters of protection in 1373 (French Rolls, 47 Ed. III, m. 26). (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 8, speak of Hugh Curson; French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 14, speak of John Curson.)

Curton, Petiton de (Courton), 627, 1107, 2328.—A Gascon noble and early ally of the English. Went to Spain with the Black Prince, was knighted by Chandos, and fought at Nájera. 1370. Was made one of the Captains of Montauban; and fought under Lancaster. 1381. Went to serve the Comte de Foix. (Froissart.)

D.

Dabriechecourt. See Aubrécourcort.

Damberte. See Aubemarre.


Dangebogy. See Aubigny.

Danio, Danloo. See Anjou.

Dantille. See Tello.

Dantoire. See Auxerre.

Darminak. See Flamagnac.

Datayne, Datianne. See Athènes.

Dax (Dasc), 2107, 2153, 2178.—Dept. Landes.

Degori Says, 2729, 2803.—Or, according to Froissart, d’Aghorisses; possibly the same as Gregori Seys, Seigneur de Gencey (Froissart, viii, p. lx), who was still in France in 1375 (Arch. Nat., JJ 106, no. 249). He took part in Felton’s skirmish before the Battle of Nájera, and was one of the prisoners. Fought later at Limoges, Moncontour, and Rochelle (Froissart). (There was an English family of Say mentioned occasionally in the Rolls. Letters of protection in 1355 were granted to Galfridus de Say. French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 9.) It is very doubtful whether Froissart’s d’Aghorisses and Gregori Seys, Seigneur de Gencey, were really one and the same, since the former was said by the Chronicler to be an Englishman with lands on the Welsh border. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Delawarre. See Warre, de la.


Despenser, Édouard le, 567, 1309.—Grandson of Edward II’s favourite, Hugh le Despenser. 1355. Accompanied the Black Prince to Gasçony (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 3), fought at Romorantin and Poitiers (Froissart). 1360. Became a Knight of the Garter. 1372. Accompanied the King on his attempted voyage to France. 1374. Prepared again for war abroad (Gascon Rolls, 48 Ed. III, m. 9). 1375. Died at Cardiff. He was a friend of Froissart; and married a daughter of Bartholomew de Burghersh. (Beltz, 140; Kervyn de Lettenhove; Dugdale, i. 394.)

Devereux, John, 1989, 2281, 3238.—1367. Accompanied the Prince to Spain, and fought well at Nájera. Remained with the Prince next year (Gascon Rolls, 42 Ed. III, m. 4). 1370. He was Seneschal of La Rochelle and Limousin (Froissart, viii, p. xxxii). 1379. Captain of Calais. 1387. Constable of Dover. 1393 or 1394. Died.

Dipre. See Ypres.

Dubreheh. See Audrehem.

Doudenhame. See Audrehem.


Edward of Angoulême, son of Black Prince, 3763, 4062.—Born in 1364 probably (the chroniclers vary from 1363 to 1365). Died Jan. 1371. (Dict. of Nat. Biography.)

Eliton, 3201.—Knighted in Spain before the battle of Nájera; probably the same as Cliton (Kervyn de Lettenhove) or Clyton (John), who was fighting in 1355 and 1356 (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 9; 30 Ed. III, m. 15).

Espuke. See Guipuzcoa.

Eu, Juan d'Artois, Comte d', 1026, 1357.—Son of Robert d'Artois and Jeanne de Valois. 1350. Created Comte d'Eu after execution of Raoul de Brienne. 1356. Was captured at Poitiers. 1357. Signed Truce at Bordeaux (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 14 dorso). Remained a prisoner till 1360 (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 12, 13), when he was freed after Brétigny (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 27).

Eu, Raoul II of Brienne, Comte d', et de Guines, 177.—Son of Raoul I, whom he succeeded as Constable in 1344. 1346. Was captured at Caen, and remained prisoner in England for three years. Nov. 19, 1350. Was executed for treason in the Hôtel de Nesle. (Arch. du Poitou, xiii. 307 note; Anselme, vi. 161.)

F.

Felton, Thomas (Ffelleton), 1911, 1936, 2323, 2451, 2468, 2547, 2647, 2805, 3330, 4201.—Son of John Felton, Governor of Alnwick, and descended from Pagan, Lord of Upper Felton in Northumberland. He fought at Crécy, Calais and Poitiers (Gascon Rolls, 30 Ed. III, m. 5). 1363. Became Seneschal of Aquitaine (Tauzin, in Revue de Gascong, 1891), or, as he seems equally often to be called, Seneschal of Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 45 Ed. III, m. 5; 47 Ed. III, m. 7). 1367. Accompanied the Black Prince to Spain and was captured in the skirmish before Nájera.
He was exchanged after the battle for Marshal Audrehem. 1370. He fought under Pembroke. 1372. Together with Sir R. Wykford received special charge of Aquitaine, and became Seneschal of Bordeaux. 1375. Returned to England, but very shortly left again for Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 49 Ed. III, m. 8). 1377. Captured by the French, but ransomed by the King. 1381. Died. (Dict. of Nat. Biography; Berry and W. Suffolk, Arch. Institute, vol. iv, Playford and the Feltons.)

Fellon, William, 2272, 2462, 2648, 2727, 2737, 2736, 2805, 4203.—A kinsman, but not a brother of Thomas. He was also descended from Pagan of Upper Felton: but his father was Sir William Felton of Northumberland (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11, especially call him William de Felton Junior). He fought at Crécy and Poitiers. 1362. Was made Seneschal of Poitou (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 60), also of Limousin. 1364. He accompanied the Black Prince to Spain (Gascon Rolls, 41 Ed. III, m. 6), and was killed in the skirmish before the Battle of Najera in 1367. (Dict. of Nat. Biography; Playford and the Feltons; Kervyn de Lettenhove calls him a brother of Sir Thomas.)

Ferinton, William de (Ffaryndon), 3202.—He accompanied the Prince to Spain, and was knighted by Chandos. Fought later at Saintes and in the Battle of Soubise (Froissart). 1376. Was one of the witnesses of the truce with France. 1377. Carried the body of Sir J. de Mistervorth, traitor, to different parts of England (Issue Rolls, 51 Ed. III). There seem to have been other members of the same family taking part in French wars. John is mentioned in 1366 (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 10), and Thomas in 1373 (French Rolls, 47 Ed. III, m. 11). (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Fernandez, Martin (Martins Fferantz), 3278.—A Castilian who fought with Chandos at Najera, and was killed by him.

Ferrers (Seigneur de Ferrers), 3421.—The one Englishman killed at Najera, according to Chandos. Froissart calls him Raoul, and there was a well-known Ralph de Ferrers who was Captain of Calais in 1360, and whose name appears amongst the signatures to the treaty of that date confirming the terms made at Brétigny (Rymer, iii, pt. ii). If this is the man here intended, it may have been his son who is mentioned in 1370 as Admiral of the Fleet (Issue Rolls, 47 Ed. 111).

Farrant or Ferrant de Castres. See Castres.

Ffaryndon. See Ferinton.

Flanders, Louis de Nevers et de Crécy, Comte de, 337.—1364-46. Son of Louis I. 1322. Succeeded as Count of Flanders. Married Marguerite de France, daughter of Philip V, and became a close ally of Philip VI. Was involved in struggle with the Flemish burghers under Van Artevelde. 1346. Killed at the Battle of Crécy.

Foix, Gaston Phoebus III, Vicomte de Bearn and Comte de, 2158, 2183.—Son of Gaston II, whom he succeeded in 1343. 1347. Was made Governor of Languedoc by Philip V. 1363. Did homage to Edward III, but not for Béarn, which he claimed to hold in full sovereignty (French Rolls, 39 Ed. III, m. 5: Edward complained of this to the French King). 1376. He joined the French, and was again made Governor of Languedoc, but resigned the office to the Duke of Berry in 1381. 1391. Died suddenly at Orchey. He was a friend of Froissart, who resided some time at his Court.

Fossard, Amanieu de (Ffaussard, Fforsard), 628, 1324.—A Gascon noble, Sire de Madeillan, allied early with the English. 1354. He signed a truce between England and France as representative of the English (Gascon Rolls, 28 Ed. III, m. 13). In 1355 he received a grant of rents from King Edward (Ibid., 29 Ed. III, m. 15). Fought in the Battle of Poitiers and signed the truce of 1357 at Bordeaux (Rymer, iii, pt. i, 135). In 1364 he held the office of Seneschal of Rouergue (Gaulaj, Essais historiques sur le Rouergue, i, 513).

Fréville, Baldwin de (Baudewyn), 4206.—1356. He fought in the Battle of Poitiers (Froissart). 1364. Was made Seneschal of Saintonge. 1365. Was in the Black Prince’s army, and again in 1368, probably having accompanied him to Spain (Gascon Rolls, 39 Ed. III, m. 5; 42 Ed. III, m. 2). 1367. Became Seneschal of Poitou on the death of William Felton (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 133). 1370-2. Fought under Knolles, Chandos and Pembroke (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 18), and surrendered at La Rochelle. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

G.

Galicia (Galice), 1787.—Old province in northwest of Spain.

Garsis du Castel, 2265.—A member of the Companies, who came to Nimes in 1362 (Comptes du Claveir des Consuls de Nimes, quoted Ménard, Histoire de Nismes, Paris, 1751, ii, 238), and acted as receiver of money for the alliance formed between Henry of Trastamare and Marshal Audrehem (Froissart, vi, p. xxii., note 3). He accompanied the Black Prince’s army to Spain, in Lancaster’s force, and did good work at Najera. His nationality is disputed. Ménard calls him an Englishman (Hist de Nismes, ii. 235, 246), but that may merely have been
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

a mistaken idea because he fought for the English; Luce and Francisque Michel agree from his name that he should be a native of the Pyrenees; while Anselme says that Garsiot du Chastel, who fought for the English at Nájera, was a Breton, and son of Tanneguy du Chastel (viii. 357).

Gernade. See Granada.

Godemar du Fay (Godomars, Godemard Defait), 245, 274.—Froissart calls him a Norman, but Luce thinks he was probably a Picard. 1337. He was Governor of Tourna-y. 1346. Failed to guard the Passage of the Somme, being driven back at Blanche-tache. Captain on frontiers of Flanders and Hainault (Arch. Nat., JJ 76, no 378). 1348-50. A 'Godemarde Fayn', possibly the same man, was Seneschal of Beaucaire (Ménard, Hist. de Nismes, ii. 126).

Gomez Carillo de Quintana (Com Garilles, Comes Garille), 352, 3553.—Grand Chamberlain of Henry of Trastamare, and evidently a special enemy of Pedro. He was excepted from the amnesty arranged with Aragon in 1361 (Mériméé, 1302), and was put to death after his capture at the Battle of Nájera, 1367.


Granada (Gernada), 1701.—Town and kingdom in Andalusia.

Grendon, John. 2619.—Knighted by Lancaster before the Battle of Nájera. Again fighting under Lancaster in 1369 (Gascon Rolls, 43 Ed. III, m. 15. Printed Rymer).

Groyn. See Logróno.

Guesclin, Bertrand du. See Bertrand.

Guines (p. 198, note to 1546).—Dept. Pas-de-Calais, arr. Boulogne-sur-Mer.

Guipuzcoa (Espuoke), 2511.—One of the Basque Provinces in north-west of Spain.

H.

Hainault, Jean de. See Beaumont.

Harcourt, Jean IV, Comte de, 341.—Son of Jean III. Was charged with the defence of Rouen in 1346, and killed at Crécy.

Harcourt, Louis de (Lowye), 2321. Second son of Jean IV, and Vicomte of Châtellerault. 1367. He accompanied the Black Prince to Spain, and fought at Nájera. 1369-70. Re- mained faithful to the English (Arch. Nat., JJ 102, no. 259, spoken of as 'notre ennemi'), and fought at La Roche-sur-Yon and Limoges. 1388. Died. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Harpéden, Sir John, 4212.—Seneschal of Saintonge in 1369, and still holding the office in 1371 (Fillon, Vie de Chandos, 30, 31; Froissart, vii, p. lxiv, note 1); Froissart also gives him the title of Seneschal of La Rochelle, and later of Bordeaux. He fought under Pembroke 1369-70 (Gascon Rolls, 43 Ed. III, m. 13).

Hastings, Hugh de, 2249, 3232.—There was a 'Hugo de Hastings' fighting abroad in the campaigns of 1355 and 1359 (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 8; 30 Ed. III, m. 15). He went out to Spain, in Lancaster's force (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 3), and fought at the Battle of Nájera. Later he fought under Knolles and Lancaster in the Gascon wars (Froissart).

Hastings, John de. See Pembroke.

Hastings, Ralph de (Raoul de Hastynge), 2729, 2803.—Son of Ralph Hastings, who died of his wounds after Neville's Cross. He accompanied Lancaster from England to join in the Spanish campaign (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 4). He took part in the skirmish before Nájera, and was taken prisoner. 1370. He was again setting out under Lancaster to fight in France (Ibid., 44 Ed. III, m. 4). 1379. Died. (Dugdale, i. 579.)

Hauley, Robert (Haulde), 2277.—Was given letters of protection when setting out in 1366 (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 4). He served in Spain; together with Shakell captured the Count de Denia at Nájera, who was freed on leaving his son as hostage. Hauley was still in the Prince's service in 1365 and 1369 (Gascon Rolls, 42 Ed. III, m. 4; 43, m. 3), and serving also in 1374 (French Rolls, 48 Ed. III, m. 21). He was killed in 1379, by followers of Lancaster, having refused to give up Denia's son as the Duke had desired (Collins, Life of John of Gaunt).

Haumousque. See Amusco.

Hay, Henry de la, 4213.—Chandos calls him Seneschal of Angoumois, Froissart says of Angouliéme; the latter was certainly true in 1372 (Gascon Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 10: 'Henry Haye d'Engoulesme Seneschal'). He was taken prisoner at the Battle of Soubise.

Henry of Trastamare (almost always called le Bastard), 1771, 1788, 1804, 1979, 2103, 2395, 2543, 2654, 2828, 2911, 2962, 2985,
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

- 3045, 3060, 3083, 3368, 3387, 3484, 3564, 3708.—An illegitimate son of Alfonso XI; after whose death in 1350 he claimed the throne against his half-brother Pedro the Cruel, and was supported by the Kings of Aragon and the Kings of France. 1365-6. The Companies under du Guesclin were sent to his aid, and, on the flight of Pedro, he was crowned King of Castile and Leon, &c. 1367. He was defeated at Najera. 1369. Victorious at Montiel, killed Pedro after battle, and mounted the throne. Married Donna Juana de la Cerda, and died in 1379.

- Hewet, Walter (Gautier Hewett), 3331.—One of the Captains of Companies. He fought at the Battle of Arruy, 1366. Joined the Prince's army (French Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 17) about to set out for the Spanish expedition, and distinguished himself at Najera (Froissart). 1369-70. He took part in the Gascon wars. (Gascon Rolls, 3 Ed. III, m. 12; 44 Ed. III, m. 7). 1372. Surrendered at La Rochelle (Froissart).

- Holland, Thomas de, Earl of Kent, 141.—1320-60. Second son of Robert Lord Holland. 1346. Went with the King to Normandy, and captured the Constable, Comte d'Eau, at Caen (Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 13). He fought at Crécy, Calais and Winchelsea (Froissart). 1355. He was Lieutenant in Brittany and Poitou (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 14). 1359. Warden of Saint-Sauveur-le-Vicomte. 1360. Captain in Normandy, and died the same year. He married Joan, Countess of Kent, daughter of Edmund of Woodstock (son of Edward I), who was afterwards wife of the Black Prince, and so became Earl of Kent. (Doyle, Official Baronage; Beltz, 55.)

- Holland, Thomas de, 2609.—1350-97. Son of the above, whom he succeeded as Baron de Holland in 1360. 1366. He was given a troop to lead to Spain. 1367. Was knighted by the Black Prince, and fought at Najera. 1385. Became Earl of Kent. (Doyle; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

- Jean de Beaumont. See Beaumont.

- Joan, Countess of Kent, 1587, 1597, 1599, 2051, 2093, 2141, 4156, 5761.—1328-85. Daughter of Edmund of Woodstock, Earl of Kent, son of Edward I. Married (1) Thomas de Holland; (2) Earl of Salisbury, from whom she was divorced; (3) the Black Prince. 1385. Died.


- John de Montfort. See Montfort.


- Joi, 341.—Killed at the Battle of Crécy. Identity doubtful (see Blois, Charles de). Might be Joigny: but Jean de Noyers was Comte at this time, and certainly not killed. There was a Charles de Valois, Comte d'Alençon, killed at Crécy, who had married Jeanne, Comtesse de Joigny, and taken the title at her death in 1336, but he had exchanged it with Jean de Noyers in the following year. He, however, has been already mentioned in the list of killed.

- Juana del a Cerda, 3565 (see note).—Wife of Henry of Trastamare.

- K.

- Ken. See Caen.

- Kent, Earl of. See Holland.

- Kersin. See Quercy.

- Knolles, Robert (Cauolle), 2129, 2331, 2463.—A native of Cheshire and possibly a half-
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

4249

brother of Hugh de Calverley, on whose tomb the arms of Knolles are engraved. 1346. Served in Brittany with Calverley and Hewet, 1357. Fought under Henry of Lancaster. Joined the Great Companies, 1367. Went to Spain with the Black Prince and was present with Felton at the successful skirmish, but not at the defeat (Froissart, vii. p. vii). Fought at Nájera (Wright, Pol. Songs). 1369. He again came to Aquitaine, and was made Master of the Prince’s household. 1373. Lieutenant of Jean de Montfort in Brittany. 1407. Died in Norfolk, and buried in Whitefriars at London. (Dict. of Nat. Biography; Froissart.)

L.

La Bret, Bérard de. See Albret, Bérard d’.

La Bret, Prince de. See Albret, Arnaud Amanieu, Sire d’.

La Carra, Martin Enriquez de (Martyn de la Carre), 2203, 2484, 2504, 3310, 3724.—Councillor or ‘Alferez’ of the King of Navarre (Yanquas y Miranda, Diccionario, iii. 89). Went with the Black Prince into Spain; fought at Nájera, and arranged the return of the English to Aquitaine later (Froissart).

Lagoulam. See Langolran,

La Guardia (Pas de la Garde), 2889.—Spain, Province Alava.

La Hogge. See Saint-Vaast de la Hougue.

Lami (Lamy), 2377.—A Breton ‘routier’. Captain of Longwy in 1365–6. Went with the Companies to Spain to help Henry.


Landas, Jean de Mortagne, Sire de, 1380.—Fought on the side of the French; was an especial ally of Charles Duke of Normandy (Arch. Nat., JJ 84, no. 432); was killed at the Battle of Poitiers (Froissart).

Landes, 4238.—Country south-west of Bordeaux, now a department.

Langolran, Amanieu d’Albret, Sire de (Lagoulam), 1323.—Amanieu, a member of the House of Albret, held this title in 1354 (Gascon Rolls, 28 Ed. III, m. 10; 29 Ed. III, m. 5), and still in 1360 (Rymer, iii, pt. i, 214), having married the daughter of the Sire de Logoyran or Langoiran. He joined the Black Prince and fought for him at Poitiers, and later at Limoges. (Froissart.)

La Réole (Roil), 669.—Dept. Gironde.

La Rochelle, 4074.—Dept. Charente-Inférieure.

Lemoine, William. See Moigne.

Leon (Lions), 1809, 3611.—An old province and kingdom in Spain. Now includes Leon, Salamanca and Zamora.


Leybourne (Leybourne), 674.—Dept. Gironde.

Limoges, 4014, 4037.—Dept. Haute-Vienne.

Lions. See Leon.


Logroño (Groyng), 2473, 2893, 2897, 2901, 3009.—Spain, Province Old Castle.

Longueville, Charles d’Artois, Comte de, 1027, 1357.—Son of Robert d’Artois and Jeanne de Valois. 1356. Was taken prisoner at Poitiers. 1357. Signed truce at Bordeaux (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 4 dorso). 1360. Set free (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, p. 27), but left as hostage for King John. 1372. Allowed to go to France on parole (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 42), but broke oath, and never returned.

Lorraine, Raoul, Duc de (Lorayne), 335.—Son of John I, whom he succeeded in 1328. An ally and friend of Philip VI. 1346. Killed at the Battle of Crécy.

Lussac-les-Châteaux (Lusak), 3951.—Dept. Vienne, arr. Montmorillon.

M.

Madrigal (Mandregay), 3714.—Spain, Province Avala.

Magneleis, Tristan de (Magueleurs), 969.—‘Jean de Magnelais dit Tristan.’ He carried the Dauphin’s banner at the Battle of Poitiers; was taken prisoner by Walkare, and served King John in England as Cup-bearer. He was grandfather of Agnes Sorel. 1378. Died. (Kervyn de Lettenhove; Anstême, viii. 540.)

Magueleurs. See Magnelais.

Maiolé or Maiogre. See Majorca.

Majorca, James II, King of (Maiole), 285.—Son of Ferdinand, Infant of Majorca, and
succeeded to the throne in 1324. Fought for the French at the Battle of Crécy. 1349. Killed fighting against Pedro of Aragon, who had turned out of his kingdom.

Majorca, James III, King of (Majorque), 2363, 3345.—Son of James II, who had been de-throned by Pedro of Aragon. He spent his life trying in vain to regain his throne, so that he was never king de facto. Sometimes known as King of Naples, from his marriage with granddaughter of King Robert. 1362. Accompanied the Black Prince to Spain. 1368. Was captured by Henry of Trastamare. 1376. Died. (Froissart, vi, p. xciv; viii, p. xx; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Mandregay. See Madrigal.


Martin Enrique de la Carra. See La Carra.

Martin Fernandez (Martins Ferantz). See Fernandez.

Matas, 1380.—Uncertain, but possibly Robert de Matas, son of Foulques de Matas and Yolande de Pons (Arch. du Poitou, xvii, no. 381), who was given Bergerac by King John in 1355 (Arch. Nat., JJ 84, no. 16). He had a son, Foulques de Matas, Seigneur de Royan (Arch. Nat., JJ 86, no. 37), who fought constantly in Poitou and Saintonge; but as he is said to have died in 1359, it cannot be he, since this man, according to Chandos, was killed at Poitiers.

Maunee, 560.—See Mohun, John of Dunster, Lord (Maune).

Mawne, 1311.—See Mohun, John of Dunster, Lord.

Medina del Campo (Medisnes de Camp), 3665.—Spain, Province Leon.

Melun, Guillaume de. See Sens.

Miranda de Arga (Mirand), 1296.—Kingdom of Navarre.

Mitton, 2807.—Captured in Felton’s skirmish before Nájera. There was a Thomas de Mytton, who was made contre-routelateur of the Castle of Bordeaux in 1376 (Gascon Rolls, 50 Ed. iii, m. 5).

Mohun, John of Dunster, Lord (Maune, Maunee), 560, 1311.—1320-76. Fought at Crécy and Winchelsea. 1356. Was with the Prince in Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. Iii, m. 3), and fought at Poitiers. 1370. Fought under Lancaster (Froissart), and was still abroad in 1373 (French Rolls, 47 Ed. Iii, m. 26). 1376, Sept. 14. Died. (Dict. of Nat. Biography; Beltz, 48.)

Moigne, William le, 4229.—Seneschal of Agenais (Froissart). Was fighting abroad in 1355 (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. iii, m. 11); went to Spain with the Black Prince (Froissart), and shared in Nájera campaign (Gascon Rolls, 41 Ed. Iii, m. 2).

Moñiz, Pero. See Calatrava.

Montagu, John de, 551, 565, 1310.—Brother of William, Earl of Salisbury; married Margaret de Montmerther. Took part in the Crécy campaign, and was knighted on landing. 1355-6. Fought in the Gascon campaigns (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. Iii, m. 1; 30 Ed. Iii, m. 6), and distinguished himself at Poitiers. Fighting abroad in 1372 (French Rolls, 46 Ed. Iii, m. 15). Must have died before 1397, since it was his son John who succeeded to the title on the death of his uncle William of Salisbury.

Montagu, William de. See Salisbury.

Montaubon (Mont Auben), 3933.—Dept. Tarn-et-Garonne.

Monterant, Amanry de Biron III, Sire de (Moutterantz), 625, 1326.—Did homage to the Black Prince in 1355, took part in the Battle of Poitiers, and signed the truce at Bordeaux 1357 (French Rolls, 31 Ed. Iii, m. 14 dorso). Remained faithful to England during the last campaigns of Edward’s reign, being rewarded for his good services in 1376 (Gascon Rolls, 50 Ed. Iii, m. 5. (Anselme, viii, 357.)

Montfort, Jean de, Duc de Bretagne, 2125, 2136.—1339-99. Son of Jean IV of Brittany, the first opponent of Charles de Blois, who died at Hennebon in 1345. He succeeded to his father’s claims, and was also supported by England. 1364. Won the Battle of Auray, at which Charles de Blois was slain, and became Duke de facto. 1373. He was created Earl of Richmond. 1375. A Knight of the Garter. 1399. Died. He married (1) Margaret, fourth daughter of Edward III; (2) Joan of Holland, half-sister of Richard II; (3) Jeanne of Navarre, daughter of Charles II. (Doyle; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Montpellier. Note to lines 645-9.—Dept. Hérault.

Motte, Gaillard de la (in one place called Gilbard), 2267, 3204.—Anoble of the Bordelais, co-Seigneur with Amanieu and Pierre de la Motte of the Castle of Rochetaillée, 1328. He went to Spain, and fought at Nájera; remained faithful to the English (Froissart). 1377-8. Joined the Comte de Foix; and died before 1405. (Duchesne, Hist. des Cardinaux, vol. i, p. 410; Froissart.)

Mussidan, Auger de Montaut, Sire de (Mussidin), 627, 1325.—A Gascon noble, who favoured the English. He was given
the Castle of Blanquefort in 1354 (Gascon Rolls, 28 Ed. 111, m. 14) ; was amongst those who welcomed the Black Prince in 1355 ; fought at Poitiers ; was killed before Rheims in 1359 or 1360. (Froissart ; Anselme, vii. 352.)

**Mussidan, Raymond de Montaut, Sire de (Muscelden), 2367.**—Also an ally of the English. Fought at Cocherel ; went to Spain in 1367, and fought at Nájera. Remained faithful to the English during the last campaign of Edward's reign (Gascon Rolls, 50 Ed. 111, m. 6: grant of land in reward), and fought at Bourdeilles and Limoges. (Anselme, vii. 603.)

**N.**

**Naddres.** See Nájera.

**Nájera** (Naddres, Nazars, Nazareth), 2905, 3028, 3435, 3460, 3559.—Spain, Province Logron.

**Nandous de Baigerant.** See Naudon.

**Narbonne,** 649.—Dept. Aude.

**Naudon de Bagerant** (Nandous de Baigerant), 2376.—A Gascon Captain of Companies. 1366. Went to Spain with du Guesclin. 1367. Returned and joined the Prince's army instead. Fought for the English during later campaigns in Gascony. Was captain for them at Segur in the Limousin. Went to Lombardy to fight for the Marquis de Montferrat. 1394. Died. (Froissart, vi, p. xxi.)

**Navarete (Navaret), 2475, 2526, 2539, 2549.**—Spain, Province Old Castle. There is another in Province Alava ; probably not intended in poem (see note to line 2475).

**Nazareth or Nazars.** See Nájera.

**Neufville, Jean de (Noefville), 2781, 3071, 3409.**—Nephew of Audrehem, whose place as Marshal he supplied for a short time after his capture at Poitiers. 1367. Went to Spain with his uncle to fight against Pedro. Was in skirmish of Sir Thomas Felton before Nájera. Captured at Nájera, and imprisoned in England (Issue Rolls, 45 and 47 Ed. 111, make an allowance for his keep in the Tower). 1375. Allowed to go to France to arrange about his ransom (French Rolls, 48 Ed. III, m. 16). (Froissart ; Anselme, vi. 755.)

**Neville, John (Neofyuli), Lord of Raby, 2253.**—Son of Ralph Neville of Raby. 1355. Went to France in the Earl of Northampton's following (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 5). 1360. Knighted at Paris (Froissart). 1367. Went with Black Prince to Spain (Gascon Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 4: about to set out in 1366). 1372. Was sent to Brittany (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 30). 1375. Seneschal of Bordeaux (Rymer, iii, pt. iii, p. 34). 1388. Died. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)


**O.**

**Orléans, Philippe, Duc d',** **Comte de Valois and de Beaumont, 1000.—1336–75.** Fifth son of Philip VI. 1356. Fought at Poitiers (Froissart). 1360. One of the hostages for Peace of Bretigny. 1365. Was set free 'on account of the love shown to our dear son Thomas' (French Rolls, 39 Ed. 111, m. 8).

**Oxford, John de Vere I, Earl of (Oxenford), 130, 561, 1318.—1313–60.** Fought in the Crécy campaign, 1346; also at Calais and Winchelsea (Froissart). 1355–6. Was in Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. 111, m. 11; 30 Ed. 111, m. 3), and distinguished himself at Poitiers (Baker of Swyneshope). 1360. Died on January 24. (Dugdale, i. 192 ; Doyle.)

**P.**

**Pampeluna (Pampillon), 2383.**—Capital of Navarre.

**Parthenay, Guillaume, L'Archevêque Seigneur de (Pautenay le Baron), 2324.**—A Gascon ally of the English. Fought at Poitiers (Froissart), went with the Prince's army to Spain; fought under Chandos in 1369 (Froissart, vii, p. liv). Present at La Rochesur-Yon, Limoges and Thouars (Froissart).

**Pedro the Cruel, King of Castile (Petre or Peron), 1713, 1747, 1777, 1824, 1867, 1935, 1941, 1957, 1978, 2219, 2318, 2521, 2607, 3139, 3189, 3495, 3509, 3560, 3598, 3614, 3640, 3675, 3704.—1334–69.** Son of Alfonso XI of Castile and Marie of Portugal. 1352. Married Blanche of Bourbon, whose suspicious death in prison (1361) alienated the French King. Henry, his half-brother, rebelled against him, helped by Kings of Aragon and France, and in 1366 seized his throne. Pedro allied with the Black Prince. 1367. Was restored by victory of Nájera. 1369. Defeated at Montiel by Henry and du Guesclin, and killed by his brother after the battle. (Mérimée; Catalina Garcia; Ayala.)

**Pembroke, John de Hastings III, Earl of, 3921, 3930, 4076.—1347–75.** Succeeded his father as Earl in 1348. Married Walter Manny's daughter. 1369. Accompanied the Earl of Cambridge into Aquitaine (Gascon Rolls, 42 Ed. III, m. 2: about to set out 1368; 44 Ed. 111, m. 10: now in Aquitaine, 1370). Was present at the Siege of Bourdeilles, La Roche-sur-Yon and Limoges. 1372. Taken prisoner together with Guichard d'Angle at
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

La Rochelle (French Rolls, 48 Ed. III, m. 7, speak of him as still prisoner). Apparently set at liberty Aug. 1375 (Arch. Nat., J 381, no. 16), but died the same year. (Belts, 173; Doyle.)

Percy, Thomas. See Worcester.

Périgord (Piergos and Peregos), 711, 2341, 4222.—Old County, now the department of Dordogne and part of Gironde.

Périgord, Roger Bernard, Comte de, 701, 3845.—Count from 1336 to 1369. At first an opponent of the English, and was guarding Périgieux against them in the winter of 1355–6. He did homage to Edward in 1361, and went with the Black Prince to Spain (Froissart); but returned to his allegiance to France in 1368, joining Armagnac and Ahret in the treaty with Charles, June 30 (Arch. Nat., J 293, no. 16). 1369. He died and was succeeded by his son Archambaud V, who joined the appeal against England. (L'Art de vérifier les dates; Froissart.)

Périgord, Talleyrand de, Cardinal (Piergos), 768, 803, 857, 922.—Son of Hélie de Périgord, and brother of Roger Bernard. 1320. Bishop of Auxerre. 1331. Made Cardinal by Pope John XXII. 1343. Head of the Order of St. Francis. Was appointed Legate to France by Innocent VI, in order to arrange peace between King John and the King of Navarre. He also endeavoured to settle the quarrel between England and France and tried to prevent the Battle of Poitiers. Went, after that, to England to treat for peace there. 1364. Died, and was buried at Avignon. (Duchesne, Hist. des Cardinaux, i. 465, ii. 318.)

Périgueux, 691.—Capital of Périgord, dept. Dordogne.

Peverell, 2274.—Probably Thomas Peverell, son and heir of Henry Peverell, knight, who was fighting in Brittany under Walter Hewet in 1365 (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 10); he was preparing to set out for Spain in 1366 (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 6), where he fought in Lancaster's army. There are, however, various other members of this family mentioned in the Rolls, and John Peverell appears also to have set out with his brother (ibid.).

Peyrehorade (Piers Forard), 2217.—Dept. Béarnes-Pyrénées, arr. Mauléon.

Philippa of Hainault, 59, 461, 518, 1474, 1506.— 1314–69. Daughter of William the Good, Count of Holland and Hainault. 1328. Married Edward III.

Philip VI, King of France, 277, 357, 393, 397, 834.—1293–1350. Eldest son of Charles of Valois, the brother of Philip IV of France. 1328. Became King of France on death of Charles IV. Married (1) Jeanne de Bourgne; (2) Blanche de Navarre. Aug. 22, 1350. Died.

Philippe le Hardi, 1023, 1354.—1342–1404. Youngest son of King John, with whom he was captured at Poitiers. 1360. Was released; created Duke of Touraine. 1365. Became Duke of Burgundy. 1369. Married Margaret of Flanders. 1404. Died, and was succeeded by his son Jean sans Peur.

Picardy (Pikardie), 244, 424, 1526.—Old province, now department of Somme and parts of Oise and Aisne.

Piergos. See Périgord.

Plymouth (Plummouth), 579, 597, 599.—Devonshire.


Poitiers (Paitiers), 745, 925.—Dept. Vienne.

Poitiers, Jean, Comte de. See Berry.

Poitou (Payto), 4204.

Pommières, Amanieu de, 1081, 2325.—Brother of Guillaume Sans; at first on the side of the English, and fought at Poitiers and in Spain (Froissart). 1354. Began to treat with Charles V. Eventually Chamberlain of Charles VI. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Pommières, Guillaume Sans, Sire de (Pomiers), 629, 1077, 1321, 2325.—Head of a very important Gascon family; an early ally of the English (was signing truce between England and France as witness on English side in 1354. Gascon Rolls, 28 Ed. III, m. 13). Married Jeanne, daughter of the Vicomte de Fronsac. 1356. Fought for the Black Prince at Poitiers. 1357. Was made Governor of La Rèole (ibid., 31 Ed. III, m. 5). 1367. Took part in Spanish campaign. 1369–70. Continued faithful to the English, and fought at Limoges and Thouars (Froissart).

Pommières, Hélie de, 1081, 2325.—Brother of Guillaume Sans; also signed truce in 1354, and fought at Poitiers and Nájera. 1357. Seneschal of Périgord, Limoges and Cahors (Gascon Rolls, 28 Ed. III, m. 9).

Pommières, Jean de, 1081, 2325.—Another brother; fought at Poitiers (Froissart); rewarded for services in 1356 (Gascon Rolls, 39 Ed. III, m. 3). 1367. Went to Spain. 1381. Seneschal of the Landes. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Pons, Renaud, Sire de, de Blaye and de Ribérac (Ponce), 1381.—A baron of Poitou and adherent of the King of France; his Captain in Périgord, Limoges and all the country about the Dordogne (Arch. Nat., JJ 84, no. 35; K 47, no. 29). Killed at the Battle of Poitiers (Froissart).

Ponthieu (Pontieu), p. 198, note to 1546.—Old County in Picardy, now in Dept. of Somme.

Prior, Thomas (Prior), 3200.—Possibly son of Thomas Prior, valet of Queen Philippa, mentioned in 1355 (Issue Rolls, 27 Ed. III). 1357. Went to Spain, and was knighted by Chandos. 1368—9. Still with the Black Prince in Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 42 Ed. III, m. 2, especially call him son of Thomas Prior, senior; 43 Ed. III, m. 6).

Puente la Reina (Point la Reine), 2196.—Navarre.

Pyan, Sire de, 4237.—Doubtful. Might be either:

(1) Poyanne, Gerard de Taras, Sire de.
A Gascon ally of the English, who fought at Poitiers (Froissart), receiving a grant of lands the next year (Gascon Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 5). 1367. Took part in Spanish campaign. 1369—70. Fought under Pembroke (Froissart, viii, p. xxvii), and was captured with him at La Rochele. Or:

(2) Pyan, Lord of. Possibly this is the man who was Seneschal of the Landes. He was allowed safe-conduct for wines in 1374, to pay off debt which he owed to Bertrand du Guesclin (French Rolls, 46 Ed. III, m. 4).

Pygor. See Bigorre.

Q.

Quercy (Kersin, Cressyn), 711, 2341, 4009.—Old County. Now the greater part of the departments of Lot-et-Tarn and Garonne.

R.

Rainchenanus. See Roncevaux.

Rays, Sire de (Rees), 2261, 3245.—Probably Gerard Chabot, Sire de Rez or de Rays, who was in Charles de Blois’ army before the Battle of Auray (Chron. Anonyme, 31-40), and was taken prisoner there (Lobineau, i. 294, 336). 1367. He went in Lancaster’s force to Spain and fought at Najera. 1370. He fought for the English at La Roche-sur-Lyon, but joined the French later (Froissart).

Rees. See Rays.

Ribemont, Eustace de (Rippemouth, Ripemont), 1045, 1200, 1380.—Chiefly renowned for his combat with Edward at the time of the Calais plot (Dec. 31 1349 and Jan. 1, 1350), and for the King’s gift to him of the chaplet of pearls (Froissart). He was Governor of Lille and Douai from 1361 onwards (Arch. Nat., JJ 76, no. 378; Sceaux de Clarembault, ii, nos. 7685, 7696). 1356. Was killed at the Battle of Poitiers.


Rippemont or Ripemont. See Ribemont.

Roar. See Rouegue.

Roche, John de, 4236.—Seneschal of Bigorre in 1366 (Arch. Nat., J 642, no. 2).

Rochecouart, Aimery de (Rochewarde), 2268, 3203.—Son of Aimery, Seigneur de Mortemart, whom he succeeded in 1369. 1360. Became vassal of England. 1367. Went to Spain in Lancaster’s troops, and fought at Najera. Eventually joined Charles V, and helped to drive the English from the south-west of France (Rochecouart, Hist. de la Maison de Rochecouart, Paris, 1859, 4to, 118 sq.)

Rochecouart, Louis, Vicomte de, 2333.—Son of Jean I, whom he succeeded in 1356 (the father was killed at Poitiers). 1363. Did homage to the Black Prince and, according to Chandos, went with him to Spain in 1367. Fought against him later. 1394. Died. (Anselme, iv. 653; La Maison de Rochecouart).

Rochesur-Yon, La (Roche Surion), 3922, 3930.—Dept. Vendée.

Rochelle, La, 4074.—Dept. Charente-Inférieure.

Romorantin (Roumorentyn), 712.—Dept. Loir-et-Cher.

Roncevaux or Roncevalsex (Raniechenanus), 2191.—Valley and Pass in Navarre, between Pamelpuela and Saint-Jean-Pied-du-Port.

Roos, Thomas de, 4215.—Probably Thomas de Roos, Lord of Harnelak, who was fighting under Lancaster in 1370 (Gascon Rolls, 44 Ed. III, m. 4); he was present at Limoges and Thouars (Froissart), and, according to Chandos, was Seneschal of Limousin.

Roson or Rauzan, Guillaume Amanieu de Maduillan, Sire de (Roson, Rosain), 627, 1324.—A Gascon ally of the English. Fought for the Black Prince at Poitiers, and in 1367 took part in the Spanish campaign. He remained faithful to the English in the wars of 1369—76 (Froissart).

Rouergue, le (Roar), 4220.—An old County, now the department of Aveyron.

S.


Saint-Émilion (Seint-Milion), 673, 3794.—Dept. Gironde, arr. and c. Libourne.

Saint-Jacques or Jame. See Santiago.


Saint-Lô (Seint Lou), 172.—Dept. Manche.

Saintonge (Seintonge), 2340, 4211.—Old province, now part of Dept. Charente-Inférieure.

Saint-Vaast de la Hougue (La Hogge), 171.—Dept. Manche, arr. Volognes, c. Quettehou.
Saint-Venant, Robert, Sire de, 967—Son of Robert de Saint-Venant, who was killed at Crécy. He was especially put in charge of the Dauphin at the Battle of Poitiers, 1360. Was one of the hostages for King John (Rymer, iii, part ii, 4, 26, and 39). Died in 1367.

Salesburce, Comte de, 1363. See Sarrebruck.

 Salisbury, William de Montagu, Earl of (Saresbury), 129, 150, 557, 671, 1089, 1164, 1206, 1318.—1328-57. Son of the first Earl, who died in 1343. 1346. Took part in the Crécy campaign, being knighted at Saint-Vaast de la Hougue. 1350. Fought at Winchelsea (Froissart). 1355. Went to Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11, and 30 Ed. III, m. 6). 1356. Commanded rear at Poitiers. 1360. Took part in negotiations for Peace of Brétigny. 1374. Captain of the Fleet (French Rolls, 47 Ed. III, m. 34). 1379. Governor of Calais. 1397. Died. He married (1) Joan of Kent, divorced in 1349; (2) Elizabeth, daughter of Lord Mohun of Dunster. (Beltz; D'Albret, Le Comte, i, 647.)

Salle, Bernard de la. See Bernard.

Salmon, Comte de. Note to line 343.

Salvaterra (Sauveterre), 2517.—Spain, Province Alava.

Sancerre, Jean III, Comte de (Sausoires), 1031, 1365.—Son of Louis II, who was killed at Crécy. Was captured at the Battle of Poitiers, but was amongst those released in 1360 (Rymer, iii, part ii, p. 27), although the Black Prince still seems to have been receiving money for him in 1363 (Issue Rolls, 36 Ed. III). He was brother of Louis, Marshal of France, under whom he was fighting in 1370 and 1371. (Arch. Nat., K 100 b, no. 56.)

Sancho, Don, Comte d'Albuquerque (Sauces), 3066, 3406.—Brother of Henry de Trastamare. Taken prisoner at the Battle of Nájera, 1370. Became ‘Alferez Mayor’ of King Henry on the death of the other brother Don Tello. Married Donna Beatriz, daughter of the King of Portugal, and died in 1379. (Alonso Lopez de Haro, Nobiliario de los Reyes y Títulos de España, i. 14.)

Sanchez, John, 2275.

San Juan, Prior of the Order of, 3103, 3457.—Gomez Perez de Porres held this office in 1265, as well as that of Master of the Order of Santiago in Galicia. He was an adherent of Henry of Trastamare, and taken prisoner at Nájera. (Catalina Garcia, 354; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Santiago in Galicia, Master of the Order of (Meistre de Sain-Jaques), 3107, 3459.—Gonzalo Mejia, an adherent of Henry of Trastamare; he received the office, before 1367, from García Alvarez de Toledo, who had filled the place under Pedro. (Catalina Garcia, 340, 426; Mérimée, 434; Ayala, 411.)

Santo Domingo de la Calzada, 2397.—Spain, Province Alava.

San Vincente, 2903.—Spain, Province Badajoz.

Sarrebruck, Jean II, Comte de (Salesburce), 1365.—An ally of France, who fought at Crécy and Poitiers (Froissart). Was thanked for services in 1348 (Arch. Nat., JJ 77, no. 279.). Was taken prisoner at Poitiers (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 6), but released in 1360 (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 27). In 1364 he was made ‘Bou-teiller’ of France (Desile, Mandements de Charles V, no. 56). Died in 1381. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Sarris. See Arruiz.

Sauces. See Sancho.

Sausoires, 1365. See Sancerre.

Saverak. See Sévérac.

Sens, Guillaume de Melun, Archévêque de, 869. He was Archbishop from 1345 to 1376. Took part in the Council summoned by King John before Poitiers to discuss the Cardinal's suggestions; was taken prisoner in the battle by the Earl of Warwick (Rymer, iii, pt. i, p. 180); was ransomed in 1362 (Bid. pt. ii, 57); and died in 1378. (Gallia Christiana.)

Sévérac, Gui de (Saverak), 3348.—A noble of Rouergue, posthumous son of Guy V, who died 1350. Fought for the Black Prince at the Battle of Nájera (Froissart), but was summoned by Charles V in 1369, and served under the Duke of Anjou. (Froissart; Anselme, vii. 70.)

Seville (Siuylle), 1779, 3539, 3610.—Spain, Province Andalusia.

Shakell, John, 2277.—Fought under the Black Prince at Nájera, and, together with Hauley, captured the Comte de Denia in the battle (Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 133). He left his son as hostage. In 1379 John of Gaunt ordered his release, hoping thereby to curry favour. Hauley and Shakell refused, and were imprisoned in Tower. Escaping, they took sanctuary at Westminster, but were captured; Hauley was killed, and Shakell yielded, in return for an annual payment as compensation. (Collins, John of Gaunt.)

Siuylle. See Seville.

Sluys (Leschuce), (481).—Zealand.

Somme, 233, 234.—River in north of France.

Soria, Valley of (Sorye), 3716, 3726.—Spain, Province of Old Castille.

Stafford, Hugh de, 2463.—Son of Ralph I, Earl of Stafford. 1366. Sent to join the Black Prince while very young. Took part in Spanish campaign (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 10) and in Felton's reconnaissance.
Succeeded his father in 1372 (French Rolls, 47 Ed. III, m. 9, speak of him as Earl in 1373); went on a pilgrimage, and died at Rhodes in 1366. (Belz, 252; Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

**Stafford, Ralph I.** Earl of, 127, 562.—1299–1324. Son and heir of Edward, Lord Stafford. 1345. Seneschal of Aquitaine (Gascon Rolls, 27 Ed. III, m. 8, speak of 'lately our Seneschal'). 1346. Took part in the Crécy campaign. 1335–56. Fighting abroad, possibly in the North (French Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 6). 1360. Witness of the Peace of Brétiligny (Froissart). 1372. Died. (Doyle; Belz; Dugdale, i. 159.)

**Suffolk, Robert Ufford, Earl of,** 127, 559, 673, 877.—1298–1369. Son of Robert, Lord Ufford. 1346. Took part in Crécy campaign (Froissart). 1355. Set out for Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 14) and garrisoned Libourne and Saint-Émilion during the winter. 1356. Distinguished at Poitiers (Baker of Swynebroke). 1357. Signed truce at Bordeaux (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 14 dorso). 1369. Died. (Doyle; Belz, 95; Dugdale, ii. 47.)

T.

**Talarus, Jean de** (Thalrus), 870.—1353–60. Dean of Lyons. 1375. Archbishop of the same. 1386. Cardinal. No reason for connecting him with Poitiers; Chandos seems to have mixed him up with the Archbishop of Sens. (Duchesne, i. 705; Gallia Christiana.)


**Tancarville, Jean I de Melun, Sire de,** 176.—Not 'Comte' as Chandos calls him. 1346. Captured by the English at Caen. 1348. Received grants from the French King for his ransom (Arch. Nat., JJ 77, no. 216; JJ 79 a, no. 32). 1350. Died.


**Taunton, Richard**, 2271, 2728, 2866.—Member of a Devonshire family. 1367. Fought for the Black Prince in Spain. Made prisoner, but exchanged. 1369–72. Fought in the South under Chandos and Pembroke. (Froissart.)

**Tello, Don, Seigneur de Biscaye** (Comte de Dantille), 2652, 2689, 3079, 3316, 3321.—A brother of Henry of Trastamare. Married Donna Juana de Lara. Fought against Pedro in 1367, and defeated Felton at the skirmish before Nájera. Commanded left wing at Nájera, but fled from the battle. 1369. Fought at the Battle of Montiel (Froissart). Was 'Alferez Mayor' for his brother (Catalina Garcia). 1370. Died.

**Thalrus.** See Talarus.


**Toledo** (Toulette), 3808, 3910.—Province and town, New Castle.

**Toulouse,** 3983.—Dept. Haute-Garonne.

**Tours** (Toures), 723, 741.—Dept. Indre-et-Loire.

**Tristan de Magnelais.** See Magnelais.

**Trivet, John,** 2613.—1366. With Black Prince in Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 15), and went with him to Spain (Froissart). 1370. Still fighting in the South (Gascon Rolls, 44 Ed. III, m. 10). 1372. Went to the help of Thomas Felton (Froissart).

U.

**Ufford, Robert d'.** See Suffolk.

**Ufford, Thomas d',** 2247, 2461, 3231.—Probably a younger son of the Earl of Suffolk. He was a Knight of the Garter. Went in Lancaster's troop to Spain. Shared in the reconnaissance of Sir Thomas Felton at Navarre, and fought in the Battle of Nájera. (Belz, 127.)

**Ursenwick, Walter** (Gautier Ursenwek), 2467.—1357. Accompanied the English army to Spain; was knighted by Lancaster, and fought at Nájera (Froissart; Rymer, iii, pt. ii, 132). In 1369 he was again given letters of protection to cross over to France with the Duke (Gascon Rolls, 43 Ed. III, m. 15; Chandos, ed. Francisque Michel, 363).

V.


**Valladolid** (Valedolifl), 3641.—Province and town in Old Castile.

**Venant, Saint.** See Saint-Venant.
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

Ventadour, Bernard, Comte de, 1366.—Son of Eblés VIII. 1350. Ventadour was made from a Vicomté into a Comté for him (Anselme, iv. 1). 1356. Was taken prisoner at the Battle of Poitiers. 1357. Signed truce at Bordeaux (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 14). 1358. Released on leaving his son Louis as a hostage (French Rolls, 31 Ed. III, m. 2; see also Rymer, iii, pt. i, 183 and 187). Vermandois, 1356. Old County in Picardy.

Wesier. See Béziers.

Viana, 2891.—Kingdom of Navarre.

Villaines, Pierre de, dit le Bègue (Beghes de Vellaine), 3069, 3408.—Seneschal of Carcassonne in 1361, at which time he was sent to Nîmes to fight against the Companies (Ménard, Hist. de Nîmes, ii. 221). 1362. He was Chamberlain of the Duke of Normandy. 1367. Went to Spain with du Guesclin, and was taken prisoner at Nájera, but ransomed. 1369. Fought for Henry again at Montiel (Froissart). 1390. Governor of La Rochelle. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Villemeur, Jean de (Villemier), 4045.—Son of the Vicomte de Villemeur. 1369-70. Fought in Limousin, Auvergne, and Quercy, under the Duke of Berry (Delfisle, Mandements de Charles V, no. 624). 1370. Left with Roger de Beaufort and Hugh de la Roche to garrison Limoges, which was captured and sacked by the Black Prince. 1375. Died. (Archives du Poitou, xiii, 41, note.)

Villiers, Adam de, dit le Bègue, 3412.—Seigneur de Villiers-le-Bec, de Vitry and de la Tour de Chaumont (Froissart, vi, p. lxxvii). 1357. Went to Spain with Bertrand du Guéscelin, and was killed at the Battle of Nájera.

Vitoria (Vitoire), 2556, 2558, 2570, 2571, 2683, 2861.—Spain, Province Alava.

Vrie. See Brie.

W.

Walkfear, Richard de, 4234.—According to Chandos succeeded Le Moigne as Seneschal of Agenais. He was certainly fighting abroad in 1356 and 1365 (French Rolls, 30 Ed. III, m. 15; Gascon Rolls, 39 Ed. III, m. 5), and he also held the office of Mayor of Bordeaux.


Warre, Roger de la (Waure), 2329.—1349-70. Son of John de la Warre. Was abroad in 1355 (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 11), and fought at Poitiers, where he claimed to have captured King John. He had letters of protection, as serving abroad in 1366, 1368 and 1370 (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 14; 42, m. 6; 44, m. 7), and was Knight of the Household to Prince of Wales and Councillor of Aquitaine. He died about 1370. (Doyle.)

Warwick, Thomas Beauchamp, Earl of, 123, 555, 669, 875, 906, 1071, 1309.—1313-69. First Earl; Baron of Elmley and Hanstap. 1346. Marshal of the army in France, and at Crécy. 1347. Commander of fleet before Calais. 1350. Fought at Winchelsea (Froissart). 1355. Constable of army in Gascony (Gascon Rolls, 29 Ed. III, m. 14). 1356. Commander of a division at Poitiers, where he captured the Archbishop of Sens. 1365. Died of plague at Calais. (Doyle; Beltz; Dugdale, i. 231.)

Wetenhal, Thomas de, 4219.—A cousin of Hugh de Calverley (Froissart, vii, p. xlii, note). Seneschal of Rouergue in 1365 (Rouergue sous les Anglais). 1367. Went to Spain with the Black Prince (Froissart). Was still with him in 1368 and 1369 (Gascon Rolls, 42 Ed. III, m. 6; 43 m. 4), and died in Sept. 1369 of wounds received at Montlaur (Froissart, vii, p. lxxii, note 2).

Willecock le Boteller, 2273. See Boteller.

Winchelsea, 510.—Sussex.


Y.

Ypres, Jean d' (Dipre), 3224.—A Flemish ally of Edward III, who fought at Nájera. Was given letters of protection in 1366 (Gascon Rolls, 40 Ed. III, m. 4). Water bailiff of Bristol in 1368. Seneschal of a hospice in 1376 (Gascon Rolls, 50 Ed. III, m. 6). Was given a pension in 1378. (Kervyn de Lettenhove.)

Oxford: Printed at the Clarendon Press by Horace Hart, M.A.
Life of the Black Prince,